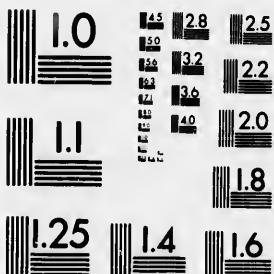
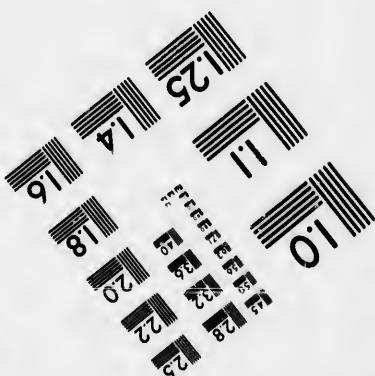
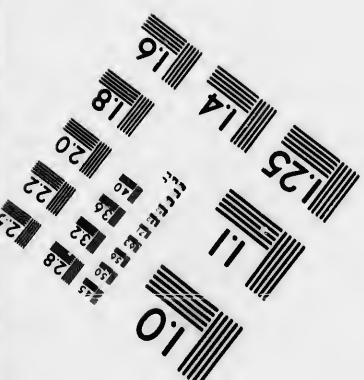


## IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



6"



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

43 28  
45 25  
32 22  
16 20  
14 18  
10 12

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

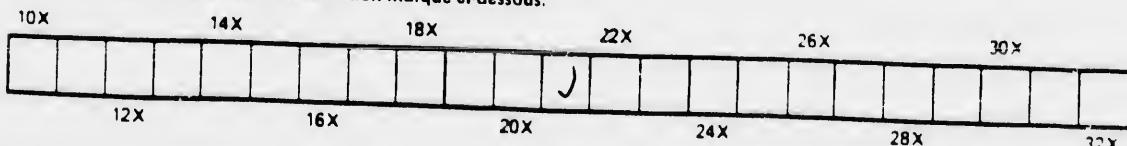
© 1993

**Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques**

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion  
along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la  
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear  
within the text. Whenever possible, these have  
been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées  
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,  
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont  
pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.



The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

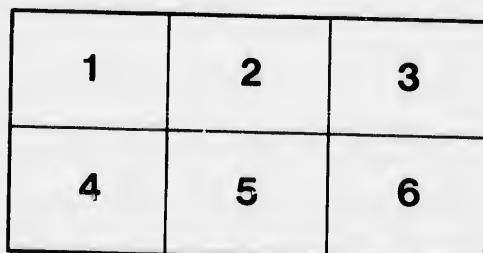
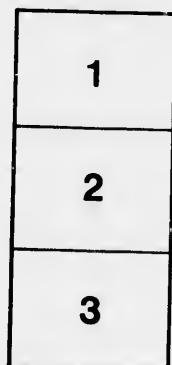
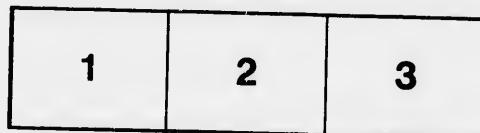
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▽ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▽ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

100

L

A SYS

THE

Autho

**PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part IV.**

---

---

AN INTRODUCTION

TO

**LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**

CONTAINING

A SYSTEMATIC COURSE OF EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX,

WITH

THE PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX, EXPLANATIONS OF SYNONYMS,  
AND AN ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

I Y

WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

*Authorized by the Minister of Education for High Schools and Colleges  
Institutes of Ontario.*

Toronto;  
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
(LIMITED).  
1879.

PA2087

S62  
1879

## P R E F A C E.

---

The object of this Work is to supply a series of progressive and systematic Exercises upon the principal rules of the Latin Syntax; but in order to make the Work complete in itself, and available for those who use different Grammars, there are prefixed to each Exercise the Syntactical rules which the Exercise is designed to illustrate and enforce. There is likewise given at the beginning of each Exercise an explanation of Synonymous words, with passages in which they occur, so that the pupil may, at an early period in his studies, learn to discriminate their use and employ them correctly. It is believed, from practical experience, that the present Work will prove a useful *Introduction* to Latin Prose Composition. It does not profess to teach boys to write Latin. That can only be learnt by the translation into Latin of continuous passages, of which a collection is given in the Fifth Part of the *Principia Latina*; but it is necessary to go through previously a systematic course of Exercises upon the Syntax.

In the preparation of the Exercises I have to express my acknowledgments to Mr. Robert G. Ibbs of Leatherhead for much valuable assistance.

---

### EIGHTH EDITION.

SOME words in the English-Latin Vocabulary, omitted in the earlier Editions, are now supplied; and if any other omissions should be found, I should esteem it a favour if Teachers would communicate them to me.

W. S.

August, 1871.

---

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-nine, by JOHN MURRAY, in the office of the Minister of Agriculture.

---

I  
II  
III  
IV  
V  
VI  
VII  
VIII  
IX  
X  
XI  
XII  
XIII  
XIV  
XV  
XVI  
XVII  
XVIII  
XIX  
XX  
XXI  
XXII  
XXIII  
XXIV  
XXV  
XXVI  
XXVII  
XXVIII  
XXIX  
XXX

## CONTENTS.

---

| SECT.  |  | PAGE  |
|--|--|-------|
| I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE .. .. .. ..   |  | 1     |
| II. APPPOSITION .. .. .. .. ..   |  | 2     |
| III. } FIRST CONCORD .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 4-6   |
| IV. } SECOND CONCORD .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 7     |
| V. THIRD CONCORD .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 9     |
| VII. THE NOMINATIVE CASE .. .. .. ..   |  | 10    |
| VIII. } ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT .. .. .. ..                                       |  | 12-16 |
| X. INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE ..                                       |  | 16    |
| XI. } DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE .. .. .. .. ..   |  | 18-22 |
| XIII. ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE AND ACCU-<br>SATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS .. .. .. .. |  | 22    |
| XIV. ACCUSATIVE OF CLOSER DEFINITION .. .. ..                                      |  | 24    |
| XV. CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF TOWNS .. ..   |  | 26    |
| XVI. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES—POSSESSIVE<br>GENITIVE .. .. .. .. ..             |  | 28    |
| XVII. PARTITIVE GENITIVE .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 30    |
| XVIII. GENITIVE OF QUALITY .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 33    |
| XIX. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES .. .. .. ..   |  | 34    |
| XX. } GENITIVE AFTER VERBS .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 36-41 |
| XXII. DATIVE AFTER VERBS .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 41    |
| XXIII. DATIVE AFTER VARIOUS VERBS .. .. ..   |  | 43    |
| XXIV. DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH<br>PREPOSITIONS .. .. .. .. ..            |  | 46    |
| XXV. DATIVE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS AND IMPER-<br>SONAL VERBS .. .. .. .. ..           |  | 47    |
| XXVI. DATIVE WITH THE VERB <i>Sum</i> AND DOUBLE<br>DATIVE .. .. .. .. ..          |  | 49    |
| XXVII. DATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES .. ..                                   |  | 51    |
| XXVIII. ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND ORIGIN .. ..                                    |  | 54    |
| XXIX. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT  |  | 56    |

| SECT.  |  | PAGE    |
|--|--|---------|
| XXX. ABLATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS AND ADJECTIVES .. .. .. .. ..  |  | 58      |
| XXXI. OTHER VERBS WITH ABLATIVE .. .. .. ..                          |  | 60      |
| XXXII. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY AND COMPARISON ..                         |  | 63      |
| XXXIII. ABLATIVE OF MEASURE AND OF TIME .. ..                        |  | 65      |
| XXXIV. ABLATIVE OF PLACE .. .. .. ..                                 |  | 68      |
| XXXV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE .. .. .. ..                                  |  | 70      |
| XXXVI. ADJECTIVES .. .. .. .. ..                                     |  | 73-77   |
| XXXVII. COMPARATIVES.. .. .. .. ..                                   |  | 77      |
| XXXIX. SUPERLATIVES.. .. .. .. ..                                    |  | 80      |
| XL. THE PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS ..                          |  | 82      |
| XLI. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .. ..                              |  | 84      |
| XLII. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS .. .. .. ..                             |  | 87      |
| XLIII. RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS ..                          |  | 89      |
| XLIV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS .. .. .. ..                                |  | 92      |
| XLV. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY                          |  | 95-100  |
| XLVI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .. ..                               |  | 101-117 |
| XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .. ..                              |  | 101-117 |
| L.   |  |         |
| LI.  |  |         |
| LII. ORATIO OBLIQUA .. .. .. .. ..                                   |  | 118     |
| LIII. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.. .. .. .. .. |  | 121     |
| LIV. USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CON-                                |  |         |
| LV. JUNCTIONS .. .. .. .. ..   |  | 124-132 |
| LVI. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .. ..                                 |  | 132-140 |
| LVII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .. ..                                |  | 132-140 |
| LIX.   |  |         |
| LX. PARTICIPLES .. .. .. .. ..                                       |  | 140     |
| LXI. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE..                           |  | 144     |
| LXII. THE SUPINES .. .. .. .. ..                                     |  | 148     |
| QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX .. .. .. .. ..                                   |  | 151     |
| INDEX OF SYNONYMS .. .. .. .. ..                                     |  | 159     |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY .. .. .. .. ..                              |  | 163     |

LA

[7]

§ 21  
stantiv  
Substa

Ind.  
Hos

§ 21  
stantiv

Jiwa

Fas

§ 21  
Adject

Omn

Söer

the Gree

Hann

—Nep

Obs.

bē

1. Návis  
of bur  
short di

2. Culpa,  
positice

PR. L.

# AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

---



---

[The numbers at the head of each paragraph refer to the sections in  
Dr. Wm. Smith's Latin Grammar.]

---

## I.—SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

**§ 211.** The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

*India mittit ēbur, India sends ivory.*—Virg.  
*Hos ēgo versicūlos fēci, I made these little verses.*—Virg.

**§ 212.** Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

*Jīvat vidēre Dōrica castra, To see the Doric camp gives joy.*—Virg.  
*Fas ēdisse viros, To hate the men (is) right.*—Virg.

**§ 213.** The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

*Omnia jam fūent, All the things will now come to pass.*—Ov.  
*Sōcrātes Gracōrūm sapientissimus (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.*—Cic.

*Hannibal Hamilcāris filius (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hamilcar*—Ncp.

*Obs.* Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb esse: as,  
*bēne, reete est, it is well.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Nāvis**, *is, f.*, *an ordinary ship for long voyages.* **Nāvis** ḥnērāria, *a ship of burden.* **Scāpha**, *ae, f.*, *Cymba, ae, f.* (*chiefly poet.*), *skiffs, or boats, for short distances merely.*
2. **Culpa**, *ae, f.* (*a mild expression*), *a fault of any kind.* **Scēlus**, *ēris, n.* *positive guilt, wickedness.* **Flagitium**, *i, n., a disgraceful crime, a scandal.*

FR. L.—IV.

3. **Timeo**, ui, 2; mētuo, ui, -3; to fear danger; the former strictly of that which is imminent. **Vērōr**, itus, 2, to respect, reverence:

Mētubunt eum servi, vērēbantur libēri, cārum omnes bābēbant, His slaves feared him, his children revered him, and all esteemed him dear.—Cic.

**Urbs**, is, f., a city in reference to its buildings. **Oppidum**, i, n., a fortress or stronghold, fortified town. **Civitas**, atis, f., a community living under the same laws; a state.

Liberasti et urbem pīrcitio, et civitatem mētu, Thou hast freed both the city from danger, and the state from fear.—Cic.

**Oppidum** and **urbs** are sometimes used of the same place in the same sentence:

Phārae, urbs Thessiliæ, in quo oppido, &c., Pharae, a city of Thessaly, in which town, &c.—Cic.

#### EXERCISE I.

1. The merchant repairs (his) shattered ships.
2. A dark cloud concealed the moon.
3. Miltiādes routed a large army of Persians.
4. It is sweet and glorious (dēcōrus) to die for (one's) country.
5. To be free-from fault is the greatest consolation.
6. The riches of the Romans were immense.
7. The most populous<sup>1</sup> cities in Numidia were Utica and Carthage.
8. All things come-to-pass (*fiunt*) by fate.
9. These laws will not always be in force.<sup>2</sup>
10. The sun goes down, and the mountains are shaded.
11. A famine was then raging.
12. If you are in-good-health, it is well.
13. The Athenian generals landed<sup>3</sup> in Sicily.
14. The papyrus is produced in Egypt.
15. He always feared (*imp̄f.*) death.

<sup>1</sup> Cgl̄ber, bris, bre, another form of <sup>(intrans.)</sup> either.

<sup>2</sup> To be in force, vīleo, ui, 2.

<sup>3</sup> To land, appello, pūli, pulsum, 3 :

originally transitive, with navem in the Acc. as object.

#### II.—APPOSITION.

§ 214. Sometimes the Subject is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

Thēmistocles, imp̄rātor Persico bello, Graeciam servitūtē libéravit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.—Cic.

Scēlērum inventor Ulysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.—Virg. Oleae Minerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.—Virg.

Ut ūmittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athēnas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of every branch of learning.—Cic.

*Obs.* In the case of substantives possessing a twofold form, as *māgister*, *māgistra*; *mīnister*, *mīnistrā*; *inventor*, *inventriz*; and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

read

## APPOSITION

8

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

Tulliōla, dēlētiōlae nostrae, mūnuscūlum tuum flāgitat, Tullia, my little darling, clamour for your present.—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is wrbs, oppidum, civitas or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscōrum, concrēnatum est fulmine. Volsinii, a fortified town of the Tuscans, was consumed by lightning.—Plin.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words "as" or "when: " as,

Dēfendi rempublēcam jūvēns, I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man, —Cic.

Nēmo st̄re salt̄ sōbrius, nū... torte insānit, Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.—Cic.

### SYNOMYNS.

1. Tyrannus, i., m., an irresponsible ruler, a despot (not necessarily a tyrant). In the English sense of the word:

Tyrannus fūrat appellatius, sed justus, He had been called a tyrant, but a just one.—Nep.

Rex, régis, m. (from rēgo), a king, or in a more general sense a master, a ruler.

Rex convīlis, ruler of a feast.

Mēnor actae non sīc rēgo pūerītiae, Remembering his boyhood, spent under no master.—Hor.

2. Interficio, fēci, fectum, 3, a general expression, to slay (in whatever way, from whatever motive). Nēco, avi, atum, 1, to destroy by wicked or cruel means. Ocōido, id, isum, 3 (from ob and caedo), to cut down as in open battle. Trūcio, avi, atum, 1 (from trux, tritius, and caedo), to kill cruelly, to slaughter.

3. Mūrus, i., m., any sort of wall, irrespective of its use. Pāries, étis, m., a partition-wall inside a house. Moenia, isum, n. pl., city-walls, a defence against foes (from mūnū, to fortify).

4. Divitiae, arum, f., gāzæ, arum, f. (poet. word), riches (as a means of self-gratification). Opes, um, f. pl., wealth (as the means of obtaining influence).

5. Reus, i., m., in good writers an accused, but not necessarily a guilty person:

Sī hūbēres nōcentem reum, If you had a guilty defendant.—Cic.

Nōcens, entis, part, and adj., and sons, sontis, both signify guilty:

Sontes condēmant reos, They condemn the guilty defendants.—Plaut.

6. Sōcius, i., m., one bound by a common interest, a partner, companion. Sōdialis, is, m., a comrade, a good friend, a table companion. Amicus, i., m., a friend who sincerely loves. Sōcius is generally construed with an objective, Sōdialis with a subjective genitive or possessive pron.: as, sōcius periculi, culpea, &c.—but sōdialis meus, moest, &c.

### PHRASES.

Eng. To storm;

Lat. To take by force, vi cōpīo, cōpīi,

captum, 3.

, He does it unwillingly, by com- , He does it unwilling—being com-  
pulsion; gelled (invitus cōscitus).

B 2

## INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE.

### EXERCISE II.

1. Dionysius the tyrant throughout his whole life was in fear of (feared) plots. 2. Numantia, a populous city in Spain (say of Spain), was taken by Scipio. 3. Alexandria, a wealthy city of Egypt, was founded by Alexander the Great. 4. Aemilius the consul, with (his) army was slain. 5. Deioces, king of Media, fortified (his) citadel with seven walls. 6. Riches, the incentives to (*gen.*) evil (deeds) are dug out (of the earth). 7. Lysander, the Spartan general, took Lampsacus. 8. O harp, the ornament of Phoebus! 9. (My) Pollio, (thou) noted defence for sorrowing culprits (*dat.*)! 10. Gadæ, a town in Spain, was founded by the Phoenicians. 11. Our friend Aesop, your beloved (*deliciæ*), is dead. 12. The aborigines, a rustic race of men, came into Italy. 13. The wise man does nothing unwillingly, nothing by compulsion. 14. Cato, (when) an old man, began to write history. 15. Friendship was given by nature (to be) the assistant of virtue.

### III.—FIRST CONCORD.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,  
*Conon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.  
*Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.*—Nep.

*Athenenses omnium civium suorum potentiam extimescabant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,  
*Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare vieti sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cie.

*Syphax regumque ejus in potestate Romanorum erant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv.

*Vita, mors, divitiae, paupertas, omnes homines vehementissime pernoverunt, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,  
*Senatus populusque Romanus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are (lit. is) aware.*—Cic.  
*Tempus necessitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

### SYNONYMS.

1. *Proelium, i., an engagement, action, or skirmish.* Pugna, ac, f. (fr. root pug, whence pugil, and pugno), generally a close engagement, but often in a general sense for any kind of contest or battle. *Acies, vi, f., generally a pitched battle; properly the front line of an army, resembling the edge of a* *instrument.*

2. **Frustris**, in vain, said of a man who has gained nothing by his toil:  
*Susclpere frustra libarem, To undertake labour*. — *Auct. E. Jn. - Cic.*  
**Nēquidquam**, of one who has not accomplished his purpose:  
*Nēquidquam auxiliū implorāre, To beg in vain for help.* — *Cæs.*

3. **Pēto**, *iwl.* *lūm.* 3; **rōgo**, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1; general terms for to ask or beg, whether as a request or a demand. **Postūlo**, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, to demand or claim as a right:  
*Postūlabat māgīs quam pētabat, He rather demanded than requested it.* — *Cutr.*  
*Flāgito*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1, to demand energetically, with eagerness and clamour.  
*Fosco*, *pōposci*, 3, to ask as a right, as a price or salary.

4. **Inclūmis**, e, and **intēgor**, gra, grum (from in, tango), *unīscīt*, untouched. **Salvus**, a, um, *sospes*, his, safe (after exposure to accidents dangerous to life or person).

5. **Pōtus**, *ās*, *m.*, drink. **Pōtio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, the act of drinking. **Pōtatiō**, *ōnis*, *f.* (frequentative to **pōtio**), a drinking-bout, drunkenness.

## EXERCISE III.

1. Crassus waged war in Asia. 2. Caesar engaged in battle with the Helvetii. 3. The Carthaginians in vain sought peace from the Romans. 4. Most of the soldiers come out (*excedo*) of the battle unhurt. 5. The Cimbri and Teutons asked for territory from (*ex*) the Senate. 6. Hunger and thirst are (Sing.: v. § 220, *Ohs.*) driven away by food and drink. 7. Ulysses inhabited Ithāca. 8. Some nations live on fish (*abl.*) and the eggs of birds. 9. Truth often begets hatred. 10. The Athenians founded twelve cities in Asia. 11. Xerxes, king of the Persians, invaded Greece. 12. You<sup>1</sup> drink wine, but we<sup>1</sup> drank water.

<sup>1</sup> The personal pronouns must be expressed, when they are emphatic.

IV.—FIRST CONCORD—(*continued*).

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third.

*Si tu et Tullia lux nostra valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cīcero valēmus,*  
*If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest!*  
*Cicero (= so are we). — Cic.*

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

*Tūna fērānt plācentq̄ nōvum pia turba Quirinum, Let the pious  
 people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus. — Ov.*

*Dēsectām sēgētem magnum vis hōmīlūm simul immissi cōrtibus  
 fūdēre in Tiberim, A large body of men was set to work to reap the corn  
 and empty it from baskets into the Tiber. — L. iij.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Fāri* (1 pers. sing. not found; but *fāris*, *fare*, *fātūr*, etc.), properly to use articulate speech: hence *infans* = non *fāns*, unable to speak. *Dico*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3, to express one's ideas in order. *Lōquor*, *ctus sum*, 3, to speak as an intelligent being: hence  
*P̄fōidesque lōcūtae, infāndū, And (dumb) animals spoke (like men), horrible prodigies! —Virg.*

2. *P̄fōto*, *ivi*, *stum*, 1, prop. to lop, to trim up, to bring into shape: hence to regard a thing on all sides, consider attentively, to think. *Arbitrōr*, *itus sum*, 1, to judge with the authority of an arbitrator. *Opīnor*, *itus sum*, 1, expresses mere opinion or conjecture, in opposition to actual knowledge. Parenthetically, *Opīnor* implies indifference in expressing an opinion:  
*Sed opīnor, quiescāmus, But, I suppose, we must be quiet.—Cic.*

3. *Rivus*, i., m., a small stream of water. *Flūvius*, i., m., *flūmen*, *Ynis*, n., a stream as opposed to stagnant water. *Flūmen* (from *flu*), also an abundant flow whether of water or anything else: as,  
*Flūmen verbōrum. a flow of words.—Cic.*

*Amnis*, is, m. (esp. p. st.), a great river.

4. *Amoenus*, a, um (*knōr* i), pleasant, agreeable to the eye, used especially of the country. *Suāvis*, e, pleasant to the smell. *Dulcis*, e, pleasant to the taste, sweet, delicious. *Jūcundus*, a, um (*jūvo* and adjectival term. *cundus*), in general sense, pleasant, delightful.

5. *Acer*, *cris*, *cre*, eager, zealous in a good sense. *Vēhēmens*, *tie* (prob. = *ve-mēna*, not reasonable), violent, zealous, in a bad sense, as from heat or passion.

6. *Dēcipio*, *cēpi*, *ceptum*, 3, to deceivē (intentionally). *Falce*, *refelli*, *falsum*, to lead into an error or mistake. *Fraudo*, *ivi*, *litum*, 1, to cheat, defraud.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *You and I;*  
 " *Many a battle;*  
 " *Every tenth man;*  
 " *All the best men;*

Lat. *I and you.*  
 " *Many battles: multa proelia.*  
 " *Each tenth man: decimus quisque.*  
 " *Each best man: optimus quisque.*

## EXERCISE IV.

1. Neither you nor I have<sup>1</sup> done this. 2. You and I speak most openly to-day. 3. You and your mother think this, (but) I do not. 4. You and he praise the streams of the lovely country (*rus*). 5. Both you and they have waged many a war. 6. Part (of them) are gone away (*Plur.*)<sup>2</sup>. 7. Another band of Gauls crossed the Alps, and settled where Verona now is. 8. Some straggled over (*per*) the country, some make-for (*pēto*) the neighbouring cities. 9. The husband said one (*aliud . . aliud*) thing, and the wife another. 10. Every tenth man was chosen. 11. A great part were wounded or slain. 12. All the best men are<sup>3</sup> the most zealous defenders of liberty. 13. Part of them cover (*lit.* load) the tables.

<sup>1</sup> Plural: St. L. G. 669.

<sup>2</sup> Use the Perfect Tense, which is frequently expressed in English by the

Present Indicative of the verb to be and the past participle.

<sup>3</sup> Singular.

## V.—SECOND CONCORD.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Jam pauca ārātro fūgēra rēgīae  
Mōles rēlinquent,

*Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.*—Hor.  
nēque te [silebo] mētueule certā

*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phœbus; to be dreaded for thine unstring shaft.*—Hor.

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Omnium assensu comprōbāta ūrālio est, *The speech was approved by the assent of all.*—Liv.

Neglectum Auxūri præstūlum (est), *The garrison at Anzur was not looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

Pāter mīhi et māter mortui sunt, *My father and mother are dead.*—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Sēcundae rēs, hōnōres, impēria, victōriac fortūta sunt, *Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

Lābor vōluptasque sōciētāte quādām inter se conjuncta sunt, *Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3** (in the sense of "to see," no perf. or sup.), properly to *reparate*, to distinguish by the senses or the eyes: hence to *behōa clearly, to distinguish one object from another.* *Vidēo, vidi, visum, 2*, signifies to *see with the eyes, to see because nothing obstructs the vision:*

Aut vīdēt, aut vīdīsse pūtāt lūmen, *He either sees or fancies that he has seen a light.*—Ov.

**Grāvis, e, heavy, weighty.** Often figuratively: as,  
Grāvis vīno et somno, *Overcome with wine and sleep.*—Liv.

Grāvis testī, *a credible witness.*—Cic.

Tibi grāvis sum, *I am troublesome to you.*—Cic.

Vēror nō tūi grāvis sim, *I am afraid of being troublesome to you.*—Cic.

**Onērōsus, a, um, too heavy, burdensome.** Onērārius, a, um, *fit for burden or carriage.*

**V.** **Fidēlis**, *e*, *faithful, sincere.*

*Conjux fidēlissima, a most faithful wife.*—Cic.

**Fidus**, *a, um*, *trust, naturally true-hearted.*

**Sāpiens**, *tis*, *wise, judicious :*

*Sāplentissimum esse dicitur eum, cui quod opus sit, ipsi véniat in mentem, They say that he is the wisest man, to whose own mind occurs whatever may be necessary.*—Cic.

**Fridens** (= *prōvidens*), *foreseeing, sagacious :*

*Prōdens impenditūnū mālōrum, Foreseeing impending disorders.*—Cic.

**V.** **Appello**, *avi, ētum, 1*, *to name; also to speak to :*

*Quis Deus appellandus est? What deity must be addressed?*—Cic.

**Vōco**, *avi, ētum, 1*, *to call or name in calling; also, to summon.*

*Qui sāpientes et hābentur et vōcantur, Who are hāth thought and called wise.*—Cic.

*Vōcāre ad coenam, to invite to dinner.*—Cic.

**Cito**, *avi, ētum, 1*, *to summon or quote:*

*Auctōres cītare, To quote authors.*—Liv.

**Nōmīno**, *avi, ētum, 1*, *to name or mention (for distinction) :*

*Nōfas hābent Meretīrūm nōmīnū Aegypti, The Egyptians hold it as an abomination to mention the name of Mercury.*—Cic.

**6.** **Ānimus**, *i, m.*, *the mind as the seat of the passions.* Mens, *tis, f.*, *the intellect, the reason.* Āima, *ac, f.*, *the vital principle, life.*

**7.** **Mors**, *tis, f.*, *natural death.* Lētūm, *i, n.* (chiefly poet.), prop. *oblivion* (perhaps fr. *λήθη*), also means *natural death*. Nex, *nēcis, f.*, *a violent death, as a passive to caedes.* Obītus, *exitus, ūs, m.*, *decease, softer expressions for death, like the Eng. "departure."*

**8.** **Dēleo**, *avi, ētum, 2*, prop. *to blot out*: hence, *to destroy*:

*Jam scriptorū, dēlēre nōlī, I had already written and was reluctant to blot it out.*—Cic.

**Oblitēro**, *avi, ētum, 1*, *to erase by scraping; hence to destroy the remembrance of.*

**Ābōleo**, *avi, ētum (ab, óleo, to grow)*, *destroy, to do away with.*

**9.** **Sino**, *avi, ētum, 3*, *to permit*, i.e. not to put a hindrance in the way of. Permittō, *avi, ētum, 3*, *to give permission.* It implies that a man has the right to give it. Indulgeo, *sī, ētum, 2*, *to permit or grant, from forbearance or fondness; to indulge.* Conniveō, *xī, 2*, *to allow a thing by conniving (winking) at it.*

#### PHRASE.

Eng. *Contrary to each other*;

Lat. *Contrary between themselves, inter se contraria.*

#### EXERCISE V.

1. A trusty friend is discerned in an uncertain matter. 2. Brutus and Cassius stirred up a great war. 3. Ninus was the first king of the Assyrians. 4. Gold is the heaviest of all metals. 5. What animals are the most faithful of all? The dog and the horse. 6. The Spanish grapes are the sweetest. 7. Mithridates was overcome in war by Pompey. 8. Aesop was not (*had*) undeservedly esteemed wise. 9. Phocion, the Athenian, was surnamed the good. 10. In a free state the tongue and the mind ought to be free. 11. A

kindn  
and th  
did no  
the la

**D** § 2  
with

Eg  
you, co  
Nu  
animal

1 § 2  
staati  
Relat

Cae  
Caesar

Lö  
virtutis  
to desp

D § 2  
propo  
and id

Tin  
quam a  
difficul

1. Säce

Min  
Some

Ego

Sanc

Sanc

Sanc

Sanc

### THIRD CONCORD.

9

kindness and an injury are contrary to each other. 12. The wall and the gate were struck by lightning.<sup>1</sup> 13. Juventas and Terminus did not allow themselves to be removed. 14. Of all things death is the last (*neut.*).<sup>2</sup> 15. A thousand ships were destroyed.

<sup>1</sup> *Say, touched from heaven, de celo.*

<sup>2</sup> *See St. I., G. 227.*

### VI.—THIRD CONCORD.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

*Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot encourage myself.*—Cic.

*Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, si no corde esse potest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

*Arbores sicut diligens agricola, quoniam adipisciet baccaam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

*Note.*—Here the Relative *quoniam* is governed by the Substantive *baccaam* in the Relative sentence.

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees with the Predicate: as,

*Caesar Gomphos pervenit, quod (not qui) est oppidum Boeotiae, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

*Lovis est unum, justum gloriam, qui (not quae) est fructus verae virtutis honestissimus, repudiare, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive, and id *quod* is generally used in preference to *quod* alone: as,

*Timoleon, id quod difficilis putatur, multo sapientius fuit secundum, quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon, —a thing which is thought the more difficult,—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

### SYNONYMS.

1. *Sacer, ora, orum, sacred, belonging or devoted to the gods; opp. to Profanus*  
*Misceare sacra profanis, To mingle the sacred with the profane.*—Ior.

*Sometimes in a bad sense, accursed;*

*Ego sum malius, Ego sum sacer, I am wicked, I am accursed.*—Ter.

*Sanctus, a, um, holy, inviolable, strictly conscientious; opp. to pollutus;*  
*Sancti legati, Inviolable ambassadors.*

*Sanctae Virgines, Italy (vestal) Virgins.*—Ior.

*Sanctus iudex, An incorruptible judge.*—Cic.

*Sacrosanctus n, um (sacer, sanctio) increases the idea of sanctus; that which cannot be violated with impunity.*

2. *Perp̄tuus*, a, um, *lasting, enduring*; relatively, with reference to a definite period, as life. *Sempernus*, a, um, *enduring, absolutely*, with reference to time itself—as long as time lasts, *everlasting*. *Aeternus*, a, um, *without beginning or end, eternal*.

Deus *bētus et aeternus*, *The blessed and eternal God*.—Cic.

3. *Dōceo*, ui, ctum, 2, *to teach*. *Edōceo*, *to make one learn*. *Perdōceo*, *to teach perfectly*. *Erūdo*, Ivi, Itum, 4 (e, rūdū), *lit. to bring from a rough condition, to initiate in knowledge, to instruct*:

*Studīos dōcendi erūdint et dōcent*, *Those who are eagerly desirous of learning, they educate and teach*.—Cic.

4. *Possim* (pōtis sum), pōtūl, irr., *I am able*, because I have sufficient power, as λ from strength or position. *Quo*, 4, irr., *I am able*, because circumstances allow me to do it:

*Posse plūrimum gratia dūpūl aliquem*, *To have very great influence with any one*.—Cic. (*Quare plūrimum would not do*.)

5. *Polleo*, 2 (pondus), *to have considerable means, to be weighty or influential*. *Valeo*, ui, 2, *to be strong*, as when in good health, *to be equal to an undertaking*.

6. *Tūmulus*, ūs, m. (same root as tūmo), as distinguished from *bellūm*, i, n., *is a war of a more terrible character, and is used generally to denote a war within Italy, or against the Gauls*. As distinguished from *tūba*, ae, f., *confusion*, it expresses more, and signifies *tumult*.

## EXERCISE VI.

1. We are taught by the<sup>1</sup> lessons which are contained in the Holy Scriptures. 2. Helen, who excited a most serious war, was the daughter of Tyndareus. 3. Many towns, which in former times were flourishing, are now overthrown and destroyed (*perf.*). 4. The burden which is well (*bēne*) carried is light. 5. The foundation of enduring fame is justice, without which nothing can be praiseworthy. 6. There is no pain which length of time does not diminish (*subjunctive*). 7. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia, was in great commotion. 8. Two consuls were slain in battle, a thing which in no war had happened before. 9. Cumae, which city was then occupied by the Greeks, is in Italy. 10. There is an abundance of those things which men deem (to be) of first importance (*lit. first*). 11. Caius freed his country from a tyrant, a thing which many have wished (to do). 12. This foreseeing, sagacious, intelligent animal, which we call man.

<sup>1</sup> Use is, ea, id: St. L.G. 372.

## VII.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence: as,

*Ego rēges ējēci, vos tyrrannos intrōdūctis*, *I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots*.—Auct. ad Her.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the subject after the following kinds of Verbs:—

(1.) isto, it  
 (2.) māneo  
 (3.) nōminō  
 called;  
 (4.) hūbeor  
 (1.) once;—J  
 (2.) entīre.—  
 (3.) king.—E  
 called rel  
 (4.) seemed e  
 stances, s

1. *Oratio*  
 m., com.  
 2. *Tristis*  
 moereor,  
 Quid  
 solate ar  
 3. *Pōpūlū*  
 specīve  
 Pōpūlū  
 Plebs,  
 Rōma  
 mons, an  
 Vulgus  
 ignora  
 4. *Dives,*  
 or estate  
 Auctor  
 Lēctōpī  
 1. Crōma (e  
 Crinis, i  
 head, P  
 head of M  
 3. *Poēta*,  
 in, m. an  
 seothey

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become*: as, sum, ex-  
isto, fio, evādo (*to issue, turn out*) nascor (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a state or mode of existence: as,  
māneo (*to remain*), dūro (*to endure*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing*: as,  
nōminor, dīcor, appellor [*also audio, in sense of to be  
called*]; creor, fio, dēsignor, instituor, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought*: as vīdeor,  
hībeor, existimor, dūcor, etc.: as,

(1.) Nōmo rēpente fit turpisstimus, *No one becomes utterly base all at  
once.*—Juv.

Nōmo nascitūr dives, *No one is born rich.*—Sen.

(2.) Mūnitōnes integrō mānēbant, *The fortifications remained  
entire.*—Caes.

(3.) Nāma Pompilius rex creātus est, *Numa Pompilius was made  
king.*—Eutr.

Jūstītia erga deos relgīo dicitur, *Justice towards the gods is  
called religion.*—Cic.

(4.) Sātis altītōdū māri exstructa vīdēbātur, *The height of the wall  
seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

In rōbus angustis dūmōs et fortis appāre, *In trying circum-  
stances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Orātīo**, ònis, /., a *set speech, a harangue* (usually of an orator). **Sermō**, ònis,  
m., *common familiar talk* (of any person).

2. **Tristis**, e, *sad, expressing sorrow in the countenance*. **Moestus**, a, um (fr.  
moereo, akin to miser), *sorrowful in soul*:

Quid vos moestas tamque tristes esse consipicor, *Why do I behold you discon-  
sole and thus crest-fallen?*—Plaut.

3. **Pōpūlis**, i, m., *the multitude composing a nation, a people, collectively, irre-  
spective of rank or birth*:

Pōpūlis Rōmānūs, *The Roman people.*

**Plebs**, plēbēs, f., also plēbēs, ēi, *the common people*, opposed to the patricians:

Rōma triplex eqūlītū, plēbē, sēnātu, Rōme, *thrice mighty in knight, in com-  
mons, and in senators.*—Aus.

**Vulgus**, i, m. and n., *generally in a bad sense, the ill-bred commonalty, the rude  
ignorant multitude.*

4. **Dives**, itis, rich, as opposed to poor; *wealthy*. **Lōcūples**, ētis, *rich in lands  
or estates*, opposed to *ēgēnus*, a, um, *needy*. Sometimes figuratively:

Auctor vel testis lōcūples, *A credible author or witness.*—Cic.

Lōcūples orātīo, *An ornate speech.*—Cic.

5. **Cōma** (kōmā), se, f., *a head of hair*, generally with the accessory idea of beauty.  
**Crinis**, is, m., *hair*; opposed to baldness. **Cāpillus**, i, m. (cāpūt), *hair of the  
head*. **Pilus**, i, m., *a single hair or bristle*. **Caesāries**, ei, f., *usually a man's  
head of hair, flowing hair.*

6. **Poēta**, ae, m. and f., *a poet, prop. one who makes verses* (mōntrīs). **Vātes**,  
is, m. and f., *a religious expression—the poet as a sacred person, a bard, a  
soothsayer. The oracles were delivered in verse, hence poets were called Vates.*

1. **Similis** **ālicūjus** and **sīmilis** **ālicui**. With a Gen. **similis** refers rather to internal, moral, likeness. With a Dative to external, physical resemblance: **Pōpūlūm Rōmānum mājōrum sīmlēm esse**, *That the Roman people resembled its ancestors (in character).*—Cic.  
**Pūro sīmlītūs unūt**, *Exactly like a clear river (in appearance).*—Hor.

## PHRASE.

Eng. *Among the most prosperous;* Lat. *Prosperous along with the first (cum primis).*

## EXERCISE VII.

1. Custom is a second<sup>1</sup> nature. 2. Clearness is the chief excellency of speech. 3. This old man seems to be sad. 4. After Hostilius, Ancus Martius was appointed king by the people. 5. The people of Crotona (*Crotōnienses*) were reckoned among the most prosperous in Italy. 6. The mind, not the efler of a man, ought to be called rich. 7. Justice towards the gods is called religion, towards one's parents piety. 8. The nation of the Seythians has been always thought to be very ancient. 9. The lion is called the king of quadrupeds. 10. The hair of the ancient<sup>2</sup> Germans is said to have been flaxen. 11. Homer is deservedly called the king of poets. 12. Children are generally supposed to be like their parents. 13. Thou wast called (*audio*, active) king and father. 14. Many dreams turn out true. 15. Greece always wished to be first (*princeps*) in eloquence. 16. The army remained entire. 17. The sun appears to be larger. 18. This entire world is rightly regarded as one commonwealth of mankind. 19. Hercules and Bacchus are reported to have been kings of the East. 20. Tullius and Antonius are declared *consuls*.

<sup>1</sup> Alter, ēra, ērum.

<sup>2</sup> Vetus, ēris.

## VIII.—ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

† § 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative: as,

*Deus mundum aedificavit*, *God built the world.*—Cic.

*Glōria virtūtem tanquam umbra sequitur*, *Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*—Cic.

*Nulla ars imitari sollertia naturae potest*, *No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.*—Cic.

¶ Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *māgister puerū laudat*, *The master praises the boy*, becomes in the Passive, *puer a māgistro laudātur*, *The boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2.  
only  
In  
fort  
N  
shai  
Obs. 3.  
tive

D § 235.  
times fo  
sense to  
Hac n  
dream.—I  
Vérisissi  
Obs. T  
emp

D § 236.  
sative b  
them.  
note a s  
mourn on  
*I shudder*

Squān  
the cruelty  
Amore  
Contrē

Here  
involve  
respective

X 1. Accipio,  
Excipio,  
arms. R  
Suscipio  
back to a

2. Sägitta,  
Aptare

Tolūs, i, n  
generally  
a dart, a  
Alexan  
ander wa  
his shin.—

3. Vénēnū  
Assyri  
Virus, i, n  
Virus p

*Obs. 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,*

*Invidetur praestanti florētique fortūnae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.—Cic. (Lit., Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune.)*

*Non parcerat labōri, Labour shall not be spared.—Cic. (Lit., There shall be no sparing for labour.)*

*Obs. 3. The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.*

D § 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

*Hac nocte mirum somniavi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.—Plaut.*

*Verissimum iusjurandum jūrāre, To swear a most true oath.—Cic.*

*Obs. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.*

D § 236. Other intransitive Verbs often govern an Accusative by virtue of some transitive meaning implied in them. This is often the case with those verbs which denote a state of mind, like lāgeo, *I mourn*, lāgeo aliquid, *I mourn on account of something*; horreo, *I shudder*, horreo aliquid, *I shudder at something*, &c.: as,

*Sēquāni Ariōvisti crūdēlitàtem horrēbant, The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of the Ariovistus.—Caes.*

*Amore aliquid dēpērire, To be dying of love for some one.—Plaut.*

*Contrēmère hastam, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.*

Here *horreo*, *dēpēreo*, *contrēmo* (strictly intransitive Verbs), involve the transitive meanings, *to dread*, *to love*, *to fear*, respectively. This idiom is most frequent in the poets.

#### SYNONYMS.

X 1. *Accipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *to take what is offered*, generally *into the hand*. *Excipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *to take*, i.e. *catch*, *what is flying*, generally *into the arms*. *Rēcipio*, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *to take into one's care*, as *into the bosom*. *Suscipio*, cēpi, ceptum, *to undertake a duty or task imposed* (*to put one's arm or back to a burden*).

2 *Sagitta*, ae, f., *an arrow*:

*Ap̄tare nervo sagittas, To fit the arrows to the bowsstring.—Virg.*

*Tēlos*, i., n. (prob. fr. *τηλόθετη*), *a generic term for any kind of offensive weapon*, generally of a missile character. *Spiculūm*, i., n. (from *spica*, *an ear of corn*); *a dart*, also used of the triangular head of an arrow or javelin:

*Alexander sagittā ictus est, quae in mēdio crūre rēliquērat spiculum, Alexander was wounded by an arrow which had left its point behind in the middle of his shin.—Curt.*

3. *Vēnēnum*, i., n., *a drug, medicine, or poison*. Sometimes used of *dyeing drugs* *Assyriā fūctūrā lāna vēnēno*, *The wool is stained with Assyrian dye.* — Virg.

*Virus*, i., n., *poison, venom*. Sometimes *an offensive stench*:

*Virus pālū is, The smell from the stagnant marsh.—Col.*

4. **Effugio**, *ūgi, Itum, s.*, to escape, not merely fly from (like ἀποφεύγειν).  
Vincula effugere, to escape from imprisonment.—HOr.

Subterfugio, *ūgi, Itum, s.*, to get away secretly, to give the slip (like ἀποδράσκω),  
**Affugio**, *ūgi, Itum (ab īglio)*, to fly from. Diffugio, *ūgi, Itum, s.*, to fly in all  
directions (diversim fugere).

D. 5. **Potestas**, *ātis, f.* (fr. posse), power, lawful authority, as of a magistrate. **Potentia**, *āe, f.*, unconstitutional power, predominance. A person in authority is said to be in potestate. **Ditio**, *ōnis, f.*, power, jurisdiction:  
In ditione aliquis esse, To be under a man's authority.—Cic.

D. 6. **Bestia**, *ae, f.*, an unreasoning animal. **Bellua**, *ae, f.* (also bēlūs), a great beast. **Fera**, *ae, f.*, a wild beast. An elephant or hippopotamus would be bellua, but a lion or tiger, fera.

D. 7. **Veneror**, *ātus sum, l.*, to pray to; hence, to venerate. **Cōlo**, *cōlui, cultum, s.*, prop. to cherish; hence to regard with honor, worship. **Rēveneror**, *ātus sum, 2,* to stand in awe of, to show respectful fear.

D. 8. **Mare**, *is, n.*, the sea, as opposed to land. **Aequor**, *ōris, n.* (aëquus), properly a level plain surface, the expanse of the sea when calm. **Pontus**, *i, m.*, the deep sea. **Frētum**, *i, n.*, a narrow part of the sea, a strait.

D. 9. **Sēcuris**, *is, f.* (sēco), a butcher's cleaver, to chop meat; an (executioner's) axe. **Ascia**, *ae, f.*, a carpenter's axe to cleave wood.

### EXERCISE VIII.

1. I have received your letter.
2. Daedalus moved his wings.
3. Romulus created a hundred senators.
4. I will sing no songs.
5. I do not fear death.
6. If we follow (*fut.*) nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.
7. Barbarous nations dip their arrows in poison.
8. Hear much (*pl.*), speak little (*pl.*).
9. Themistocles did not escape the animosity<sup>1</sup> of his fellow-citizens.
10. Pompey restored the tribunitian power of which Sulla had left the image without the cella.
11. The Egyptians consecrated almost every species of beasts: the Syrians worship a fish.
12. They are free-born, of whose ancestors none<sup>2</sup> has served in slavery (*acc.*).
13. They run the same course of life.
14. It is better to live one's life moderately and modestly.
15. Nor does he shudder at the stormy sea.
16. The field seems to mourn for its master.
17. The Roman matrons mourned for him as (for) a parent.
18. He fears the Parthian and the icy Scythian.
19. He trembles and shudders at the rods and axes of the dictator.

<sup>1</sup> Invidia.

<sup>2</sup> Nemo, *īnis, e.*

### IX.—ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.—(continued.)

X § 238. All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Timōtheus Peloponnesūm circumvēhens Lāconiam pōpūlatūs est,  
Timōtheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.

Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transiit, Hannibal crossed the Alps  
with an army.—Nep.

X § 238  
with t  
with a  
an Acc

Nāve  
Urbe  
Nēm  
Sōci  
Mōdū  
Quan  
Gaul  
Nēm  
Nep.

X § 240  
compou  
an Acc  
Equit  
the senate

1. Mons,  
mountai  
ridge.

Præri  
Monte  
Collis,  
Agger.

2. Ruina,  
is, f. (ste  
Strage

3. Nonnū  
not often  
Nonnū  
Interd  
Allqua

4. Rēgio, i  
subdued b  
Stell  
a provinc  
Plāga, a  
Plāga b

5. Āveo (no  
us, with  
one has ha  
be willing  
Itum, 3, t  
show it by

× § 239. Many Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*, and *some* compounded with *ante*, *con*, *ex*, and *prae*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Nāves Gēnuam accesserunt, *The ships reached Genoa.*—Liv.  
Urbem invadūnt, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg.

Nōmīnem conveni, *I have met no one.*—Cic.

Sōciētatem coire, *To form a partnership.*—Cic.

Mōdum excēdere, *To exceed the limit.*—Cic.

Quantum Galli virtute cētros mortālēs praeſtārēnt, *How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv.

Nēmo eum in amicitia antecessit, *no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep.

× § 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (*jaceo*, *sēdeo*, *sto*, *sisto*), compounded with *circum*, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Equites Rōmāni sēnātūm circumstant, *Roman knights stand around the senate.*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Mons**, *tis, m.*, a mountain or range of mountains. **Jūgum**, *i., n.* (jungo), a mountain ridge. **Cātūmen**, *Inis, n.*, a summit: **dorsum**, *i., n.*, a buck-like ridge. Mons often signifies a great heap of anything:  
*Præruptus squæs mons*, A rugged mountainous wave.—Virg.  
*Montes auri*, *Piles of gold.*—Ter.
2. **Collis**, *is, m.*, an easy ascent, a hill. **Tūmulus** (*tūmeo*), *i., n.*, any eminence **Agger**, *ēris, m.*, a heap, mound, or terrace (ad gēro).
3. **Buīna**, *se, f.* (*ruo*), a (violent) falling down, downfall: **ruina**, ruin. **Strāges**, *is, f.* (*sterno*), an overthrow from without. **Strāges, havoo, butchery.**  
*Strāges ruīnae similiſ*, A slaughter near akin to entire ruin.—Liv.
4. **Nonnunquam**, sometimes, with the idea of frequency. **Interdum**, at times, not often. **Aliquando**, now and then, more than once:  
*Nonnunquam facta*, Things done at short intervals.  
*Interdum facta*, At lengthened intervals.  
*Aliquando facta*, At very lengthened intervals.
5. **Rēgio**, *ōnis, f.* (*rēgēre*), a vast extent of country. **Prōvincia**, *ae, f.*, a country subdued by arms or otherwise:  
*Sicilia prima omnium prōvinciā appellāta est*, Sicily was the first of all called a province.—Cic.
6. **Plāga**, *ae, f.*, a district, clime, or tract either of earth or heaven:  
*Plāga lactea coeli*, The milky way.
7. **Āveo** (no perf. or sup.) *2, to long for, to strive after*, especially for what pleases us, with some degree of impatience. **Dēsidērō**, *āvi, ātum, i.*, to desire what one has had, but now feels the loss of: hence to regret. **Vōlo**, *vōlū, volle, to be willing, have a mind for.* **Opto**, *āvi, ātum, i.*, to wish, prefer. **Gūpio**, *īri, īnum, 3.*, to desire (most general term). **Gestio**, *īvi, 4.*, to desire eagerly, and show it by gestures.

6. **Cognosco**, óvi, itum, 3, to learn (something before unknown). **Agnosco**, óvi, itum, 3, to recognize (something known before):  
Vétem Anchisen agnoscit amicoum, He recognizes his old friend Anchises.—Virg.

**Intelligo**, exi, ectum, 3, to discern by means of reflection. **Dignosco**, óvi, ótum, 3, to distinguish. **Becognosco**, óvi, itum, 3, to bring to remembrance: Cognoscere de aliquaque re, To take cognizance of something.—Cic.  
Cognoscere ex aliquaque re, To know by something.—Cic.

7. **Magnus**, a, um, great, opposed to **parvus**, without any accessory notion. Grandis, e, great, with the idea of strength and full growth. **Ingenius**, n̄tis, of extraordinary size. **Immānis**, e (prob. fr. in, not, and mānus = bōnus), huge, exciting fear. **Vastus**, a, um, vast, irregular in form, out of bounds:  
Vastus animus, A mind of extravagant aims.—Sall.

8. **Sénatus**, ds, m., the senate—either the senators or (by meton.) the place where they met:  
In sénatum vénit, He came into the senate.—Cic.  
Sénatus convocatus érat, The senate had been convened.—Cic.  
**Cūria**, ae, f., the building where the senators assembled:  
Vénit in cūriam sénatus frēquens, A full assembly of senators came into the senate-house.—Cic.  
Very rarely of the senate itself.  
Cūria jübēt, The senate wills it.—Cic.

## PHRASES.

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Eng. The midst of the city; | Lat. The middle city (urbs mōdia). |
| " As he speaks;             | " (Often) speaking (part.).        |
| " Young men of Rome;        | " (Often) Rōmāna juventus.         |
| " Those who are prosperous; | " The prosperous (participie).     |

## EXERCISE IX.

1. The river Eurōtas flows round Sparta. 2. The Euphrates goes through the midst of Babylon. 3. The Romans climbed over the ruins of the wall. 4. The rivers flowed beneath the walls. 5. The people are wont sometimes to pass-by the worthy. 6. Pythagoras went-over many barbarous regions (lit. of barbarians) on foot. 7. Thirty tyrants surrounded Socrates and could not<sup>1</sup> break his spirit. 8. I long to have-an-interview-with<sup>2</sup> those whom I myself (*ipse*) have known. 9. The young men of Rome approach the walls. 10. A great fear suddenly came-upon the soldiers. 11. Both you and I have exceeded (the bounds of) moderation. 12. A crowd of friends surrounds the prosperous. 13. The Roman knights stand round the senate. 14. Six lictors surround him as he speaks.

<sup>1</sup> And . . . not, nēque.<sup>2</sup> Convēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, with acc.

## X.—INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 211. These five Impersonal Verbs, p̄det, it shameth; laedet, it wearieh; poenitet, it repenteth; piget, it grieveth; and

ulscret,  
'erson  
put in  
Mē  
Time  
of Timo  
L Obs.  
ti  
ha  
A § 242  
unbecom  
Orätz  
emper.—  
L Obs.  
flü  
sat

4. 1. Sōnex,  
of old st  
2. Consili  
(decided)  
Dat o  
convictio  
3. Poena (c  
capital, t  
Octo p  
are contu  
Mulcta  
Mulcta  
—Cic.  
4. Peccati  
i, n., a fa  
5. Paupert  
series of  
scarcity, t  
3. Simulo,  
to concea  
Spem v  
Dissem  
5. Hōmo, in  
m., a ma  
man.  
Vir bōn  
Pb. L —

## INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. 17

**Agnosco**, óvi,  
and Anchises.—

**Dignosco**, óvi,  
remembrance:

cessory notion.  
genus, n̄tis, of  
= bōnus), huge,  
unds :

on.) the place

came into the

in oldia).  
)  
itus.  
ciple).

hirates goes  
l over the  
s. 5. The  
Pythagoras  
in foot. 7.  
his spirit.  
self (*ipse*)  
the walls.  
Both you  
a crowd of  
hts stand  
aks.

aco.

TIVE.  
shameth;  
th; and

**mis̄eret**, it pitieh (affects with pity); take an Accusative of the person whom the feeling affects. The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive: as,

*Mē p̄get stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Timōthei post mortem p̄pūlūm jūdicii sūi poenituit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

1. **Obs.** The Object (or cause) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or clause: as,  
*Nen me vixisse poenitet, I repent not having-lived.*—Cic.  
*Quintum poenitet, quod ānūnum tuum offendit, Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic.

2. **§ 242.** In like manner dēcet, it is becoming, and dādēcet, it is unbecoming, take an Accusative of the Person: as,

*Orātōrem mīnime dēcet irasci, It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.*—Cic.

3. **Obs.** In like manner the Impersonals jūvat, it delights; lātet, fallit, satis̄tive of the Person.

### SYNONYMS.

4. 1. **Sēnēx**, is, m., an old man, one beyond his sixtieth year. Vētus, ēris, ancient, of old standing. Grandaevus or longaevus, a, um, very aged.
2. **Consilium**, i., n., counsel, advice, design, project. Sententia, ae, f., a (decided) opinion:  
*Dat consilium de īnimi sententia, He gives advice according to his mind's conviction.*
3. **Poena** (row̄i), ae, f., a satisfaction, hence punishment of any kind, corporal, capital, or by imprisonment, as an atonement for an offence.  
*Octo poenarūm gēnēa in lēgib⁹ continentur, Eight species of punishments are contained in the laws.*—Cic.  
**Mulota** (multa), ae, f., a fine, originally in cattle, but afterwards in money:  
*Muletare īlquem poenā et mulota, To visit a man with punishment and fine.*
4. **Peccatum**, i., n., a transgression, what a man knows to be wrong. Dēlictum, i., n., a fault, strictly of omission. Culpa, ae, f., a fault.
5. **Paupertas**, atis, f., humble or poor circumstances, not actual want of the necessities of life. Egestas, atis, f., destitution, extreme poverty. Inōpia, ae, f., scarcity, need of help. Fēndria, ae, f., scarcity, dearth.
6. **Simūlo**, avi, atum, 1, to pretend what does not exist. Dissimūlo, avi, atum, to conceal what does exist:  
*Spem vultu simūlat, In his features he feigns a hopeful look.*—Virg.  
*Dissimūlat mētum, He conceals his fears.*—Ilor.
7. **Hōmo**, inis, m. and f., a man, a human being, including both sexes. Vir, viri, m., a man (not a woman); hence, a husband. Frequently a distinguished man.  
*Vir bōnus, rather than bōnus hōme.*

## EXERCISE X.

1. You are ashamed of your negligence. 2. I am vexed at the morals of the state. 3. Your enemies repent of their intemperance. 4. I pity that old man. 5. I am entirely weary of life. 6. God never repents of his first design. 7. I am not only vexed at but also ashamed of my folly. 8. Men pitied their punishment not more than the crime by which (*abl.*) they had merited punishment. 9. He repeats his sin<sup>1</sup> who is not ashamed of it.<sup>2</sup> 10. Many are ashamed of poverty, even (though) honourable. 11. Myrtle does not misbecome a servant. 12. It by no means becomes an orator to be angry: to pretend (to be so) does not misbecome him. 13. Auxious speech becomes not a philosopher. 14. It becomes a practor to have not only temperate hands, but also eyes. 15. It will delight me to have perished by the hands of men. 16. Priam eluded the watch-fires (*ignes*) and the camp hostile to Troy. 17. It behoves me to do this. 18. But it does not escape you how difficult this is (*subjunc.*).

<sup>1</sup> Say, *sins twice.*<sup>2</sup> Say, *of (his) sin.*

## XI.—DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

¶ § 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *dōceo*, *I teach* (with its compounds); *cēlo*. *I conceal, hide from*: as,

*Quis mūsicām dōcuit Epāminondām*, Who taught Epaminondas music?—Nep.

*Non cēlāvi tē cōrōnēm hōmīnum*, I have not kept from you the men's discourses.—Cic.

*Obe. Accusative after a Passive Verb.*—When a Verb of *teaching*, &c., is turned into the Passive, the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

*L. Marcius omnes mīlitiae artes Edōctus fūcrat*, Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.—Liv.

¶ § 244. Some verbs of *asking*, *entreating*, and *demanding* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *intor̄go* and *percontor*, *I ask*; *ōro*, *I entreat*, *rōgo*, *I ask or entreat*; and *posco* (*rēposco*), *flāgitō*, *I demand*: as,

*Lēgāti Verrem s̄mūlācrum Cērēris rēposeunt*, The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.—Cic.

*Cūsar fr̄ūmentum Aedūos flāgitābnt*, Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.—Caes.

## SYNONYMS.

¶ 1. *Jūventus*, *utis, f.*, the time of youth, by meton. those in a state of youth:

*Ibiq; Jūventūtem exerentur*, And in those pursuits he spent his early life.—Sall.

*Omnis Jūventus convenerant*. All the young men had assembled together.

**Jūventa, ae, f., the season of youth.** **Jūventas, atis, f., the goddess of youth.** The goddess of youth is however sometimes expressed by either *jūventus* or *jūventa*:

*Jūventūtis aedes in Circu Maximō, The temple of the goddess of youth in the Circus Maximus.—Līv.*

2. **Imāgo, iñis, f.** (root im—whence *Imitor*—or, with a sibilant, *sim*, whence *similis*, a likeness), a copy of a thing whether in sculpture or painting, or in idea. **Simūlācrum, i, n. (simulē), any figure made to resemble something else: esp. an image.** **Efigies, ēi, f. (effigērē), not used of painting, but of sculpture—a bust.** **Stātua, ae, f. (stare), allied in meaning to *simulacrum*—the latter usually means *the sacred figure of a god*; the former *the statue of a man*:**

*Similēra degrum immortallū dēpulsa sunt, et stātuae vēterū hōmīnum dēfectae, The images of the immortal gods were cast out, and the statues of the ancients thrown down.—Tao.*

4. **Aevum, i, n. (aiw̄), a very long space of time, an age.** **Tempus, òris, n., time (in general); also a point of time, an epoch—hence an opportunity, a seasonable time.**

*Tempōre, et in tempōre advénis, You come seasonably, and at the very nick o. time.—Ter.*

**Tempestas, atis, f., an entire space of time—a period, a season (καιρός).**

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *Lastly;*

" *I hide this from you;*  
" *To make great demands;*

Lat. *At the last, ad extrēmum.*

" *I hide you this.*

" *To demand great things.*

#### EXERCISE XI.

1. The wise man will teach his sons justice, frugality, temperance, (and) fortitude. 2. I hide these things from Alcibiades. 3. Minerva instructed Cicero in all accomplishments (arts). 4. Catiline instructed the young men in wicked deeds. 5. Philosophy has taught us all things. 6. My son has not concealed these things from me. 7. I did not conceal from you the conversation of Ampius. 8. They are ridiculous who teach others what they themselves have not tried. 9. We ought not to conceal our opinion from our friends. 10. Porcius Cato was asked his opinion. 11. The Latin legions, by long association, had been made-familiar-with (*edōcēre*) the military tactics (*militia*) of the Romans. 12. Cicero, by means of (*per*) the ambassadors, had been taught everything. 13. He demanded of the parents a price for (*pro*) the burial of their children. 14. They demanded from him the statue of Ceres and Victory. 15. The people demanded corn of me. 16. This, lastly, I particularly<sup>1</sup> ask of you. 17. No one will ask you my age. 18. (For) nothing beyond do I importune the gods—nor do I make greater demands<sup>2</sup> of my powerful friend.

<sup>1</sup> Magnōpōre.

<sup>2</sup> Flāgīto : see Phrases.

## XII.—DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE—(continued).

A § 245. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying to make or appoint, to name, to reckon or esteem, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object (Factitive Acc.) : as,

*Ancum Martium rēgēm (Fact. Acc.) pōpūlus erāvit, The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv.

*Cicerōnēm ūniverſa civitas consūlēm (Fact. Acc.) déclarāvit, The whole state declared Cicero consul.*—Cic.

*Rōmulus urbē ex nōmine suo Rōmam (Fact. Acc.) vōcāvit, Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.*—Eutr.

*Contemp̄sīt Siciłos, non duxit (eos) hōmīnes (Fact. Acc.), He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.*—Cic.

A Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

A § 246. Transitive Verbs compounded with trans and circum, as transjicio, transduco, transporto, to carry across, and circumduco, to lead around, take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed: as,

*Agēsilaus Hellespontūm cōpias trājēcit, Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep.

*Hannibal nōnāgiunta mīllia pēdūtūm Ibērum trādūxit, Hannibal carried ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.*—Liv.

*Pompēius Roscillūm omnia sna praeſidīa circumduxit, Pompeius led Roscius round all his entrenchments.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. In such cases one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition.

Obs. 2. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives remains: as,

*Mjor multītūdo Germānōrum Rhēnum transduclūtur, A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.*—Caes.

## SYNONYMS

D 1. *Dūx, dūcis, m. and f., a leader, a general:*

*Dux grēgis, the ram.*—Virg.  
*Dux armenti, the bull.*—Ov.

*Ductor, òris, m., a guide:*

*Ductor dūcum, a guide for the chiefs, i.e. commander-in-chief.*—Sen.

*Impērātor, òris, m., a commander or emperor.* When used in reference to a general it followed his name; when used of the Caesars it preceded it (see St. L. Gr. 937). M. T. Cīcēro Impērātor. Impērātor Augustus.

L 2. *Occāsio, ònis, f., an opportunity offered by chance to undertake anything, used in general sense.* Opportūnitas, òtis, f., convenience of time, place, or any circumstance whatever enabling one to undertake anything with facility and a good prospect of success:

*Opportūnitas temp̄ris, convenience of time.*—Cic.

*Opportūnitas lōci, the favourable nature of the position.*—Caes.

D 2. **Hōstis**, *is, m.* and *f.*, anciently the same as *p̄fēgrinus*, *a foreigner*, hence *a public or foreign enemy in war*. **Ipm̄icōs**, *i., m.*, *a private, personal, foe*; also used properly to express an army or his country.

Omnibus r̄ip̄publicae inimicis esse me fieriū hostem prae me s̄ro, *I openly declare myself most untiring foe to all enemies of the commonwealth*.—Cic.

**Adversārius**, *i., m.*, a generic term for an opponent whether in the field, a court of justice, or in politics; *an adversary, a resisting foe*.

C 4. **Dūco**, *xi, etum, 3, to lead*. **Ducto**, *āvī, ītūm, 1, frequent. of dūco*: *to have the lead of (troops)*; often equivalent to *deceive, delude, lead by the nose, in a bad sense*:

Dūcente [not dūctante] dōcō, *Under the guidance of the god*.—Virg.

D 5. **Nōmen**, *Inis, n.*, *the name of the gens to which a man belonged*. **Praenōmen**, *Inis, n.*, *the name which marked the individual*. **Cognōmen**, *Inis, n.*, *the family name*. **Agnōmen**, *Inis, n.*, *a supplementary name, a name given on account of some exploit*. In Lūcius Cornelius Scipio Africānus, Lucius is the praenomen, Cornelius the nomen, Scipio the cognomen, and Africanus the agnomen.

A 6. **Bēātus**, *a, uni*, *expresses a contented and happy condition of mind, as that of a man who desires no more than he has*. **Fēlīx**, *leis, fortunate, happy, prosperous*. **Fortūnātus**, *a, um*, *favoured of fortune*:

Si est ēnim quod dēsīt, ne beatus quidēm est, *For if he want anything, a man cannot indeed be happy*.—Cic.

Si quis r̄ip̄publicae sit infēlix, felix esse non pōtest, *If a man bring misfortune on his country, fortunate he cannot be*.—Cic.

O fortūnātōs nīmīum, *O too highly favoured (husbandmen!)*—Virg.

A 7. **Incendo**, *di, sum, 3; accendo, di, sum, 3; inflammo, avi, ītūm, 1*; all signify to set on fire, to burn. **Incendō**, from within, to destroy by burning: accēdere, at a single point, to set light to, to kindle a lamp or candle. **Inflammāre**, to put into a blaze either from within or without. **Succendo**, *si, sum, 3, to set on fire from beneath, as a funeral pile*. **Crēmo**, *avi, ītūm, 1, to destroy by burning*: **concrēmo**, to reduce to ashes.

## PHRASES.

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Eng. Time for an action, etc.; | Lat. Time of an action, tempus actionis<br>also tempus āgendi, or ad āgen-<br>dum. |
| " Not only, but even;          | " Non sōlum, sed (vērum) s̄tam.  |
| " Much;                        | " (Often) Many things, multa.  |

## EXERCISE XII.

1. The Romans appointed Q. Fabius general. 2. All the centuries declared Sulla (to be) consul. 3. They call the convenient time for an action, an opportunity. 4. They decide (*jūdīco*) Antonius to be not only not consul, but even an enemy. 5. He considers him (to be) an enemy. 6. He called the city Antioch from (*ex*) the name of his father Antiochus. 7. You will not rightly call (*sut. perf.*) him happy who possesses (*partic.*) much. 8. They appoint Licinius Calvus tribune of the soldiers. 9. They appointed patricians as tribunes of the soldiers with consular power. 10. He leads his army over the Rhone. 11. Caesar sets the town on fire and leads his army across the Loire. 12. Caesar leads the cavalry over the bridge. 13. He had conveyed a large part of the cavalry over the river. 14.

The Helvetii had already conveyed three parts<sup>1</sup> of their forces across the river. 15. In those ships he transpor<sup>t</sup>t his soldiers over the river. 16. Ho (*eho*)! slave (*puer*), lead that (*iste*) man round these rooms.

<sup>1</sup> When the numerator of a fraction | the ordinal for the denominator is only one less than the denominator | often omitted.

### XIII.—ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE AND ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards.*, For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long?* *How far?* *How high?* *How deep?* *How broad?* *How thick?* as,

Pēdem e villa adhuc égressi non sūmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic.

Quaedam bestiāloū unum diem vivunt, *Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

Pericles quadrāginta annos praeftuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Campus Mārathon ab Athēnis cīcliter millia passuum dēcem abest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

Militē agḡērem lātūm pēdēs trēcentos triginta, altūm pēdēs octōginta exstruxerūnt, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet wide and 80 feet high.*—Cæs.

(Without the Adj. *latus*, *altus*. the Genitive would have been used : see § 274.)

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection : as,

Me cæcum, qui haec ante non vidērim, *My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic.

O vim maximam errōris, O the enormous power of error!—Cic.

Eheu mē misérūm, *O hapless me!*

Pro dēorum atque hōminum fidem! *In the name of gods and men!*—Cic.

En quātuor āras, *Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecco* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative : as,  
Ecce tuas literas (sc. sunt) do Varrōne, *There is your letter about Varro.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative : as,  
*Vae victis, Woe to the conquered.*—Llv.  
*Hei misere mihi, Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

- 1. Opp Co from
- 2. Am Ampl plus Ne elega No more.
- 3. Trah Tign build Ne The p Ut sailor
- 4. Ferm near Paen exper

- 1. D city of woman August tant fro nearly from the cubits were the rate spā erected guardian written
- 15. Em gods, a from w man!

- <sup>1</sup> Ut al always

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Oppugno**, *avi, atum, to assault. Obsideo*, *edi, essum, 2 (ob sideo), to besiege: Conniliis ab oppugnandā urbe ad obsidēdā versis, Their plan having changed from an assault upon the city to besieging it.—Liv.*
2. **Amplius**, *māgis, plus*, are all comparatives, and imply *superiority*. **Amplius** is used of *extent, quantity, duration*. **Māgis** relates to *quality*, and plus to number  
*Nee vīdētur quicquam māgis élégans, Nor does anything appear to be more elegant.—Cic.*  
*Noctem non amplius unam falle dōlo, Delude her for just one night, no more.—Virg.*
3. **Trabs**, *trābū, f., or Trābos*, *is, f., is a long narrow beam, like a pole Tignum, l, n., one shorter and thicker, like a block. The cross-beams of a building are trābes:*  
*Nexae trābes aere, Cross-beams bracketted together with brass.—Virg.*  
The poets sometimes use *trabs* of a ship:  
*Ut trābe Cyprī Myrtōū pāvīdus nauta sēcet māre, That he, as a raven-sailor, should, in a bark of Cyprian timber, plough the Myrtoan deep.—Hor.*
4. **Fermē** and **Fērē** are used to save the accuracy of an expression, like our *about*, *near about* (less or more), *as nearly as can be stated*. **Prōpē** is *nearly, not quite*. **Paenē** is opposed to *pālēnē*; *almost*. Both *Prōpe* and *Paenē* often qualify an expression, which may be hyperbolical.

## PHRASE.

Eng. *He used to do it;*Lat. (often) *Faciēbat.*

## EXERCISE XIII.

1. Dionysius was tyrant of Syracuse thirty-eight years. 2. The city of Troy was besieged for ten years because of (*ob* with *acc.*) one woman. 3. The elephant is said to live two hundred years. 4. Augustus used to sleep not more than seven hours. 5. Zama is distant from Carthage a journey of five days. 6. Saguntum was situated nearly a mile from the sea. 7. He carried a rampart, six feet high, from the camp to the water. 8. Antiochus constructed a moat six cubits deep (and) twelve wide. 9. Those-armed-with-a-spear (*iastati*) were the first line (*ācies*), distant from each other (*inter se*) a moderate space. 10. Upright beams, distant from each other two feet, are erected in the earth. 11. O wicked man! 12. O wolf, excellent guardian, as the saying is, for the sheep!<sup>1</sup> 13. O the affectionately written letter of Brutus! 14. O once happy Roman generals! 15. Eminent man and distinguished citizen! 16. In the name of the gods, a disgraceful crime! 17. Ah luckless man! 18. Woe is me; from what hopes have I fallen! 19. O abandoned and audacious man! 20. Woe is me, I am afraid to speak!

<sup>1</sup> Ut alunt, or quod alunt. The phrase | the sentence—it never stands first. always follows one or more words in | <sup>2</sup> Genitive.

## XIV.—ACCUSATIVE OF CLOSER DEFINITION.

Δ § 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to : as,

Hannibal, adversum fēnum grāviter ictus, cēcidit, Hannibal fell  
wreath wounded in the fore part of the thigh.—Liv.

Equus trēmit artūs. The horse trembles in its limbs.—Virg.

Fēminae nudae brāchia et lācertos, Women with both the lower and  
upper part of the arm bare.—Tac.

Trējectus pēdes, With the feet pierced.—Virg.

Δ Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used : as,

Pēdibus nēger, Diseased in the feet.—Cic.

Capti oculis talpae, Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).—Virg.

Δ § 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative : as, induor, amīcior, I clothe, put on myself; exnor, I strip off (from myself); cingor, accingor, I gird on myself; and the like : as,

Inātile ferrum cingitur, He girds on the bootless steel.—Virg.

Andrōgei gāleam induitūr, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.—Virg.

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi lēbillos tibūllamque līcerto, With their satchels and tablet  
swinging at their elbow. (Suspensi, having fastened to themselves : amē-

Δ § 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions magnum (maximam) partem, for the most part; vicem, on account of; sēcūs, sex; cētēra, in other respects; nihil, not at all : as,

Suēvi maximam partem lacte atque pēcōre vivunt, The Suēvi for the most part live on milk and cattle.—Cic.

Tuam vicem saepe dōleo, I often grieve on your account.—Cic.

Libērōrum cāptūm vīrē sēcūs ad dēcēm millia capta, Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.—Liv.

Vir cētēra ēgrēgius, A man excellent in other respects.—Liv.

## SYNOMYS.

M. Ico, Icl, ietum, 3, properly to strike, to reach with a blow, chiefly by throwing; especially iētre foedus, to strike a treaty. Verbēo, avi, itum, 1, to beat, batter. Fērio (percussi, percussum), 4, to strike by a violent blow:

Ārēte mādrum fērire, To strike a wall with the ram.

Percūtio, usal, usum, 3 (supplies the deficiencies of fērio), to shake with a blow, strike violently :

Fulmine percūti, To be shaken by lightning, by a thunderbolt, whereas fulmina (lotus means only, reached or struck by lightning.—Cic.

Lēviter ictus is more correct than lōviter percussus.

A 2. Brachium (*Bpx̄l̄w*), i., n., the arm; especially, from the elbow to the wrist. Lacertus, i., m., the arm from the shoulder to the elbow:  
 Laudat brachia et nudos mēdias plus parte lacertos, *He praises her arms, and the upper part bare more than half way down.*—Ov.  
 Ulna, ae, f., the whole arm from the shoulder to the hand, serving as a measure—an ell. Cubitus, i., m., the elbow.

A 3. Saucio, avi, itum, 1, to wound in any way. Vulnēro, avi, itum, 1, to wound by cut or thrust.  
 Servi nonnulli vulnērantur, ipse Rubrius in turbā sauciātur, *Some of the slaves are wounded, Rubrius himself gets a blow in the crowd.*—Sall. fr.  
 Laedo, ei, sum, 3, to hurt in any way.

A 4. Gladius, i., m., the usual term for a sword. Ensis, is, m., rather a poetical term. Livy once uses it in the same sense as gladius. Gladius, is a broad, cutting sword. Sica, ac, f., a dagger, (*scicire*) generally the unfair secret weapon of the assassin. Pugio, onis, m. (*pungere*), a dagger or short sword, often worn by magistrates and others.

A 5. Vinculum, i., n. (*vincire*), anything that binds:  
 Linea vincula, ties made of flax.—Virg.  
 Catena, ae, f., an iron or metal chain:  
 Stridor tractus catenae, *The rattling of a chain trailing along (the floor).*  
 Virg.

A 6. Läqueus, i., m., a string with a running knot, or halter:  
 Collum in läqueum inæcōrē, *To put the neck into a halter.*—Cic.

A 7. Amictio, reui, ictum, 4, to clothe, used exclusively of outer garments. Induo, ui, itum, 3, to put or draw on (clothes). Vestio, ivi, itum, 4, of clothes for the protection or ornament of the body:  
 Pallium quo amictus, soccos quibus indutus est, *The cloak in which he was enveloped, and the shoes which he had put on.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

| Eng.                            | Lat.                                      |
|---------------------------------|---|
| " The same as ;                 | The same which.                           |
| " His leg was struck ;          | " He was struck (as to) his leg (acc.).   |
| " I especially care for this ;  | " I care for this alone (unum).           |
| " To make this boast ;          | " To boast this (neut.).                  |
| " Twice or thrice, not more ;   | " Bis tergo.                              |
| " Two or three times, or more ; | " Bis terque.                             |
| " This is for the most part ;   | " This is (as to) the most part [(acc.)]. |
| " Many of the male sex ;        | " Many the male sex (acc.).               |

## EXERCISE XIV.

1. He was struck with a stone on the right knee. 2. He was wounded in both arms<sup>1</sup> by the downfall of the bridge. 3. Apollo, with his fair<sup>2</sup> shoulders clothed with a cloud. 4. Lo the Trojan boy, with his honourable head uncovered! 5. With his temples still bare, to his side he had girt (*uccingo*) his sword. 6. The Trojan women stand round with their hair dishevelled, according to custom. 7. Seven virgins clothed themselves in a long robe. 8. He puts on the robe that he had before put off. 9. She had one foot free<sup>3</sup> from fetters. 10. He encourages his companions, and puts on his armour. 11. He returned clad in the spoils<sup>4</sup> of Achilles. 12. I especially remind you of this one thing<sup>5</sup>. 13. In other respects<sup>6</sup> I agree with Crassus (*dat.*). 14. Those admonitions<sup>7</sup> which we get from nature. 15. She is able

to make the same boast as Cyrus. 16. He attacks him (while) making this boast. 17. This one thing you aim at, to avert from the state the efforts of Antonius. 18. I received letters from you not more than two or three times at-most.<sup>¶</sup> 19. Our speech consists in great part of iambics (*abl.*). 20. You are angry on our account. 21. A multitude of people of the male and female sex. 22. Bocchus in other respects was ignorant of the Roman people (*gen.*).

<sup>1</sup> Sing. *Both*, *uterque*.

<sup>2</sup> Candens, *nitis*: say, clothed (*imperf.*)  
<sup>(us)</sup> as to his fair shoulders.

<sup>3</sup> Exūta ērat, with acc.  
<sup>4</sup> Exūtias indūtus.

<sup>5</sup> Hoc unum : St. L. G. 253.

<sup>6</sup> Cetera.

<sup>7</sup> Say, those (things) which we are au-  
monished.

<sup>8</sup> Summum.

#### XV.—CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF TOWNS.

A § 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

*Rōmae Consules*, *Athēnis Archontes*, *Carthāgē Suffētes*, sive jū-  
dices, quōdannis cœlābuntur, *At Rome Consule*, *at Athens Archons*, *at  
Carthage Suffetes*, or judges, were elected annually.—Nep.

*Tibur Rōmanāmo*, When at *Tivoli I am in love with Rome*.—Hor.

*Thēbis, Argis, Uلبris, At Thebes, Argos (Argī), Ulubrae*.—Hor.  
*Dionysius Cōrinthi pūeros dōcēbat* *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth*.—Cic.

A § 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives: *dōmi*, at home; *hūmi*, on the ground; *rūre*, more frequently *rūri*, in the country; *militiae*, belli, in the field: as,

*Vir dōni non solum sed etiam Rōmae clārus*, *A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome*.—Liv.

*Non eadē dōmi quo militiae fortūna ērat plēbi Rōmānae*, *The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field*.—Liv.

*Vir dōni bellique fortissimus*, *A man most valiant at home and in the field*.—Vell.

*Forte ēvēnit ut rūri (or rūre) essēmus*, *It so happened that we were in the country*.—Cic.

*Obs. Dōmi* is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as in *illā dōmo*; *in dōmo pūblici*; *in dōmo Cæsarii*.

A § 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

*Curius primus éléphantos quātuor Rōmanū duxit. Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Entr.

*Pausaniam cum classe communi Cyprum atque Hellespontum miserunt, They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

*Obs.* The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally : as, *Italiānū vénit, To Italy he came.*—Virg.

*Verba rēfers aures non p̄vēnientia nostras, Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

**A** § 260. The Accusatives dōmū, *home*; and rus, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns : as,

*Sēmel ēgressi, nunquam dōmū revertēro, Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

*Ego rus ibo, atque ibi mānēbo. I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

**A** § 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a preposition : as,

*Dīonyśius Plātonēm Āthēnīs arcessivit, Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

*Dēmāratus, Tarquīnii régis pāter, Tarquīnios Cōrinthō fūgit, Dematus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the same way are used dōmo, *from home*; rūre, *from the country*.

#### SYNONYMS.

**A** 1. *Mōriōr, mortuus sum, 3, to die in any way.* Oppēto, ivi, itum, 3 (with mortem sometimes expressed, but generally understood) is used of a death which might have been, but has not been, avoided, e.g. in battle, or in any hazardous enterprise :

*Quels ante ḥra pātrūm configit oppētēre, Whose happy lot it was to die in sight of their fathers.*—Virg.

*Occīdo, cīdi, cīsum, 3, properly to fall down, as from exhausted strength, used figuratively for to die.* Obeo, ii, itum, 4, properly to go through (generally with morteni or some kindred word expressed, though it is sometimes understood), hence, *to die*.

**A** 2. *Cēlōber, bris, bre, and Inclýtus (-itus), a, um (poet.), denote celebrity, but are generally used of things, not of persons.* Clārus, a, um, illustris, e, and nōbilis, e, denote distinction, as for birth or achievements. The clārus is celebrated for his deeds, the illustris for his rank and character, the nōbilis for his family connexions.

3. *Vivo, vixi, victum, 3, to live, opposed to mōri.*

*Vitam dēgēre, to spend one's life :*

*Sēnēx pūtat se annum vivēre posse, The old man fancies he may live a year.*—Cic.

*Quod rēliquum est vitae in ôtio Rhōdi dégam, What remains of life I will spend in retirement at Rhodes.*—Cic.

1. **Sálubris**, *e*, used of things only, *wholesome, healthy in a medical sense.* **Sálūtāris**, *e*, in the most general sense, *what tends to preserve health or fortune.* Of persons *serviceable, advantageous:*

*Clivis bénēfīcīs et sálutāris, A kind-hearted and serviceable citizen.—Cic.*

*Sálutāris līttéra, The saving letter, i.e. the letter *A*, being the first of the word *absolvo*, which was written on the voting tablets for a man's acquittal.—Cic.*

2. **Prōficiēcor**, *fecit sum*, *3 (probably from fācere), to set out upon a journey.* Iter facēre and pērēgrināri *to make the journey, travel.* Iter facēre, *to travel either at home or abroad; pērēgrināri abroad only:*

*Iface stūdīa pernoetant nōbiscum, pērēgrināntur, rustificantur, These pursuits abide with us at night, when travelling, and when in our country retreat.—Cic.*

### EXERCISE XV.

1. The library at Alexandria was formerly most famous.
2. The emperor Sevērus died (*deceōlo*) at York a very aged man.<sup>1</sup>
3. Tarquinius Superbus died at Cumae. Archimēdes, a most distinguished mechanician, lived at Syracuse.
5. Artemisia, wife of Mansōlus, made that (*ille*) noble sepulchre at Halicarnassus.
6. Timoleon overthrew from the foundations the citadel which Dionysius had fortified at Syracuse.
7. The most honourable abode for old age (*gen.*) was at Lacedaemon.
8. Quintius determined to spend his life in the country.
9. The old man died at his own home.
10. The bodies of young men are more healthy on service than at home.
11. The mother of Darius assumed a mournful garb, and threw her body on the ground.
12. Ambassadors were sent to Athens.
13. The Jews were carried away captive to Babylon.
14. The consul Laevinus led his legions to Agrigentum.
15. M. Livius removed into the country and remained there many years.
16. They will return home after a few days.<sup>1</sup>
17. He who now goes from the-country-of-the-Venēti (*Veneti*) to Neapōlis crosses the Apennine mountains.
18. Timoleon sent for colonists from Corinth.
19. Caesar departed from Tarragona and came thence to Marseilles.
20. Pompey went from Luceria to Canusium, and thence to Brundusium.
21. He returned from the country to Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Admōdūm sēnēx.

### XVI.—GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES—POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *The war of or with Pyrrhus.*

Similātio amicitiae, *The pretence of friendship.*

Nāvis aurī, *A ship of, i.e. laden with, gold.*

(But a *ship [made] of gold* would be *nāvis aurea* or *nāvis ex auro facta.*)

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *cāsā*, *grātiā*, *ergō*, *for the sake (of)*, which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

Vōluptātes ūmittuntur mājōrum vōluptātum dūlpiscendārum censū,  
Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.—Cic.

Dōlōres suscipiuntur mājōrum dōlorum effugiendōrum grātia, Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.—Cic.

Si quid contrā alias lōges hājus līgi's ergō factum est, If anything has been done against other laws for the sake of this law.—Cic.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the Possessor, or the person or thing whereto anything belongs:—

Graves Cyclopūm offēinæ, The heavy forges of the Cyclops.—Hor.

In umbrōsis Hēlēcōnis ôris, In the shady regions of Helicon.—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb *sunt*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed:—

Omnia sunt victōris, All things are (the property) of the conqueror (i.e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

Militū est dūci pārcē, It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.  
Nihil est tam angusti āntī quam āmāre dītilias, Nothing is (the characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.—Cic.

Cūjusvis hōminis est errāre, It is (the part) of any man to err.—Cic.

*Obs.* This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns: thus we must say, *mēcum est, it is mine* or *my duty*; *tuum est, it is thine* or *thy duty*; *not mei, tui est*.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Dēus, i., m., God, the Supreme Being.** Dīvus, i., m., generally a hero who after death received divine honours. Nūmen, ñīs, m. (from obsol. nuo), the power or will of the god, used by the poets for the divinity itself:

Dīvus Cæsar, The divinely-honoured Cæsar.—Tac.

Aquārum nūmen Neptūnus, Neptune, the divinity presiding over water.—Or.

2. **Edūco, xi, etum, 3, to lead or draw out:**

Cōpis in āiem edūcere, To lead forth an army to battle.—Nep.

Edūco, ávi, ãtum, 1, to educate, whether in a physical or moral sense. Erūdio. Ivi, Itum, 4, to free from ignorance, instruct.

3. **Obēdīo, ivi, ãtum, 4 [ob and audi], to obey, whether it be an equal, a superior, or an inferior; to do what one is desired, from whatever motive, whether choice or necessity.** Pāreo, ul, ãtum, 2, to obey (habitually), esp. of obedience rendered to a master or parent; it is near akin therefore in meaning to serve:

Jam dōlīti ut pāreant, nondum ut serviant, Already reduced to obedience, though not yet to actual servitude.—Tac.

4. **Sūpēro, ávi, ãtum, 1, primarily to surmount, to rise above, then to surpass in any way: hence, to conquer, subdue.** Vīnco, vīcl, victum, 3 (probably equivalent to vi supērire), originally to conquer in battle, to subdue resistance by force; to surmount, surpass, physically or intellectually. Hence vīnēre, as distinguished from sūpēreare, implies exertion, intellectual or physical, to conquer opposition: the former often denotes a mere temporary superiority, the latter a defeat more decisive and permanent.

#### EXERCISE XVI.

1. Honour is the reward of valour. 2. Juno was the wife of Jupiter. 3. Helen was the cause of the Trojan war. 4. The

unlucky Phaëthon fell down from the chariot of the sun. 5. Riches are the incentives to (of) wicked deeds. 6. Pan is the god of Arcadia. 7. The father of the winds directs the ship. 8. Thebes became (the property) of the Roman people by the right of war. 9. Everything belonged to the enemy (*say*, was of the enemy, *plur.*) 10. It is (the duty) of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to slay (them). 11. As<sup>1</sup> it is the part of parents to educate their children well, so it is (the duty) of children to reverence (their) parents and obey them (*dat.*). 12. Do what it is your duty to do. 13. It is your-duty (*vestrum*) to determine what is (*subj.*) best for the state.<sup>2</sup> 14. It is your duty to provide that. 15. Antiochus, king of Syria, determined to take possession of Egypt. 16. The Romans, among the conditions of peace, demanded the surrender of Hannibal. 17. Orodes, the brother of Mithridates, took possession of the vacant sovereignty. 18. It belongs to a commander (*say*, is of a commander) to overcome not less by strategy (*consilium*) than by the sword. 19. Everything which belonged to the woman becomes the property of the husband (*vir*) under the name<sup>3</sup> of dower. 20. Your duty is to reckon nothing as (*pro*) certain.

<sup>1</sup> *As...so, ut...ita.*<sup>2</sup> *Dat.*<sup>3</sup> *Under the name, nomine (abl.)*

## XVII.—PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

*S* § 269. The Genitive is used after Substantives, to denote the whole whereof a part is taken : *as,*

*Magna vī auri, A great quantity of gold.—Cic.*

*Mōdiūs tritici, A peck of wheat.—Cic.*

*Multique pars mei vitabit Lilitinam, And an ample part of me shall evade the tomb.—Hor.*

*R* § 270. The Partitive Genitive is often found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns used substantively.

These Adjectives are :

tantum, quantum, aliquantum,  
multum, plus, plurimum,  
nihil,\* minus, minimum,  
dimidium, paullum, reliquum.

\* Nihil is however always a Substantive.

The Pronouns are :

hoc, idem, illud, id,  
quidquam, aliquod, and quid.

They are used as Substantives only in the Nominative and Accusative, and must not depend upon Prepositions : *as,*

5. Riches  
the god of  
8. Thebes  
ight of war.  
the enemy,  
his sheep,  
lucate their  
nce (they)  
duty to do.  
(i.) best for  
Antiochus,  
16. The  
surrender of  
possession  
er (say, is  
ium) than  
oman be-  
of dower.

(abl.)

denote

rt of me

ter the  
ed sub-re and  
as,

*Pius virium, More of strength.*—Sen.  
*Quidquam novi, Anything new.*—Cic.

*Nihil hūmānūrum rērum, No human affairs.*—Cic  
*Quantum incrēmenti Nilus cāpit, tantum spei in annum est, So much  
rise as the Nile undergoes, just so much hope is there for the harvest.*  
Sen.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of *Quantity,\* Place, or Time*, used Substantively : as,

*Satis élōquentiae sapientiae pārum, Plenty of eloquence, little enough  
of wisdom.*—Sall.

*Ubinam gentium } Where in the world?*—Cic.

*Ubi terrārum } To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

*Postea lōci, Afterwards.*—Liv.

*Inde lōci, Thereupon.*—Lucr.

\* These Adverbs are :

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>satis, enough.</i>     | <i>abunde, } abundantly.</i>  |
| <i>pārum, too little.</i> | <i>affātin, } abundantly.</i> |

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after *Comparatives and Superlatives* : as,

*Major fūrēnum, (Thou) elder of the youths.*—Hor.

*Maxime principum, Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

*Gracorūm óratorum praestantissimi, The most eminent of Greek  
orators.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de*, and in certain cases *in, inter*, are used : as,

*Acerbitus ex omnibus nostris sensib⁹ est sensus vīdendi, The keenest  
of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

*Croesus inter rēges opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after *Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number* : as,

*Primi fūrēnum, First of the youths.*—Virg.

*Consulēm alter, one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Frumentum, i., n., a general word for all manner of bread-corn.* *Triticum, i., n., wheat:*

*Frumentum triticeum, Corn consisting of wheat.*—Mart.

2. *Victus, us, m., things to support life, sustenance.*

*Vita, ae, f., life:*

*Vita br̄vīs est, Life is short.*—Cic.

*Victus tēnūs, Slender means of subsistence.*—Cic.

*Vita also refers to the public, and victus to the private, life of a man :*

*Splenditūs non minus in vita quam in victu, Magnificent as much in his  
public as in his private life.*—Nep.

3. *Cōrō, carnis, f., flesh in a general sense as opposed to bone; and as food.*

*Viscēra, um, n. (seldom viscus, cōris, n. sing.), the fleshy substance between the  
skin and the bones, also in a limited sense the inner parts of the body.*

**4** Crēbsr, bra, brum, frequent, in quick succession; rather too often than too seldom. Frēquens, tis, often occurring, frequent, common. Of an assembly crēber would imply that it was closely packed, inconveniently so. Frēquene, that it was full, numerously attended:

Frēquentes sénatōres, the senators in great numbers.

Crēbri sénatōres, the senators closely seated together (as from lack of room).  
Crēbri hostes cādunt, The enemy fall thick.—Plaut.

Frēquēs sénatūs cōvēnit, A full senate assembled.—Cic.

**5** Pēcus, pēcōris, n., cattle collectively, a herd, particularly of small animals, as sheep, pigs, &c. Pēcus (rare in Nom. Sing.), pēcūdis, f., a single head of cattle, generally a sheep.

**6** Antiquus, a, um, ancient, opposed to nōvus. Vētus, &tis, old, old-standing, opposed to rēcēs:

Antiquus hōmo, a man of ancient times.

Vētus vīnum, old wine.

Antiqui īmīci, friends of years gone by.

Vētēres īmīci, friends of many years' standing.

From the fact that what is old is generally cherished by us, antiquus is sometimes used, in the comparative degree, like carus:

Nihil antiquius īmīciā nostrā est, Nothing is more cherished than our friendship.—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Eng. Ten bushels a-piece;    | Lat. Dēni mōdit.                         |
| " Their food consists of;    | " Consists in (followed by abl.).        |
| " A man of good disposition; | " Prōbae īdōlis, or prōba īdōle.         |
| " Much, very much;           | " Multum, permultum, plūrīmum, with gen. |
| " The battle of Cannae;      | " The Cannēsian battle, Pugna Cannēsia.  |
| " Abundance of wine;         | " Vini affatim, abunde, etc.             |

#### EXERCISE XVII.

- Fulvius Flaccus carried in triumph thirty-one pounds<sup>1</sup> of gold.
- Caesar divided among the people (*dat.*), man-by-man, ten bushels a piece of corn, and the same number of (*tōtādem*) pounds of oil. 3. The greater part of their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh (*abl.*).
- There is an infinite multitude of people (*homines*), very numerous buildings, and a great number of cattle. 5. A change of soil and climate has (in it) much pleasure. 6. Men look down upon and despise those in whom there is no (*nihil*) valour, no spirit, no sinew (*plu.*). 7. The colonists taken (*deducō*) to Capua found a considerable quantity of vessels (*vuscūlūm*) of ancient workmanship (*opus*). 8. In truth there is (*īnēst*) very great strength. 9. He summons all in whom there was an abundance of audacity. 10. Because it was (now) the close of the day the battle was not commenced; but when (*ubi*) the greater part of the night had elapsed, they assail the camp of the enemy. 11. Sufficient renown was won by the battle of Cremona (use *adj.*). 12. The matter is in-hand (*in mānībus*), but you are far away (*tōngē gentium*). 13. Wherever these (*masc.*) are, there is the whole defence of the republic. 14. The matter is in the same position<sup>2</sup> in which you left it. 15. Tarquin, the seventh and likewise (*idem*) last of the Roman kings, conquered the Volsci

16. The most eminent<sup>3</sup> kings of the Persians were Cyrus and Darius the son of Hystaspes. 17. Cyrus left wine in abundance. 18. Caesar had obtained abundance of power and renown.

<sup>1</sup> Cendo (*indecl.*) trīginta unum. <sup>2</sup> Sæc, place (*locus*). <sup>3</sup> Excellens, utis.

## XVIII.—GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

† § 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) priseac ac nūmis dīræ sēvēritatis, *A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity*—Liv.

Ager quatuor jāgerum, *A farm of four acres*.—Liv.

Vir maximi corpōris, *A man of very great stature*.—Nep.

† Obs. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent* is hōmo ingēnīsus (not hōmo ingēnī); but *a man of great talent* is hōmo magni ingēni.

## SYNONYMS.

1. Quotidie, *every day*, is used of things that are daily repeated. In singūlos dies, *daily*, of those which from day to day are making advance.

Quotidie vel pōttus in singīlos dies br̄evīores littēras ad te mittō, *I send you daily shorter letters, or rather which from day to day become shorter*.—Cic.

In dies plūra lūgitabat, *Day by day he kept revolving more schemes in his mind*.—Sall.

Singūlis diēbus, *Every day of a finite determinate period*.

2. Ripa, ae, f., *a bank*, as of a river; Littus (litus), öris, n., *the shore of the sea*. Littus, *the line which separates the land from the sea—the strand*. Öra, ue, f., *the coast* (of the land).

Circa ripam flūmīnis Pādi et litore mītris Adriāticī, *About the banks of the river Po and the shores of the Adriatic Sea*.

Öra Tuseōrum quo per litus extenditūr, *The coast of the Etrurians which stretches along the shore*.—Plin.

3. Firmus, a, um, *strong* from position, immovable, opposed to labans, tis, tottering. Vālidus, a, um, *strong*, able to perform, opp. to imbecillus. a, um, feeble, powerless. Rōbustus, a, um (rōbur), robust, sturdy, durable.

Accusator firmus et vērus, *an unflinching and truthful accuser*.—Cic.

Sōlidus, a, um (sōlūm), *that which resists a shock, or the influence of time*.

Sōlida cōlūma, *a solid column*.—Clo.

4. Rūmor, öris, m., *intelligence of a dark uncertain kind*, not authentic; a report that goes about. Fāma, ae, f., *a report of more importance and stability*; information as opposed to ocular demonstration.

5. Egrēgius, a, um (quāsi o grēge electus), *chosen out of the flock*. *he was excellent, eminent*. Eximus, a, um (ex ēmīre), *select, set apart, eminent*.

6. **Fides**, *M., f.*, the keeping of one's word; also the reliance which others place in us for the exercise of this quality, confidence, faith. **Fidélitas**, *atis, f.*, faithful adherence to those to whom we have once devoted ourselves, fidelity. **Fiducia**, *ac, f.* (*fides*), and **confidentia**, *ac, f.*, the trust we place in others, assurance. **Audacia**, *ae, f.*, daring (usu. of a bad kind), as contemning all danger or restraint.

Quae bona sunt fiduciam faciunt, divitiae audaciā, *Things that are good give rise to hopeful confidence, but riches to reckless daring.*—Sen.

7. **Intelligo**, *exi, ecum, 3*, to understand by means of reflection. **Sentio**, *si, sum, 4*, to perceive, by the senses or the mind.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. To accuse a man of this;  
 " This word pleasure;  
 Lat. *Id aliquem accusare* (or as in Eng.).  
 " *Luce vox voluptatis* (Cic.).

#### EXERCISE XVIII.

1. The ship of Persicus is said to have been of unusual size.  
 2. The Athenians choose two generals: Pericles, a man of approved valour, and Sophocles. 3. Of this matter both I and Calvisius, a man of great judgment, accuse you daily. 4. There was between Labienus and the enemy a stream, of difficult passage (*abl.*), and with rugged banks (*abl.*). 5. Nor can all be of so firm and enduring a soul against unfavourable report. 6. Socrates had seen in his dreams a woman of extraordinary (*extremus*) beauty. 7. Cimon, the Athenian, was a man of the greatest liberality. He was a general of incredible valour, great in war, nor less in peace. 8. The slave of Panopion was a man of admirable fidelity. 9. There was in the Roman army L. Marcius, a young man of the highest spirit and ability. 10. The statue of Augustus was five feet and three quarters<sup>1</sup> (high). 11. We sometimes see clouds of the colour of fire (*igneus*). 12. They fortify the camp with a rampart twelve feet (in height). 13. The plunder of the town was made up of (*suit*) slaves (*nom.*) and things of trifling value. 14. You possess a man of remarkable modesty, well-known valour, and approved fidelity. 15. Epicurus understands not what this word pleasure signifies (*subj.*).

<sup>1</sup> Three quarters, dōdrans, mīs, m.

#### XIX.—GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying capacity; also of desiring, experiencing, remembering, participating, fullness, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

Themistocles pérītissim̄os bellī nāvālis Athēnienses fecit, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.—Nep.

Omn̄es immēnōrem bēnēficiū öderunt, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.—Cic.

Ira imp̄stene sui est, Anger is incapable of you, ruing, itself.—Sen.

*Hōmo particeps est ratiōnis et cogitatiōnis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.—Cic.*

*Bestiae ratiōnis et oratiōnis expertes sunt. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.—Cic.*

*Plēnum Bacchi pectus, A bosom soul full of Bacchus.—Hor.*

*Virtutis compos, Possessed of virtue.—Cic.*

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

|                     |                        |                       |                       |
|---------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>avarus,</i>   | <i>cocetous.</i>       | <i>rūdis,</i>         | <i>unskilled.</i>     |
| <i>avidus,</i>      | <i>greedy.</i>         | <i>insolens,</i>      |                       |
| <i>cipiōsus,</i>    | <i>eager.</i>          | <i>insolitus,</i>     | <i>unaccustomed.</i>  |
| <i>stolidus,</i>    | <i>fool.</i>           | <i>insuetus,</i>      |                       |
| <i>fustidiosus,</i> | <i>disdaining.</i>     | <i>compos,</i>        | <i>master of</i>      |
| <i>invidus,</i>     | <i>jealous.</i>        | <i>impos,</i>         | <i>not master.</i>    |
| <i>timidus,</i>     |                        | <i>pōtens,</i>        | <i>powerful.</i>      |
| <i>pavidus,</i>     | <i>fearful.</i>        | <i>impotens,</i>      | <i>not powerful.</i>  |
| <i>liberalis,</i>   | <i>liberal.</i>        |                       |                       |
| <i>profusus,</i>    | <i>lavish.</i>         | 3. <i>mēnor,</i>      | <i>misiful</i>        |
| <i>parcus,</i>      | <i>stingy.</i>         | <i>innmēnor,</i>      | <i>unmisiful.</i>     |
| 2. <i>pōritus,</i>  | <i>skilled.</i>        | <i>cūriōeus,</i>      | <i>careful.</i>       |
| <i>impōritus,</i>   | <i>unskilled.</i>      | <i>incūriōsus,</i>    | <i>careless.</i>      |
| <i>conscius,</i>    | <i>conscious.</i>      |                       |                       |
| <i>insecus,</i>     |                        | 4. <i>participes,</i> | <i>participating.</i> |
| <i>nescius,</i>     | <i>ignorant.</i>       | <i>consors,</i>       | <i>sharing.</i>       |
| <i>praeceius,</i>   | <i>foreknowing.</i>    | <i>exsors,</i>        |                       |
| <i>gnārus,</i>      | <i>knowing.</i>        | <i>expers,</i>        | <i>not sharing.</i>   |
| <i>ignārus,</i>     | <i>not knowing.</i>    | <i>impōps,</i>        |                       |
| <i>prudens,</i>     | <i>foreseeing.</i>     | 5. <i>plēnus,</i>     | <i>full.</i>          |
| <i>imprudens,</i>   | <i>not foreseeing.</i> | <i>īmānis,</i>        | <i>empty.</i>         |

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *ēdax*, *devouring*; *cāpax*, *holding*.

¶ § 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Particles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *patiens* (*adj.*) *lābōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; *patiens* (*part.*) *lābōres*, (*actually*) *enduring them*: as,

*Epāminondas ādeo fuit vīritatis dīligens, ut ne jōeo quidem mentītur, Epāminondas was as careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.—Nep.*

*Alieni appetēns, sui prōfusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.—Sall.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Sēnectus, nīs, f.*; *sēnecta, nc, f.* (*poet.*), *old age, as a definite period of life.* Sēniūm, i, n., *infirm old age, dotage.*

2. *Vīnum, l, n., wine.* Mērum, i, n., *prop. an adjective with vīnum understood, pure wine.* Tēmētūm, i, n., *an old word for wine, probably for strong heady wine.* From this is derived the Eng. word abstemious.

*Ut scīerūt an tēmētūm olērent, hoc tum vīno nōmen ērat, That they might know whether they smelt of temetum,—this was at that time the name for wine.*  
—P.L.

3. **Péritus**, a, um, *experienced, skilful*. **Eruditus**, a, um, *educated, learned*.

*Eruditus est qui omnibus bonis artibus peritus est, An erudit man is one who is accomplished in all liberal sciences.—Cic.*

**Doctus**, a, um, *learned, accomplished*.

*Homo doctus vel etiam usu péritus, A man learned or even skilful from experience.—Cic.*

4. **Alii**, *others, different persons*. **Ceteri**, *all the others of the same class, the rest*. **Rēliqui**, *the others of whom some have been before named*. **Alii** with *cuncti* or *omnes*, is equivalent to *ceteri*.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *The island of Pharos;*

" *I did this as a boy;*

" *He is the only one who does it;*

Lat. *Insula Phāros,*

" *I a boy did this,*

" *He alone does it.*

#### EXERCISE XIX.

1. The Romans were always eager for glory and greedy of renown.
2. Even now be mindful of coming old age.
3. Many men are more eager for contention than for truth.
4. The island of Pharos is not capable-of-containing a large city.
5. Pythagoras calls (those) eager (*stūliōsus*) for wisdom, philosophers.
6. That nation is by-no-means (*laudiquāquam*) negligent of religion (*pl.*).
7. He is able-to-take (*capax*) a great quantity<sup>1</sup> of food and wine.
8. The sun with intense heat (*ardor*) was scorching the bodies of the Gauls, by no means capable-of-enduring the heat (*aestus*, *pl.*).
9. You have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.
10. The soldier, forgetful of difficulties, advances against the line of the enemy.
11. The nature of man is greedy of novelty.
12. We are by nature most tenacious of those things which we learnt as boys.
13. Pyrrhus was skilful in war, and eager for nothing except power.<sup>2</sup>
14. This animal, which we call man, is the only (one) out of so many kinds of living-creatures (*animans, ntis*) (which is) partaker of reason and thought; of which (things) all the rest (*n. pl.*) are destitute.
15. Man, who is partaker of reason and speech, is more excellent than the beasts which are destitute of reason and speech.
16. Trebatius is come, a man very fond of both (*utergue*) of us.

<sup>1</sup> Say, *much*.

<sup>2</sup> Nullius rei cipidus n*isi* imperii.

#### XX.--GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

##### GENITIVE AFTER TO REMEMBER OR TO FORGET.

§ 278. Verba signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive: as,

*Anīnus mēmīnit praeſerīlōrum, The mind remembers the past.—Cic.*  
*Nee unquam obſtrīſear illius noctis Nor shall I ever forget that memorable night —Cic.*

## 2. GENITIVE AFTER TO ACCUSE, CONDEMN, AND CONVICT.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

*Accusatus est prōditionis.* *He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.* —Nep.

*Caesar Dolabellam rēpētundarūm postulāvit.* *Cæsar impeached Dolabella for extortion.* —Cic.

*Judex absolvit iñjūriarūm eum.* *The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.* —Auct. ad Her.

*Absens prōditionis damnatus est.* *He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.* —Nep.

*Obs. 1.* Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as,  
*Appius de pœnūis rēpētundis est postulatus.* *Appius was impeached for extortion.* —Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *vis*, *violence*: as,  
*de vi postulare, damnare, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty*, *innocent*, *condemned*: as, *reus*, *noxius*, *innoxius*, *insonus*, *mānifestus*, and the like.

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

*Cāpit̄is hōmīnēm condemnāre.* *To condemn a man to death.* —Cic.  
*Oct̄ipli dāmmāri.* *To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.* —Cic.

*Obs.* The Ablative is also used: as, *cīp̄ite dāmmāre.* —Cic.

## SYNONYMS.

*Fācies, sī, f. (fācio), the natural make or aspect of the countenance, which always remains the same. Vultus, n., m., the countenance, the looks. By the face, which is unchangeable, we distinguish one man from another; by the countenance, which is changeable, we learn the emotions of the mind:*

*Rēcordām̄i fāciem, et illos ejus fictos similātōsque vultus, We remember his face, and those features in it which were feigned and assumed.* —Cic.

*Fācies is however sometimes used for the whole figure.*

*3 Mēm̄ini, 3 (= in mēm̄orā tēneo), denotes a state of mind. Rēminiscor, n. perf. 3; and Rēcordor, utus sum, 1; I remember, denote an act of the mind. The first implies that a thing is retained in the mind without having been forgotten, the two last that it is recalled after being driven from one's thoughts. Rēmīisci denotes the act as momentary; Rēcordari denotes it as of some duration—to dwell on a subject recalled to mind.*

*3 Pērīcūlūm, l, n. (Gr. νέίρα), properly a trial; hence, danger.*

*Fao pērīcūlūm in littōris, Test him in letters.* —Ter.

*As however the issue of a trial is generally doubtful it came to signify risk, danger.*

*Discrimen, līns, n. (discerno), prop. a distinction or difference. Its special meaning is, a critical conjecture, a turning point; whereas pērīcūlūm means risk or peril which determines a man's fate.*

*In pērīcūlūm ad discrimen vēcāri, To be called to danger, and indeed to a crisis.* —Cic.

4. **Pristinus**, *a, um, former, olden*: used of things which do not decay from age.  
**Priscus**, *a, um, ancient, olden, of former time, by-gone*, used of things which no longer exist.

*Instabilita et prisa verba, Words old fashioned and obsolete.*—Cic.

*Hoc unum ad pristinam fortinam Cæsari dicitur, This single thing was wanting to maintain the former good-fortune of Caesar.*—Caes.

*Priscus* is moreover a respectful word—speaking of a former age as worthy of honour; a sacred, primitive age, as opposed to the fashion of the day.

*Prisco more, in the good old style.*

5. **Facie*nus***, *bris, n. (ficio)*, *a bold daring action*, generally in a bad sense, unless joined with a qualifying adjective.

*Ad facinorū dñe*cōlecti*, chosen for a daring deed.*—Cic.

*Praeclari facinoris famam quaerit, He seeks the renown of some illustrious deed.*—Sall.

**Scelus**, *bris, n., guilt, wickedness.*

*Scelus est vinciri! Romanū cīvem—scelus verbērū!, That a Roman citizen should be bound is an outrage—that he should be scourged is a crime.*—Cic.

**Flagitium**, *l, n., a disgraceful crime; as, adultery.*

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *To condemn to death;*

" *In his absence;*

" *Sorrow for an offence;*

Lat. *To condemn of the head (cōp̄titio).*

" *Absens.*

" *Sorrow of an offence, poenitentia*

*delicti.*

#### EXERCISE XX.

1. I remember both the voice and the features of my father, the great Anchises. 2. All forgot their wives and children, nor did they remember the war and (its) dangers. 3. A good man forgets all injuries. 4. Let him remember both the old<sup>1</sup> disaster of the Roman people, and the ancient<sup>2</sup> courage of the Helvetii. 5. He himself will acknowledge, and with some grief call to mind,<sup>3</sup> his crimes. 6. I remember human weakness. 7. The mind remembers the past, it perceives the present, it foresees the future. 8. It is the characteristic<sup>4</sup> of folly to discover the faults of others, to be forgetful of its own. 9. He was accused of murder, and was condemned by the judges to death. 10. Themistocles in his absence was judged guilty of<sup>5</sup> treachery. 11. We condemn soothsayers either for folly or for falsehood. 12. Coelius the judge acquitted of injury (*pl.*) him who had wronged the poet Lucilius. 13. These benefits you have from me whom you accuse of treachery.~~14.~~ 14. The senate neither acquitted the king of that crime nor convicted him of it. 15. The magistrate condemns them in their absence to a capital punishment.

<sup>1</sup> Vetus, *bris.*  
<sup>2</sup> Recordor.

<sup>3</sup> Pristinus.

<sup>4</sup> Proprius (*neut.*).

<sup>5</sup> Damno, *risi, atum, l.*

§ 2  
Price  
dicate  
mintri

Qu  
lesson  
Pl

D Ob  
A Ob

§ 2  
the I  
piget,  
taedet,  
the ca

O v  
Me  
Nun  
tired o  
Obs

p  
Obs  
ti

§ 28  
intere  
the la  
importa

Qui  
Milo th  
Refer  
words.—

Obs.  
Pr  
in

Obs.  
bu

## XXI.—GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—(continued).

## 3. GENITIVE OF PRICE OR VALUATION.

*S* § 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote Price or Valuation when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*: as,

*Quanti Chrysogonus dōcet, At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

*Pluris, minoris, vendere, To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

*D* Obs. 1. But a definite price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 318; and even the Ablatives *magnō*, *parvō*, *plūrīmo*, *mīnīmo*, &c. are of frequent occurrence.

*A* Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *floeci*, *pīti*, *nauici*, *assis*, to denote that a thing is of no value at all: especially in the phrases *floeci*, *pīti* *sacēre*, *pendere*, &c., "not to care a straw for."

## 4. GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF FEELING.

*S* § 282. The Personal Verbs *miseror*, *miseresco*, *to pity*; and the Impersonals *miseret*, *miserescit*, *miseretur*, *it causes pity*; *pīget*, *it vexes*; *poenitet*, *it repenteth*; *pūdet*, *it causes shame*; *taedet*, *pertaesum est*, *it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

*O virgo, misérere mei, O maiden, have pity on me!*—Ov.

*Me pīget stultitia meae, I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

*Nunquam suscepti néglixi Atticum pertaesum est, Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

*Obs. 1.* With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 211.

*Obs. 2.* *Miseror*, and *commiseror* to *commiserate* follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

## 5. GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND RÉFERT.

*S* § 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *intérest* and *rēfert*, *it is of advantage*, *importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person to whom a thing is of importance or benefit: as,

*Quid Mīlōnis intérent̄ interfici Clōlium, What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

*Rēfert cōpositiōnis, It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

*Obs. 1.* This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *meā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, being used instead: as,

*Quid tūā id rēfert, What matters that to you!*—Ter.

*Vestrā intérest cōmilitōnes, It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Taz.

*Obs. 2.* *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *meā*, *tūā*, &c.

## 6. GREEK GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal:

Dēfīne mollium tandem quērēlārum, Cease at length from unmanly repining.—Hor. (Gr. παθεσθαι γέων.)

Scelēris pīrus, Pure from guilt.—Hor. (Gr. κοθαρὸς ἀδικίας.)

Bōlūtus ὄpērum, Released from toil.—Hor. (Gr. λελυμένος πόνων.)

## SYNONYMS.

1. ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3, to buy.

Dūce aut māle ēmēre, To buy cheap or dear. —Cic.

Emēre dīmēlio cārius, To buy too dear by half.—Cic.

Mercor, Itus sum, 1, properly to buy goods (from merc), to trade.

Praceſenti pēcānīa, vel Gracē fide, mercāri, to trade for ready money.

Nundinor, Itus sum, 1 (Nundinae, a market held at Rome every ninth day: nōnū dies), to buy or sell publicly, as at a fair.

2. Mancipium, 1, n., Servus, i, m., and Fāmūlus, i, m., all denote a slave, one who is not free. Mancipium, as a saleable comm. vīty. Servus, as one politically inferior and subservient. Fāmūlus, fem. fāmūla, as a family possession, a part of the household.

3. Hōnestus, a, um, honourable, virtuous. Hōnestātus, a, um, having received honours.

Qui hōnōrem et sententia et suffrāgīis hōceptus est, is mīhi et hōnestus et hōnōtātus videtur, He who has obtained distinction by the consent and suffrages of the people seems to me to be both an honourable and an honoured man.—Cic.

1. Misērōr, ertussum, 2, to be moved by a feeling of compassion to acts of sympathy. Misērfāri, Itus sum, 1, to feel compassion, to pity a man's misfortunes. Misēresco, 3, is used by the poets for misērēri. By them also misērēri and misērōr are sometimes used in the same sense. (But misērōr takes acc.)

5. Tuor, Itus sum, 2, to defend or protect against possible danger, in opposition to neglīgo, exi, ectum, 3. Dēfendo, di, sum, 3, to defend from an actual attack in opposition to dēsērō, ui, riūm, 3. Those who are incapable of acting for themselves have tūtōres, those whose interests are at stake, défensōres. The tuens acts from care and love, to ward off the possible approach of danger. The defēdens acts with zeal and strength, to surmount a danger already present.

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. For how much did you buy this horse? Certainly for more than I wished. 2. No amount of silver and gold is to be valued (*aestimanda est*) at a higher rate than virtue. 3. He values at a low rate his father's advice, and cares not a straw for the tears of his mother. 4. The father, who was avaricious, said "I can buy a slave for less." "Buy him," said Aristippus, "and you will then have two." 5. Canius, a covetous and wealthy man, bought the gardens for as much as Pythius wished. 6. To think (*fucere*) that which seems useful of more value than what (seems) virtuous is most disgraceful. 7. I shall never repent of my wish, I repent of my resolution. 8. It is incredible how (*quam*) I am weary (*sutīj.*) of the business. 9. We pity those who, in their absence, have been condemned to death. 10. Pity troubles so great, pity a soul bearing

things undeserved! 11. This is not only to my interest, but also to your own. 12. What does it concern *Him* where you are (*subj.*)? 13. It concerns the magistrates to defend the good, to punish the bad. 14. This seems to have concerned them rather than *you*.

## XXII.—DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

## 1. DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE.

(Dativus Commōdi or Incommōdi.)

*¶* § 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for*, *for the good of* : as,

Dōmus dōmīnis aedificatur, non mūribus, *A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*—Cic.

Non schōlae sed vītē discimus, *We learn not for the school, but for life.*—Sen.

Non sōlum nōhīs dīvites esse vōlūmus, *We wish not to berich for ourselves only.*—Cic.

*¶* Obs. 1. When *for* signifies *in defence of*, *in behalf of* PRO must be used : as, mōri pro patriā, *to die for one's country*; dicere pro aliquo, *to speak for any one* (i. e. *in behalf of any one*).

Obs. 2. The Dativus Commodity is also used after Adjectives : see § 298.

*¶* § 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus vāco, *to be free*, signifies with the Dative, *to have leisure for a thing*, *to devote oneself to it*; nābo, *to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry*; supplēo, *to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person* : as,

Philōsophiae semper vāco, *I always find leisure to study philosophy.*—Cic.

Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, *Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic.

Caestri pro te libertissime supplēbo, *I will most willingly supplicate Caesar for you.*—Cic.

Obs. Of course nābo is used only of a woman marrying.

## 2. DATIVUS ETHICUS.

*¶* § 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns mīhi, tībi, sībi, nōbīs, vōbīs) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (q̄dūc) by some person : as,

Quid mīhi Celsus agit, *How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

Hic Mārius vēniet tībi ḥīgīne parvā, *Here shall come your Marius of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The Dativus Ethicus is a more delicate shade of the Dativus Commodity.

## SYNONYMS.

*¶* 1. **Patria**, *ae, f.*, properly *fun.* of *patrius*, with *régio* understood—*the country of one's fathers—one's native country.* *Régio*, *ónis, f.*, denotes a large tract or region, including fields and cities. *Rus*, *rúris, n.*, *the country, opposed to the town.*

*Pátria quae cùmúnis est omnium nostrum pàrens, Our native land, which is the common parent of us all.—Cic.*

*Quam rus hòmnes eunt, When men retire to their country-seats.—Plaut.*

*¶* 2. **Affinis**, *is, m. or f.*, *a relation by marriage—sometimes a neighbour.*

*Ut quisque poténtioris affinis èrat, sèdibus pollébantur, When any were the neighbours of a man more powerful, they were ousted from their homes,—Sall.*

*It is sometimes used figuratively, as:*

*Affinis culpae, implicated in the fault.—Cic.*

**Pròpinquus**, *a, um, near, near of kin, allied.*

*Cives pròprios quam pàrigrini, et pròpinqùi quam filii sunt, Fellow-citizens are dearer to us than strangers, and relations more so than men of no kin.—Cic.*

*¶* 3. **Nùbo**, *nupsi, nuptum, 3, to marry (properly to veil), used only of the woman. Uxòrem dùco, xi, etum, 3, to marry, used of the man, because the bridegroom fetched his bride from her father's house.*

*¶* 4. **Lex**, *lègis, m., a law.* Hence, a bill (*Rögatio*) which has been adopted and has passed into law is a *lex, a law.* *Lex* is therefore a *written law.* *Jus, jùris, n.*, is used of both written and unwritten law, and means "right" in a moral sense, *justice.*

*Jus gentium, the law of nations, what is right by the common consent of mankind.*

*¶* 5. **Templum**, *i, n.* (Gr. *tému-rós, a sacred enclosure*) ; like **Fānum**, *i, n., the temple with its sacred environs.* **Délubrum**, *i, n.* (prob. from *déluo, to wash away*), *the shrine.* **Aedes**, *is, f.*, *is used of the building only.* **Templum** generally signifies a temple of one of the principal gods, **Fānum**, that of an inferior deity, or hero.

## PHRASES.

*Eng. I have a country, &c.; Lat. There is a country, &c., to me.  
" She married him; " She veiled for him—et nupsit.  
" I have leisure for reading; " Vécat mili lègendo.  
" What does this mean? " Quid hoo sibi cult?*

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. The covetous man procures riches not for himself but for others.
2. Pisistratus conquered the Megarians for his own, not his country's advantage.
3. We wish to be rich for our children, our relatives, our friends, and especially for the state.
4. Aunicia had married M. Servius, the brother of P. Sulpicius.
5. I hate the wise man who is not wise (*sapius*) for himself.
6. Every soil is a country (*patria*) for the brave man, as the sea (is) for fish.
7. He is a just man who gives to every man his own.
8. Octavia, sister of Augustus Caesar, married Antonius.
9. Soion made laws for the Athenians, Lycurgus for the Spartans.
10. I was not born for a single corner—this whole world is my country.
11. Certain men labour not for virtue but for glory.
12. I have leisure for this business alone.
13. What do

those  
are yo  
(dexter  
the en  
But su  
17. In  
the ter

1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
12.  
13.  
14.  
15.  
16.  
17.

repubg  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
servio  
7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
12.  
13.  
14.  
15.  
16.  
17.  
times

Hòm  
benefit an  
Libe  
should be  
Cie.

Non  
another f

those status mean (*volo*: add *dativus ethicus, sibi*)? 14. Whither are you going away so far (*tantum*) to my (*mihi*) right-hand (*dexter, nom.*)? Hither direct your course, / 15. Wonder seized the enemy as to what the sudden shouting could mean (*subj.*). 16. But suddenly there comes to me your (*dat. eth.*) friend Caninius. 17. In the centre shall be my (*dat. eth.*) Caesar, and he shall possess the temple.

## XXIII.—DATIVE AFTER VARIOUS VERBS.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commōdi* or *Incommōdi*:

1. *To assist*: *subvenio, succurro, auxilior.*
2. *To resist, oppose*: *rēsistō, adversor, obnitor, rēnitor, repugno, obsum, &c.*
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)*: *fāveo, indulgeo, stūdeo.*
4. *To envy, be jealous of*: *invīdeo, acmūlor* (see *Obs. 4.*)
5. *To please*: *plāceo, arrīdeo.*
6. *To serve, obey, benefit*: *pāreō, ūbēdīo, obtempērō, servio, prōsum.*
7. *To trust or distrust*: *erēdo, fido, confido, diffido.*
8. *To spare, refrain from*: *parco, tempērō.*
9. *To advise, persuade*: *suādeo, persuādeo.*
10. *To flatter*: *ādūlor, assentor, blandior.*
11. *To cure*: *mēdeor, mēdīcor.*
12. *To pardon*: *ignoseo.*
13. *To congratulate*: *grātūlor.*
14. *To revile*: *mālēdīco, obtrecto, convicior.*
15. *To be angry*: *īrascor, succenseo.*
16. *To protect*: *patrōcīnor.*
17. *To command*: *impēro, impērīto, praccīpio, and sometimes dōmīnor, mōdēror, tempērō.*

With some others.

Hōmīnes hōmīnibus plūrīmū et prōsunt et obsunt, Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.—Cic.

Liber ēst existimandus, qui nulli turpitudīni servit, That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.—Cic.

Non licet sui commōdi causā nōcēre alteri, It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.—Cic.

Dēmosthēnes ējus ipsius artis, *enī stūdebat*, primam līterām non pōterat dīcere, Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.—Cic.

Antiochus se nec impensue, nec labōri, nec pērieidū paraērūm pollicēbatur, *Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.*—Liv.

Mēlici tōto corpōre cūrando, mēlīmae ētiam parti mēlentur, *Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.*—Cic.

Prōbus invēdet nēnūni, *The good man envies no one.*—Cic.

Epicōrus Phaedonī turpissime maledixit, *Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.*—Cic.

Quis Isoerāti est adversatū impensius (quam Aristōtēs), *Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?*

Is aemilānūr qui ea hābeant quae nos hābēre cūpiāmus, *We are jealous of those who have what we want.*—Cic.

Omnibus gentib⁹ ac natiōnib⁹ impērāre, *To rule over all peoples and nations.*—Cic.

Mōlērāti ānō et ḥrātōni cum sis īrāt̄ns, *To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.*—Cic.

*¶ Obs.* 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally : as, mīhi invēdētur, *I am envied.* See § 234, *Obs.* 2.

*¶ Obs.* 2. Jūvo and adjūvo, *I assist,* always govern the Accusative : as,

Multum pōtes nos īpud Plancum jūvare, *You are able greatly to help me with Plancus.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 3. Mēdor, mēlēor, *I heal;* and ḥdālor, *I flatter,* have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

*Obs.* 4. Aēndlōr, in sense of to rīcl, *emulate,* is always followed by an Accusative :

Me Agāmemnōnēm acimlārī pūtas, *You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 5. Jūbō, rēgo, and gūbēno are always followed by the Accusative : as,

O dīva grātūm quae rēgis Antium, *O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium!*—Hor.

Spērārō nos hītel jūbēnt, *Our friends bid us hope.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 6. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative : as,

Hæc nobis convēniāt, *These things agree with us.*

Convēnire aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*

Mētuo, tħneō te, *I fear you.*

— tħbi, *I am apprehensive for you.*

Consuleō te, *I consult you.*

— tħbi, *I consult your interests.*

— in te, *I take measures against you.*

Prosplcio, and prōvideo te, *I see you at a distance.*

— tħbi, *I consult your interests.*

Cāvēo te or a te, *I am on my guard against you.*

— tħbi, *I am concerned for your safety.*

Tempōrō, mōdārō q̄lquid, *to regulate, arrange.*

— mīhi, trāe, &c., *to set bounds to, to check, restrain.*

1. Ignarition  
inactivity  
not acq.

Inscr.  
Cic.  
Nesc.

Succu.  
and Op.  
to reliev.

Succu.  
ane, an  
Auxili.  
Adjūvo  
or other.

Mīlo  
Inscr.  
releiv.

1. Irasco  
ward en  
chafe.

Saepi.  
Philippus  
even ang.  
Success.

4. Mēdor:  
the doct.  
means o.

Eng. I wa  
" Almost  
" Politic  
men  
" To con  
" I am.

1. Not  
cour the  
cient to m  
herself.  
are slaves  
is servit  
consulshi  
Gauls de  
9. All m  
condition  
it frees it  
It is alwa  
(tempori

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Ignarus*, a, um, *ignorant of a thing* from inexperience, or want of observation—*unacquainted with*. *Inscius*, a, um, *ignorant of a thing* from mental inactivity, want of study—generally *unaptly ignorant*. *Nescius*, a, um, simply, *not acquainted with a thing*, as from not having heard of it.  
*Inscius omnium rerum et rūlis, Ignorant of everything, and unpolished.*—Cic.  
*Nescia fati Dido, Dido unconscious of destiny.*—Virg.

2. *Succuro*, curri, cursum, 3 (*prop. to run up to*), *Subvenio*, vēni, ventum, 4, and *Opitilāri*, ētus sum, 1, all imply that the object needs assistance; hence to relieve those who are in embarrassment.  
*Succurrit illi Vārenus, et lib̄orānti subvenit, Vārenus runs up to his assistance, and helps him in his difficulty.*—Caes.

*Auxillior*, ētus sum, 1, to furnish the object with an increase of strength.  
*Adjūyo*, avi, ētum, 1, to help forward by whatever means, either voluntarily or otherwise.  
*Mīlo auxiliāri, to remedy an evil.*  
*Insanias hōjus adjuvas, you encourage his madness; insaniae auxiliāri, to relieve it.*

3. *Irascor*, trātus sum, 3, to be angry, but not necessarily to show it by outward emotion. *Stōmāchor*, ētus sum, 1, to show anger by outward signs, to chafe.  
*Saepius vīdēbam quum irridētē, tum Irascentem, etiam stōmāchāntē Philippum, I very often used to see Philip both when laughing, when vexed, and even angry.*—Cic.  
*Succōrso, si, sum, 2, to be seriously displeased with.*

4. *Mēdeor*, no perf., 2, to heal, relates to the skill, attention, and judgment of the doctor. *Sāno*, avi, ētum, 1, relates to the efficacy of the medicine, as a means of restoring health.

## PHRASES.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Eng. <i>I was pleased with this;</i>            | Lat. <i>This was pleasing to me.</i>             |
| “ <i>Almost all;</i>                            | “ <i>Omnis fīre,</i>                             |
| “ <i>Political change—change of government;</i> | “ <i>Nōvae res.</i>                              |
| “ <i>To consult a man's interest;</i>           | “ <i>To consult for a man — cōsūlēre dīcēi.</i>  |
| “ <i>I am pardoned;</i>                         | “ <i>It is pardoned to me — mīhi ignoscitur.</i> |

## EXERCISE XXIII.

- Not unacquainted<sup>1</sup> with misfortune (myself), I learn to succour the miserable.
- Fortune gives too much to many, sufficient to none.
- She is angry with her who has been preferred to herself.
- Wise men control their desires, which the rest of men are slaves to.
- Seas and lands obey God.
- He is a good man who is serviceable to whomsoever he can be, (and) injures nobody.
- The consulship of Cicero was pleasing to M. Cato.
- Almost all the Gauls desire<sup>2</sup> political change, and are quickly excited to war.
- All men naturally (say, by nature) aim at<sup>2</sup> liberty, and hate the condition of slavery.
- Philosophy effects this; it heals the mind, it frees it from desires.
- Doctors cannot cure all diseases.
- It is always (characteristic) of a wise man to yield to the occasion (*tempori cedere*); that is, to submit to necessity.
- Consult you

own interest, provide for that of your country. 14. The older men said this, who were less pleased with this new wisdom.—15. The gods have spared the guiltless armies. 16. I congratulate both you, and the republic because of you. 17. Singly<sup>1</sup> they will not be able to resist us. 18. I am pardoned for this. 19. Vineyards (*arbustum*, *i. n.*) and the lowly tamarisks delight not all persons. 20. The god who with his trident<sup>2</sup> controls the waves of the sea (*acquoreus*, *adj.*)

<sup>1</sup> Fem. as said by a woman.

<sup>2</sup> Stūdeo, with dat.  
Singuli, ae, a.

<sup>4</sup> Cuspis, Idis, *f. lit. point*: by the figure Syncedōche, *St. L. Gr. 605.*

#### XXIV.—DATIVE AFTER VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

##### § 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter  
ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have also an Accusative case in addition: as,

Tu *mihi* terram *in-jice*, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse)*.—Virg.  
Delphiniē altis *in-cursant rāmis*, *The dolphin's course against the high branches*.—Ov.

*In-ebuit tōro*, *She leaned upon her couch*.—Virg.

*Quum propēnōdo māris ac-cessisset*, *When he had almost got up to the walls*.—Liv.

*Caesari vēmenti oc-currit*, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way*.—Ctes.

*Quum virtūte omnībus prae-starent*, *Whereas they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour*.—Cæs.

*Natūra hōmīnis p̄cūdībus autē-cedit*, *The nature of man excels brute beasts*.—Cic.

*Obs.* Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circundo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Circundare brāchia collo*, *To put the arms about any one's neck*.—Ov.

*Oppidū vallo et fossā circumdūre*, *To surround a town with a rampart and moat*.—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Fraus**, *dis, f.*, *injury, fraud*. *Dōlus*, *i. m.*, *deceit, treachery, always in a bad sense*.

**Fallācia**, *se, f.*, *a stratagem, artifice, intrigue*. It mostly signifies deceit in speaking, while *fraus* rather signifies deceit in acting.

2. **Concilium**, *i. n.*, *counsel, advice, a plan; hence, a deliberative body*. *Con-ellūm*, *an assemblage, a meeting*.

3. **Cāpūt**, *itis, n.*, *denotes the head, the principal thing*.

*Cāput est ad bēne vivendum sēcuritas*, *a feeling of security is the chief thing towards living happily*.—Cic.

**Vertex**, *tōis, m.*, *the highest point, the top or crown of the head*.

*Aetnas vertex, the summit of Aetna*.—Cic.

4. **Cāmera**, *meris, f.*, *the*  
meris, *the*  
5. **Sācra**, *oris, f.*, *the*  
A atone

Fng. 5  
" M  
" T

" H

1. **I**  
passes  
of rig  
courage  
all oth  
audaci  
queen  
talent  
also fi  
11. M  
(expr  
skin  
(expr  
known  
under  
over a  
surroun  
the alt  
corn.

<sup>1</sup> Say,  
<sup>2</sup> Ing.

4. § 29  
Passiv  
Ablati

older men  
 15. The both you,  
 be able to  
*aybustum*,  
 The god  
*reus, adj.)*  
 int: by the  
 . 605.

WITH

original  
 bs have  
 —Virg.  
 at the high  
 got up to  
 is way.—  
 (vetii) sur-  
 excels brute  
 , have two  
 ative of the  
 ing: as,  
 ck.—Ov.  
 a rampart  
 , always in  
 es deceit in  
 dy. Con-  
 chief thing

4. *Cáritas*, *átlis, f.*, *a virtuous affection*, resulting from an intelligent enjoyment of the object. *Ámor*, *órlis, m.*, is a general term for *love, pure or impure, a mere passion or emotion.*

5. *Sanguis, Inis, m., blood* while circulating in the body, supporting life. *Crúor,* *órlis, m., blood* when shed, *gore.*

Arma nondum expiátis uncta crúoribus, *Weapons smeared with gore, not yet atoned for.—Ilor.*

## PHRASES.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Eng. <i>Some, others;</i>                | Lat. <i>Altii, álti.</i>   |
| " <i>More strength;</i>                  | " <i>P'ius virium.</i>   |
| " <i>To prefer one thing to another;</i> | " <i>To hold one thing after another—</i><br><i>áliquid álicui réi posthábere, or</i><br><i>as in Eng.</i> |
| " <i>To surround a city with a wall;</i> | " <i>To put a wall around the city—</i><br><i>múrum urbi circumdare, or as in</i><br><i>Eng.</i>           |
| " <i>He sprinkled me with water;</i>     | " <i>Aquam m'hi aspersit, vel Álo aqua</i><br><i>aspersit.</i>   |

## EXERCISE XXIV.

1. *I* was present in all dangers. 2. Man's nature surpasses *cattle* and other beasts. 3. You always put the appearance of right upon your dishonesty. 4. Some want wisdom, others courage, others opportunity. 5. The Gauls in valour (*abl.*) surpass all other men. 6. In this man there was (*inerat*) no less vanity than audacity. 7. He places a crown on his sister's head and calls her queen. 8. In the nation of the Thebans there is more strength than talent.<sup>1</sup> 9. Not only was he present at these things, but he was also first<sup>2</sup> in them. 10. Fortune sometimes opposes our designs. 11. Manlius preferred the public advantage to affection for his son (express both ways). 12. As he comes up<sup>4</sup> to help his son, he is slain. 13. I should have preferred your will to my own advantage (express both ways). 14. Who can prefer unknown persons to known, the impious to the religious? 15. Faults creep upon us under the name of virtues. 16. Vulcan is said to have presided over a workshop at Lemnos. 17. Semiramis founded Babylon, and surrounded the city with a wall. 18. That most base man has bespattered me with praises. 19. Pythagoras did not wish to sprinkle the altar with blood. 20. Atticus presented all the Athenians with corn.

<sup>1</sup> Say, *To some is wanting, &c.*  
<sup>2</sup> *Ingenium.*

<sup>3</sup> *To be first in, praesum, fui, esse,*  
 with dat.      <sup>4</sup> *Dum filio subvenit.*

## XXV.—DATIVE AFTER PASSIVE VERBS AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Δ § 293 The Dative is often used with the *Perfect Tenses* Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: *as.*

*Mithi consilium captum jam diu est, My plan has been already long formed!—Cic.*

*Cui non sunt auditae Dēmosthēnis vigiliæ, Who is there by whom the night-watchings of Demosthenes have not been heard of?—Cic.*

▲ § 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

*Quod sacerdum est molliter sūpienti, Which the wise man must bear gently.—Cic.*

*Semper Ita vivānus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (case) nōbis arbitrēmūr, Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.—Cic.*

▲ § 295. The Impersonal Verbs *lēcit*, *it is lawful*; *libet*, *it pleases*; *expedit*, *it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

*Licet nēm̄kai dñeōre exercitum contrā patriam, It is not lawful for my men to lead an army against his country.—Cic.*

*Ei libebit, quod non licet (ei), It will be his inclination to do that which is unlawful for him.—Cic.*

*Obs.* After *lēcit*, &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,

*Licuit esse Themistoceli ōtiōso, Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.—Cic.*

*Illi tñidis et ignavis lēcit esse, They are at liberty to be timid and cowardly.—Liv.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Ultrō** (lit., *beyond*; hence, *more than was to be expected*) and **Sponte** (from *spondeo* *spontaneously*, *without being asked*). Ultrō is, however, used of persons only. Sponte equally of persons or things.

*Ignis consumptus sūt sponte extinguitur, Fire when spent goes out of itself.—Cic.*

*Omnis ei ultrō pollicitus sum, Of my own accord I promised him every thing.—Cic.*

2. **Prēcor**, *prēcūtus sum*, 1, *to pray in a calm, orderly manner*, with a view to obtain one's wishes. *Supplico*, *avī*, *ātum* (*supplex*), 1, *to beg on one's knees*, with earnestness. *Obtestor* (*ob*, *testis*), *ātum sum*, 1, *to implore by appealing to all that is dear*. *Obsecro*, *avī*, *ātum*, 1 (*quisi per sacer rīgare*), *to beg by everything sacred*, to implore passionately. *Oro* (*fr. os*), *avī*, *ātum*, 1, *properly to speak*—hence *ōrare causam*, *to speak in defence of a cause*. It commonly means *to beg* or *entreat*:

*Oro obtestorque te pro vētore nostrā conjunctiōne, I beg, may conjure you, by our connection of long standing.—Cic.*

The following should be noted:—

*Prēcari aliquid, to entreat any one.*

*Prēcari ab aliquo, to pray for something from any one.*

*Prēcari aliquid, to pray whether with good or evil feeling for any one.*

*Prēcari aliquid mīlam fortūnam, to imprecate bad luck upon a man.*

3. **Licet** (*impera.*) refers to what is allowed by human law, or established by common usage. **Fas est**, *what is allowed by divine law, whether by precept or by the light of conscience*. **Concessum est** (*concedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, 3), nearly equivalent to *lēcit*. **Plācet** (*plācio*, *ui*, *ātum*, 2), and *libet* (*libuit* and *libitum est*, 2), both signify *it pleases*. The former, in the sense that it is *the will of*, or *the determination of a man*; the latter, that *it agrees with his inclination*.

Qu  
to me  
Qui  
all off  
Pla  
lettere

Eng. A  
" I a  
" By

1. O  
must a  
3. You  
must yo  
live ar  
grieve n  
have re  
craft.  
good me  
Alexander  
she be s  
but also  
gent.  
(is) was  
become  
Of this  
Nothing  
men to b

1. Aut .  
2. To c  
fâcere, in  
cipere.

3. Ars,  
skilled wo

§ 296  
valent t

Mithi  
Troja

Obs. v  
or a  
S  
name  
In  
plat

PE. L.

## DATIVE WITH THE VERB SUM AND DOUBLE DATIVE. 49

Quod tibi lăbet (=libet) idem mīhi lăbet, *What pleases you is also pleasing to me.*—Plaut.

Quis pără esse fere plăcut peccata lăborant quum, &c., *They who would have all offences to be of equal magnitude are in a difficulty when, &c.*—Hor.

Plăcitum est ut epistolae nōmīne principis scribērentur, *It was resolved that letters should be written in the name of the sovereign.*—Tac.

### PHRASES.

*Eng. A man must fight, &c.*  
 " I am allowed.  
 " By means of.

*Lat. Pugnandum est, &c. (with Dat. of person.)*  
 " Mīhi lăbet.  
 " Per with Accusative.

### EXERCISE XXV.

1. One man (*dat.*) must not fight with (*cum*) two. 2. (We) must always be watchful, for the good (*dat.*) have many snares.
3. You must not refuse what is willingly bestowed. 4. Here, soldiers, must you either<sup>1</sup> conquer or die. 5. The men with whom we must live are of the most different dispositions (*abl.*). 6. Men should grieve more when they have committed an injury<sup>2</sup> than when they have received one. 7. The workman must be trusted in his own craft.<sup>3</sup> 8. For honourable things, not secret things, are sought by good men. 9. The wife of Darius was once only (*tantum*) seen by Alexander. 10. All things are the gift of Ceres; by me (*dat.*) must she be sung. 11. These things are not merely to be prayed-for (*ooo*), but also to be done by me.<sup>4</sup> 12. It is not allowed me to be negligent. 13. Why may they not through (*per*) you be free? 14. That (*is*) was the year in which, according-to (*per*) the laws, he might become consul (*acc.*). 15. What pleases you also pleased me. 16. Of<sup>5</sup> this class it has pleased me to speak at some length.<sup>6</sup> 17. Nothing which is unjust is advantageous. 18. It is expedient to all men to be good.

<sup>1</sup> Aut . . . aut: see St. L. G. 570.

<sup>2</sup> To commit an injury, injuriā, facēre, inferre: to receive one, inj. accipere.

<sup>3</sup> Ars, artis, f.: which includes all skilled workmanship.

<sup>4</sup> Begin, Haec mīhi non sōlūm, &c.

<sup>5</sup> When of = concerning, use de with abl.

<sup>6</sup> Say, to say more things, plūra dīcere.

### XXVI.—DATIVE WITH THE VERB SUM AND DOUBLE DATIVE.

*✓ § 296.* The Verb sum with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

*Mīhi est iūusta nōverca, I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg.

*Trōja huic lōco nōmen est, This place has the name Troy.*—Liv.

*▲ Obs.* When, as in the last example, a name is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,

*Scipio, cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtute fuit, Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.*—Sall.

*In campis, quibz nōmēn ērat Raudili, dēscriptivē, They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudili.*—Vell.

*¶* § 297. A Dative of the Person (Dativus Commodi, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying to be or become; to give, send or come; to impute or reckon, &c.: as,

*Flumen altis verborum cordi est, A flood of words is the gratification of others.—Cic.*

*Ampla domus saepe fit domino dñeōcōri, A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.—Cic.*

*Pausanias rex Lacedaemoniorum vēnit Atticis auxilio, Pausanias, king of the La cedemontes, came to the help of the Athenians.—Nep.*

*Nec timuit sili nē vitio quis vertet, Nor was he afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.—Hor.*

*Cui bono fuit, For whose advantage was it?—Cic.*

*¶ Obs.* The Dative of Result is also used without a Dative of the Person: as,  
*Nec eam rem habuit, religiōni, Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.—Cic.*

*Mogno odio esse apud aliquem, To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.—Cic.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Völücer, eris, ere* (fr. *völo*, to fly), properly an adjective, with *avis* or some noun understood. It signifies *any winged creature*, including *insects*. *Avis*, is, *e.*, and *äles*, *itis*, *c.* (chiefly poet.), *a winged creature*. The former is the general term for a *bird*; the latter usually signifies a *large bird*, e. g. *the eagle or stork*. *Alites*, in the language of the aug. s., meant *birds whose flight was to be interpreted*, as distinguished from *oscines*, *um, e.* (*os* *aino*), *birds whose cry furnished the omen*:

*Oscinacae völücre. The harpies.—Virg.*  
*Equus äles, the winged horse (Pegasus).—Ov.*

Figuratively also,  
*Macōnii carminis äles, a swan of Homer's strain.—Hor.*

2. *Innocētia, ae, f.* *blameless, harmless, or disinterested conduct.* *Virtus, utis, f.*, originally *valour*; hence, *becoming or meritorious acts*. *Integritas, atis, f.*, *a whole condition, one neither maimed nor impaired; in a moral sense, uprightness, sans reproche*:

*Vir summa integratitā et innocētia, A man of the greatest uprightness and harmlessness.—Cic.*

3. *Aeger, gra, grum, disordered, whether mentally or physically.* *Aegrōtus, a, um, ill, unwell; and morbidus, a, um, diseased; indicate bodily sickness almost exclusively:*

*Aeger ex vuñere, suffering from a wound.—Liv.*

*Consolantur aegram animū, They console her when distressed in mind.—Liv.*

In speaking of dumb animals, good authors rather say *aeger* (or *morbido*) than *aegrōtus*:

*Et quālit aegros tussis änhūla sues, And a short cough shakes the diseased swine.—Virg.*

4. *Littēra, ae, f.* (*littera*), *a letter of the alphabet.* *Epistōla, ae, f.*, or *littēras, arum, a letter, an epistle.* *Littērae* also signifies what we call *letters*; i.e. *literature generally.* *Humanitas, atis, f.*, *refinement, refined culture, in the widest sense.*

*Littēra dāre illiciū, to give (as we say post) a letter to some one, for the purpose of its being conveyed; whereas,*

*Littēra dāre ad aliquem, to give or post a letter for (i.e. addressed to) somebody.*

¶. Ad  
away  
3; su  
things  
extime

Eng. Th  
" Th  
" Ha  
" Ta  
" Te  
" To

Siechae  
a hund  
I do th  
5. Wh  
protecti  
Appius  
which  
man ha  
sailors.  
am co  
was als  
trary-to  
a burnde  
His lieu  
fect) let  
became  
Marcius  
enemy o  
buted to  
noble de  
peoples s  
with his

1 Say, t  
2 Léve  
3 Patre  
Diot. Ant.

XXVI  
§ 298  
§ 288) i

6. **Adimo**, emi, emptum, 3; and **eximo**, emi, emptum, 3; both signify to take away without violence; whereas **aufero**, aferim, ablatum, 3; **eripio**, ei, eptum, 3; **surripio**, ul, eptum, 3; imply forcible or illegal removal. Adimo is used of things that are good and useful, so that a man is made the poorer; whereas eximo implies the removal of an evil, whereby a man is made more comfortable.

## PHRASES.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Eng. Two a-piece,                          | Lat. Bini, ae, a.  |
| " This man's wife,                         | " The wife to this man.                                    |
| " He gave me this as a present,            | " He gave me this for a gift (hoc mihi dōno dedit)         |
| " To be of service to a man,               | " Esse dīscui esse.  |
| " To send a letter for him to come,        | " To send a letter that he may come (ut with subjunctive). |
| " To become a matter of religious scruple, | " In religionem cēnire.                                    |

## EXERCISE XXVI.

All birds (*dat.*) have two wings each. 2. Her<sup>1</sup> husband was Siehaeus, most wealthy in land (*agri*). 3. Not if I (*dat.*) had (*subj.*) a hundred tongues, a hundred mouths, and an iron voice, could (*subj.*) I do this. 4. Flowers (*dat.*) have not always the same colours. 5. Where licentiousness rules, innocence (*dat.*) has (but) little<sup>2</sup> protection. 6. Attus Clausus, who afterwards had the name of Appius Claudius (*dat.*), fled to Rome (*acc.*). 7. I (*dat.*) have a pipe which Damoetas once gave me as a present. 8. While the sick man has life there is hope. 9. The greedy sea is destruction to the sailors. 10. I have betaken myself to you, Senators,<sup>3</sup> to whom I am compelled to be a burden before being of advantage.<sup>4</sup> 11. This was also an advantage to others. 12. In-their-case (*his*), contrary-to<sup>5</sup> nature, the body was (a source of) pleasure (*dat.*), the soul a burden. 13. This will prove-to-be (*fut. of sum*) our greater renown. 14. Who will not attribute that to you as a fault?<sup>6</sup> 15. His lieutenants, the quaestor, and his friends, kept-sending (*imperfect*) letters to me that I should come to help him.<sup>6</sup> 16. This thing became a religious scruple with the people. 17. The approach of Marcius, who came to the help of his colleague, took from the enemy (all) delay of the combat. 18. But that which was attributed to me as a crime, not only was not a fault, but (even) a most noble deed. 19. Intestine war<sup>7</sup> has been and will be to very many peoples a greater destruction than foreign wars. 20. Caius Caesar, with his army, marched to the assistance of the province of Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> Say, to her.<sup>2</sup> Lève praesidium.<sup>3</sup> Patres Conscripti; see Dr. Smith's Vlct. Ant., art. Senate.<sup>4</sup> Prius quam deui.<sup>5</sup> Contra, with *ace.*<sup>6</sup> Ut vñfrem ei substdio.<sup>7</sup> Alma, orum, *n. pl.*

## XXVII.—DATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a Dativus Commodi, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives:—

1. *Of Utility* : útilis, commōdus, fructuōsus, &c.
2. *Of Unprofitableness or injury* : iū útilis, noxius.
3. *Of Fitness* : aptus, accommōdatus, idōneus, convēniens, proprius, &c.
4. *Of Unfitness* : incommōdus, inconvēniens.
5. *Of Acceptableness* : grātus, jūcundus, cārus.
6. *Of Displeasure* : ingrātus, injūcundus.
7. *Of Friendliness* : bēnignus, āmīcus, bēnēvōlus, fidēlis, fidus.
8. *Of Hostility* : īmīcius, perniciōsus, mālēvōlus, mālig-nus, mōlestus, irātus, infestus.
9. *Of Similarity and dissimilarity* : sīmīlis, dissimīlis.
10. *Of Equality and inequality* : aequalis, īaequalis.
11. *Of Proximity* : finītīmus, vīcīnus, prōpinquus.

Rōmālus multū tāndī grātior fuit quam Patribus, *Romulus was more acceptable to "popular with" the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv.

Deiotārūs fidēlis erat Pōpūlo Rōmāno, *Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic.

Putriūs sōlūm om̄nīlūs cārus ēst. *The soil of our country is dear to all.*—Cic.

Siciliī Verri īfīmīci infestique sunt, *The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.*—Cic.

Hōmō aliēnissimus mīhi, *A man most unfriendly to me.*—Cic.

Ingrōtam Vēnētri pōne sūperbiam. *Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.*—Hor.

Nūnqūd irātūs cū mīli propter has res, *You are not angry with me for these things, are you?*—Pl.

Idque eo fīctiūs crēdēbātur quia sīmīle vēro vīdēbātur, *And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.*—Cic.

Pūpūtātēm dītūtī ētiam inter hōmīnes esse aequālēm vōlāmus, *We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, āmīcus, īmīcius, finītīmus, vīcīnus, prōpinquus, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

*Obs.* 2. *Sīmīlis* and *dissimīlis* are quite as often found with the Genitive : as,

Dēcēm sīmīles Nestōris, *Ten men the like of Nestor.*—Cic.

Impīlīcīs, tui dissimīllīmlī, *Impious citizens, most unlike yourself.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take, in addition to the Native as above, an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad* : as,

Multas ad res pērūtīles (nōbīs) Xēnōphontīs illīrī sunt, *The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Bellum*, i. n. (orig. duellum from *duo*), *war*. Sometimes it is used by the poets for a single fight. *Militia*, ae, f., *the soldier's profession, military service*.

Ceu cētōra nūsqām bēlla fōrent, *As though no fighting were going on elsewhere.*—Virg.

Militiae disciplina, *The training for a soldier's life (military discipline).*—Clo

Dōmi militiaeque, *At home and on service—in the field.*

2. Impīlī  
a king  
Im  
App  
tryme

Sim

Reg

Dōmi

Crū

Princ

De

for the

3. Aequ  
of gre  
another  
those o  
Aequ  
likenes

4. Bēnē

i, n., z

the hi

Amor

Nhi

is not

affection

✓ En

1. Ha

either<sup>1</sup>

of the p

able thi

4. This

their mi

for (ad)

to Then

as old a

viceable

(lit. nea

12. An

amo).

the wine

15. One

good are

them an

all, flatt

He is of

2. **Impérium, supreme power and authority; an empire.** **Regnum, royal power, a kingdom.**

*Impérium Rōmānum, the Roman Empire; but Appius impérium in suos tēnēbat, Appius held supreme sway over his countrymen.*—Cic.

Similarly, **Regnum Galliæ, the kingdom of Gaul;** but

*Regnum occidūtē völēbat, He designed to seize upon the royal power.*—Caes.

**Dominatio, absolute tyrannical government.**

*Crudelis et sūperba dominatio, A tyranny relentless and proud.* Cic.

**Principatus, ds., m., pre-eminence, headship:**

*De principatu inter se contendēbant, They were struggling with each other for the supremacy.*—Caes.

3. **Aequalis, e, denotes inherent equality.** **Pār, pāris, denotes similarity in point of greatness, power, or value, which renders one thing a match for, or rival of, another.** Hence **aequalia** are things related by common qualities; **pāria,** those of equal importance or degree.

**Aequalis, also signifies of the same age, contemporary.** **Similis, e, denotes likeness, whether external or internal.**

4. **Bēnēvōlentia, ae, f. (bēnē vōlo), is goodwill in the widest sense.** **Stūdium, i., n., zeal, zealous attachment, or enthusiasm.** **Favor, ūris, m. is the favour of the higher towards the lower, as of a judge towards one of the parties in a suit.** **Amor, ūris, m., natural affection, love:**

*Nihil est quod stūdium et bēnēvōlentia vōl potius ūmōre effici non possit, There is nothing which may not be effected by zeal and kindly feeling, or rather by affection.*—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

✓ Eng. *With all his might,*  
" *Another's virtue,*

Lat. *Summa vi.*  
" *Alienā virtus.*

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

- He admired the spirit (*ānūmus*) of the man, (which was) ready either<sup>1</sup> for war or peace.
- Ascanius, son of Aeneas, was not yet of the proper age for the supreme command.<sup>2</sup>
- It was an honourable thing for the generals (*dat.*) themselves to engage in the fight.
- This law, most welcome to the plebs, the fathers resisted with all their might.
- This thing is unlike that.
- This man is suitable for (*ad*) that purpose.
- Aristides was almost equal (in years) to Themistocles.
- His kind feeling towards the Roman people is as old as himself.<sup>3</sup>
- The land which is suitable for vines is serviceable also for trees.
- Tullus Hostilius was unlike the last (lit. nearest) king.
- He made virtue peculiar (*proprius*) to men.
- An easy and liberal father is unfit for a son in love (*part. of amo*).
- Dear to the Muses, sadness and fears will I consign to the winds.
- This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls.
- One ungrateful man is injurious to all the unfortunate.
- The good are greater-objects-of-suspicion<sup>4</sup> to kings than the bad, and to them another man's merit is ever formidable.
- Be (*esto*) kind to all, flattering to none, familiar to (but) few, just to everybody.
- He is of all (men) of his-own age by far the most handsome, apt at

every undertaking,<sup>5</sup> full of prudence. 19. Naturally<sup>6</sup> we are all disposed<sup>7</sup> to liberality. 20. The degrees of praise are equal to the lowest and the highest men; those of glory, unequal.<sup>8</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> Vel . . . vel : see St. L. C. 570.
- <sup>2</sup> Matārus impērio.
- <sup>3</sup> Ipstus acqūlis aetati.
- <sup>4</sup> More suspected, suspectiores.

- <sup>5</sup> Ad omnes res aptus.
- <sup>6</sup> By nature, nātūrā.
- <sup>7</sup> Propensus ad.
- <sup>8</sup> Disparēs.

### XXVIII.—ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION AND ORIGIN.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found after Verbs signifying to *separate*, *remove*, *deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(a.) Vérēundum Bacchum sanguinis prōhibēte rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood stained frays!—Hor.

Nōdōsa corpus prōhibēre chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.—Hor.

Liberare nōquem culpā, To free a man from blame.—Cic.

Vercingētorix oppugnatiōne destitū, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.—Caes.

(b.) Ab oppidiā vim hostium prohībit, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.—Caes.

Vni bōni lāpidūna fōrā pellibantur. Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.—Cic.

Eum ab omni erratiōne liberavit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.—Cic. (But *libero* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

§ 307. The Ablative is often used after Adjectives denoting freedom or exemption from (see also §276): as,

Rōbustus ān̄mus omni est liber cārā, The strong mind is free from all anxiety.—Cic.

Fāmā atque fortūnis expertes, Destitute of character as well as fortune.—Sall.

§ 308. Opus est, there is need, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative: as,

Auctōritātē nōbīs opus est, We have need of authority.—Cic.

Opus est mātūre factō, There is need of prompt execution.—Sall.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles nātus, born from: ortus, oriundus, sprung from; nōtus, begotten of: also in the Poets with sātus, editus, creātus, erctus, sprung from or begotten of: as,

Jōve nātus et Mādā, Born of Jove and M...—Cic.

Orte Sāturno, O thou offspring of Saturn!—Hor.

Quo sanguinis erctus, From what blood faintly sprung.—Virg.

Alba trāuidūm sacerdōtūm, A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.—Liv.

*Obs.* But *ōriundus*, and likewise *ortus* when it refers to *more remote origin*, are more frequently used with a Preposition: *as,*

Hippocrites et Epicydes, nati Carthagine, sed *ōriundi ab Syracusa*,  
Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.—LIV.

Belgæ *orti sunt a Germanis*, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans*.—Caes.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Solitudo*, *Inis, f., a wilderness; also the solitude of a place, agreeable or otherwise.*

*Löca vasta*, *uncultivated wastes* as opposed to *loca culta*.

*Deserta löea*, *uninhabited parts* as opposed to *löea habita*.

2. *Columba, ae, f., a tame pigeon.* *Pē: eos, is, e., the ringdove or wood-pigeon:*

*Aspicias ut véniant ad candida texta columbae, You see how the pigeons come to their white coles.*—Ov.

*Fabulösae pūlumbes, The fabled (celebrated in story) ring-doves.*—Hor.

3. *Commōrōr, átus sum, i., to sojourn or be in a place for some time.* *Häbſto, ávi, átum, i., to dwell permanently:*

*Commodrandi enim natura dēversōrium nōbis non häbitandi dedit, For nature has granted it (the body) as a lodging to sojourn in, not to dwell there.*—Cic.

*Māneo, nst, nsum, 2, to remain, whether for a short time or a long time.* It is often used of carrying one night in a place, and such temporary resting-places were by the Latins called *mansiones*. It has also the active signification to wait for:

*Mānet te glōria, Renown awaits you.*—Virg.

Also figuratively:

*Hoc in causa māneat, Let this point in this case be finally settled.*—Cic.

4. *Prudēntia, ae, f. (contr. of prōvidēntia), properly foresight: hence, sagacity, practical judgment; especially, knowledge of the law.* *Sāpientia, ae, f. (equivalent to the Greek ὁρῶν), properly good taste (fr. sīplo); hence, discernment, practical wisdom—knowledge of the world.* *Scientia, ae, f. (scio), expertise—knowledge, as implying skill in or acquaintance with a subject:*

*Prudēntia cornutur in dēlecto bōnōrum et mālōrum, Sagacity discovers itself in making choice between good and bad.*—Cic.

*Sāpientia est rēum dīmārum et hūmārum, causārumque quib⁹ eae res cōtentur, scientia, Wisdom is the knowledge of things human and divine and of the causes by which they are maintained.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Eng. <i>To stay with Antiochus,</i>     | Lat. <i>Apud Antiochum commōrārī.</i>                              |
| “ <i>Blind of an eye,</i>               | “ <i>Altro öculo cæcus, captus.</i>                                |
| “ <i>There is need of consultation,</i> | “ <i>There is need of its being consulted (opus est consulto).</i> |
| “ <i>To abide by a decree,</i>          | “ <i>To stand by the decree (dēcretō stāre).</i>                   |
| “ <i>Banished his country,</i>          | “ <i>Exterritus patriæ.</i>  |

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. *Semirāmis deprived Ninus of the supreme-power (impēriū).*
2. Old age did not free Considius from all dread.
3. Hannibal, (when) banished from Carthage, tarried with Antiochus, King of Syria.
4. This Lysimachus was born of a family (*nātus löeo*) distinguished among the Macedonians.
5. The Centiones, and the Graioceli, and

the Caturiges, attempt to hinder his army from (making) its march. 6. Apelles painted a portrait of King Antigōnus wanting one eye. 7. Cato, exempt from all human faults, had fortune always in his own power. 8. We have need of magistrates, without whose foresight and care the state cannot exist. 9. These things (*abl.*) were necessary (*opus*) for us. 10. Before you begin (*subj.*) there is need of deliberation, and when you have deliberated (*fut. perf.*) there is need of prompt action.<sup>1</sup> 11. Now, O Aeneas, you need courage, now a dauntless breast. 12. The children of the proscribed are excluded from their ancestral property.<sup>2</sup> 13. P. Lætius hurled L. Lucilius from (*de*) the Tarpeian rock, and forbade his colleagues (the use of) fire and water (*i.e.* banished them).<sup>3</sup> 14. If a man (*si quis*), whether a private or public (character), abide (*perf. ind.*) not by their decree, they forbid him (the use of) sacrifices. 15. He (*is*) is liberal who takes from himself what he gives to another (*alii*). 16. Happy is he who is free from all disturbance of mind. 17. The Jews, banished from their country, have been dispersed throughout the world. 18. Sulla was not deterred by this repulse. 19. His mind was free from religious scruples. 20. I have freed you from other cares. 21. The chief of these was Litavetus, and his brothers, young men born of a most honourable family. 22. He was sprung from the blood of Sisyphus, and in thefts and frauds was very much like him. 23. Of the brave (*abl.*) and good are born<sup>4</sup> the brave.

<sup>1</sup> Mātūre factō.

<sup>2</sup> Interdīcere s̄quā et igni alieui. This | was the customary sentence in banishing a Roman citizen. <sup>3</sup> Passive of creo.

### XXIX.—ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, INSTRUMENT.

*§ 311.* The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Manner*, *Means*, or *Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

Sol cuncta suā luce illustrat et compleat, *The sun illuminates and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

Helvētii rēliquos Galos virtute praeceđunt, *The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Cæs.

(Brītanni,) ēquitatū atque essēlīs ad flāmen progressi (sunt), *The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

Epāminondas princeps meo jūdicio Gracciae, *Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

Eunius fuit mājor nātu quam Plautus et Naevius, *Eunius was earlier in his period of birth than Plautus and Naevius.*—Cic.

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leōnes, sc tūtanuntur, *Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

*¶ Obs.* Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the thing by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a person, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative.

§ 312  
expres  
is gen

2. I  
alone,  
Mil  
arrange  
Atti  
with sil  
Stob

I  
Obs  
e  
a  
c  
o

Vent  
ādis, J  
Aura  
sense.  
Aur  
Aur  
Pro

Agit  
figura  
quicqu  
It is a  
lips  
volvū  
Agit  
Vib  
Muli  
Val

Moll  
easily  
Mol  
Mol  
mould  
Tōn  
Acta

Pati  
upon,  
Fort  
a misf  
It al  
Pati  
Termi  
Lxx  
Fero,  
submis  
the ex  
bear, c  
Patr  
bowing

§ 312. 1. If the manner in which anything is done be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without *cum*:

2. But if the manner is expressed by a Substantive alone, *cum* must be used: as,

*Miltiades res Chersōnēsi summā acquisitā constituit, Miltiadē arranged the affairs of the Chersonaeus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

*Athēnienses cum silentio auditi sunt, The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *mōdus, rātio, mos, ritus, consuetudine*, never take the preposition *cum*: as, *hoc mōdo, in this manner; Persarū mōre, after the custom of the Persians.*

2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, *cum* is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword, cum cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Ventus*, *i., m.*, the generic term for *wind*. *Trōcella*, *ac., f.*; and *tempestas, f.*; denote a *violent wind*; the former a *squall*, the latter a *complete storm*. *Aura, ac., f.*, a gentle gale or breeze, is also used sometimes in a figurative sense. *Flātus, ū, m.*, a gentle breeze, and generally of a favourable wind:

*Auras pōpulāris captator, A man to catch at popular favour.*—Liv.

*Aura rāmoris, A flying rumour.*—Cic.

*Prōspēro flātu ūti, To take advantage of a favourable wind.*—Cic.

2. *Agito*, *avī, ūtum, l.*, frequentative of *ūgo*, *to drive or urge on*. Often in a figurative sense, *to cast or revolve in mind*. *Vibro*, *avī, ūtum, l.*, to *vibrate or quiver*, as when a string, in a state of tension, is struck: hence, to *brandish*. It is also used of the quivering tremulous motion of a serpent's tongue:

*Ipsē longe alter agitabat īntmo, A far different scheme was he himself revolving in his mind.*—Cic.

*Agitare gaudium, To show one's joy.*—Sall. (See *St. L. G. 694.*)

*Vibro hastas ante pugnam, To brandish the spears before the battle.*—Cic.

*Multifidas linguis dīrco vibrat, The serpent darts his many-pointed tongues.*—Val. Pl.

3. *Mollis, e*, soft, yielding to the touch. *Tēnēra, ēra, drūm, tender, not hard, easily divided or cut.* *Mollis* is sometimes used in a figurative sense: as, *Mollissima tempora ūndi, The most favourable time for speaking.*—Virg.

*Mollissimam ērām ad nostra arbitria ūrimūs et ūngimūs, We form and mould very soft wax just as we will.*—Cic.

*Tēnēra herba, The tender grass.*—Virg.

*Actas tēnēra, A tender, i.e. early, time of life.*—Ov.

4. *Pāttior, passus sum, 3* (properly opposed to *ūgo*, *ēgi, actum, 3*), to be acted upon, whether for good or evil:

*Fortiter mīlum qui pāttitur idem post pāttitur bōnum, He who bravely bears a misfortune afterwards also has his good turn.*—Plaut.

It also signifies to suffer or submit to: as,

*Pāttar quod ūbet, I will bear what you please.*—Plaut.

*Permitto, mīl, missum, 3, to give leave to, to permit, empower:*

*Lex permittit aut vētit, The law either permits or forbids it.*—Sen.

*Fēro, till, ūtum, 3, to bear, implies energy and spirit; pāttor denotes mere submission. *Sustineo, ui, tentum, 2, is like fēro, and implies activity and the exercise of power.* *Sustineo is to uphold as on the shoulders.* *Fēro is to bear, carry in any way:**

*Patrem grāvēm sēnō per mēdia hostiū agmīna talk, He bore his father, bearing beneath the weight of years, through the midst of the enemies' ranks.*

*N*

| PHRASES.                          |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Eng. <i>At last,</i>              | Lat. <i>Ad postremum or extremum.</i> |
| " <i>After the manner of men,</i> | " <i>Hūmāno mōre.</i>                 |
| " <i>In human fashion,</i>        | " <i>P̄ficiūmo ritu.</i>              |
| " <i>Like beasts,</i>             | " <i>Mōre sūi.</i>                    |
| " <i>As he usually did,</i>       | " <i>consuetudine sua.</i>            |
| " <i>In his customary way,</i>    | " <i>Magna cum offendōne ejus.</i>    |
| " <i>To his great offence,</i>    |                                       |

## EXERCISE XXIX.

1. The tall (*ingens*) pine is shaken by the winds. 2. Stern hearts are subdued by a gentle prayer. 3. An iron ring is worn away by constant use. 4. By the laws both (*et*) rewards are proposed for virtues and punishments for vices. 5. Believe me, I was not a little strengthened by that reflection. 6. He returned with the utmost (*summus*) speed to Athens, nor did he stay there longer than was necessary. 7. The land submits to cultivation and is renewed by the plough. 8. With four colours only have the most illustrious painters performed immortal works. 9. Pero was a woman of distinguished filial-love; for from her own breast she nourished her very-aged<sup>2</sup> father. 10. By a successful expedition they added the greater part of Spain to their own dominion. 11. Dionysius, shattered<sup>3</sup> by continual struggles, was at last slain by a conspiracy of his own subjects. 12. We think that what we have written with-difficulty,<sup>4</sup> is-heard (*inf. pass.*) also with difficulty.<sup>4</sup> (Begin with rel. clause.) 13. Nor have we learnt merely the plan of living (gen. of gerund) with pleasure, but also of dying with a better hope. 14. Caesar sent Valerius, a young man of the highest excellency and refinement, to Ariovistus. 15. In every way I pleaded, and do daily plead with (*quid*) the king. 16. He has sinned neither after the manner of men, nor in a customary way. 17. These, like brute-beasts, refer everything to (*ut*) pleasure. 18. Caesar, in his customary way, was leading six legions without their baggage.<sup>5</sup> 19. Miltiades, to the great offence of his fellow-citizens, returned to Athens.

<sup>1</sup> Non mēdiocriter.<sup>2</sup> Admōdum senex.<sup>3</sup> Assiduū bellī certāmībus fractus.<sup>4</sup> With difficulty, cum lsbore.<sup>5</sup> Without baggage, expeditus.XXX.—ABLATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS  
AND ADJECTIVES.

☞ § 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, ardēre stūdio, to burn with zeal; exultāre gaudiō, to exult with joy; int̄ēre (perire, mōri) fāmē, to die of hunger; gaudēre (lactāri) āmici

adve  
suā,  
the naDe  
a faulNe  
—CieA § 3  
are f  
conter  
and,Fr  
treatPa  
PlPib.  
001. Cor  
henc  
prāv  
absol  
impr  
or sp

Äc

Ra

Du

long

Th

Ja

lary

2. Mor

state  
tātic

Se

But  
callEx  
ganeQū  
hare

Cle.

Gau  
joy.

Ivi, n

adventu, to rejoice at the arrival of a friend; glōriāri victoriā suā, to boast of his victory; confidēre nātūrā lōci, to trust in the nature of the ground: as,

Dēlicito dolcē, correctionē gaudēre, nos cōportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.—Cic.

Nōmīnibus vētrūm glōriānunt, They glory in the names of the ancients.—Cic.

§ 314. Adjectives which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, contentus, contented, laetus, rejoicing, sūperbus, proud, frētus, relying on, and, less frequently, moestus, sorrowful, anxius, anxious: as,

Frētus diligētiā rēstrā, dissēro brēvius, Relying on your diligence, I treat (the matter) more briefly.—Cic.

Pancis contentus, Content with little.—Hor.

Phoebe sūperbe lȳrā, Thou Phoebus who takest pride in thy lyre!—Pib.

Obs. For dignus, indignus, see § 320.

#### SYNONYMS.

- Corrumpto, rūpi, ruptum, 3, properly to break on all sides, to break to pieces; hence, to spoil, render useless, bring to nought. Dēprāvo, ūvi, atum, 1 (fr. prāvus, opp. to rectus), to pervert or distort. Corrumpto is to render a thing absolutely useless. Dēprāvo or prāvo, to render a thing, still susceptible of improvement, relatively worse. Corrumpto in a figurative sense is to corrupt or spoil:

Aqua conclūsa sciele corrumpit, Water when confined easily spoils.—Cic.  
Rem fāmiliārem corrumpit, To waste one's property.—Sall.

Dēprāves hēct dum distōto illiquid sūpērit, You may go on corrupting so long only as in the depraved there remains aught (to be corrupted).—Sen.

The two are combined by Cicero:

Jurēconsultōrum ingēnūs plērūque corrupta ac dēprāvata, By the ingenuity of lawyers most things are marred and deteriorated.

- Morbus, i., m., a disease or distemper which attacks. Vālētūdo, inis, f., the state of such as are sick. Aegrifūdo, inis, f., mental suffering, distress. Aegrōtātio, ūnis, f., the state of bodily sickness:

Sed proprio ut aegratūlo in corpore sic negritūdo in āntno nōmen habet, But correctly, as bodily disorder is denominated "aegrotatio," so mental is called "aegratudo."—Cic.

- Insolētia, uo, f. (in soleo), properly want of practice, hence, strangeness, affectedness, haughtiness, generally of an insulting kind. Intolērantia, ae, f. (in tolērare), intolerable conduct, ungovernable haughtiness. Sūperbia, ae, f., pride, shown by looking down on people—thinking little of others, and their attainments. Arrōgantia, ae, f., arrogance, shew in making exorbitant pretensions, claiming more than one's due—opposed to mōdestia:

Ex arrōgantia ódium, ex insolētia arrōgantia, Hatred (springs) from arrogance—arrogance (itself) from haughtiness.—Cic.

Quis eum cum illa sūperbil atque intolērantia ferre pōtuisset, Who could have endured him with that contempt (for others) and impatience of control?—Cic.

- Gaudēo, gāvīsus sum, 2, denotes joy as a state of mind, an inward moderate joy. Laetor, ūsus sum, 1, to give utterance to, or show signs of joy. Gestio, ūvi, and ū, 1, denotes a passionate uncontrolled joy, as of triumph, or exultation.

## PHRASES.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Eng. <i>From this cause,</i>             | Lat. <i>Hoc</i> (or <i>quid</i> ) <i>de causa.</i>  |
| " <i>To be grieved, &amp;c., at</i>      | " <i>(Often) to be affected with grief, &amp;c.</i> |
| " <i>Now everything, &amp;c.,</i>        |   |
| <i>(introducing a proposition).</i>      |   |
| " <i>Through the midst of the forum,</i> | " <i>Omnis autem.</i>                               |
|  | " <i>Per medium fūrum.</i>                          |

## EXERCISE XXX.

1. From this cause they were deeply (*magnōpēre*) grieved. 2. Beauty perishes through wine; by wine is life destroyed (*corrumpo*). 3. They threw (*imp̄eſt*) their limbs burning with disease into the cold rivers. 4. Tarquinius, relying upon his victories and his wealth, was revelling (*exultō*) in his insolence. 5. A drop of wine is lost in the greatness of the sea. 6. Many of (*ex*) his soldiers died from fatigue and thirst. 7. We rejoice in freedom and grieve at slavery. 8. Castor takes-pleasure-in (*gaudeo*) horses; his brother<sup>1</sup> Pollux in fights. 9. Certain entire states delighted in frugality, as the Lacedaemonians. 10. Vespasian never rejoiced in the slaughter of any man; he even wept and mourned over punishment (*abl.*) (when) deserved. 11. High-souled heroes were they, reliant on their valour and proud of their strength (*abl.*). 12. Door-posts, magnificent with barbaric gold and spoils (of war), fell-foremost (*prōcunbo*). 13. He could not be content with moderate gain.<sup>2</sup> 14. In the civil war Marius delighted, with a sort of<sup>2</sup> hideous cruelty, in the slaughter of his enemies (*adversarius*); and executioners dragged the noblest men through the midst of<sup>3</sup> the forum. 15. They insolently boasted of their victory. 16. The enemy, relying on (their) numbers (*sing.*), commenced the battle.

<sup>1</sup> Ovo prognatus eōdem: literally, sprung from the same egg. See Dr. Smith's Class. Dict. art. *Dioscuri.*

<sup>2</sup> A sort of, quidam: see St. L. G.

385, Obs.: immāni quādam saevitā. <sup>3</sup> The midst of, mēdius, in agreement with subs.: see St. L. O. 341.

## XXXI.—OTHER VERBS WITHABLATIVE.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs ūtor, fnuor, fungor, vescor, nitor, pōtior, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

Sapiens ratiōne optime ūltur, *The wise man uses reason in the best way.*—Cie.

Plūrimi māritimis rēbus fructuſ ūtūr, *We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.*—Cie.

Agēsilāus magnū est præda pōtius, *Agēsilāus obtained possession of great... Nep.*

Obs. 1. Most of " above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it.

Obs. 2. *Pōtior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōlitri*, to obtain the *management of affairs.*—Cie.

Obs. 3. *Fungor* is also found with the accusative, especially in the earlier writers.

~~X~~ § 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cārus, dear*, and *vilis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price : as,

Lycurgus ēmi singula non pēcūniā, sed compensatiōne mercium jussit, *Lycurgus directed that things shoul be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

Viginti talentiū unā orationem Isocrates vendidit, *Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

Quod non opus est, asse cārum est, *What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mutat quadrātu rōtundū, *He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *muto*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

*Obs.* 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the *means* by which a thing is obtained.

*Obs.* 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity : see § 281.

~~X~~ EXCEPTIONS.—But the Ablatives *magno, at a high price*; *permagno, plūrimo, at a very high price*; *nimio, at too high a price*; *parvo, at a low price*; *minimo, for a very low price*; *nihil, for nothing*; are also found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Substantive : as,

*Permago dēcimas vendidisti, You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

*Non pōtest parvo res magna constūre, A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

*Obs.* 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive : see § 280.

~~X~~ § 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness* or *want* often govern an Ablative : as,

*Germānia rivis flāmīnib[us]que ūbundat, Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

*Neptūnus ventis implēvit vēla secundis, Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

*Vōluptate virtus saepe ēret, nunquam indiget, Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen.

*Cēra rēferta nōtis, A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

*Obs.* 1. Verbs of *filling* and *want* rarely govern the Genitive; but Adjectives more frequently govern the Genitive than the Ablative : see § 276. *Indigē*, however, usually takes the Genitive : as, *aeris indigēre, to want money.*

*Obs.* 2. The Verbs *afficēre, instruēre, ornāre, &c.*, come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing : as,

*Praeđa afficit pōpūlāres suos, He has enriched his countrymen with booty.*—Plaut.

*Obs.* 3. *Praeditus, endowed with*, also governs the Ablative : as,

*Mens est praeđita mōtiū sempiterno, The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 4. After verbs and adjectives of *fullness*, the ablative is that of the instrument or means with which (§ 311); after those of *want*, it is that of separation (§§ 306, 307).

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Utor**, usus sum, 3; and **usurpo**, avi, itum, 1; to use; the latter *permanently*, the former *incidentally*, by a single act. **Fruor**; *Usus and fructus sum, 3, to enjoy the use of, feel a pleasure in using, have a complete enjoyment of:*

*Hannibal cum victoriā posset iti, frui māluit, When Hannibal could have reaped the consequences of his victory, he chose rather to enjoy it.—Nep.*

2. **Brévis**, c, short, opposed to longus. **Exiguus**, a, um, small in bulk, opposed to magnus. **Parvus**, a, um, small, physically or morally, relatively to other things of the same class or sort. **Curtus**, a, um, clipped, docked, of something which has been shortened by cutting :

*Brévis census, A small income.—Hor.*

*Exiguus mus, A tiny mouse.—Hor.*

*Corpus parvum, A small frame.—Hor.*

*Curtus mulius, A bob-tailed mule.—Hor.*

3. **Deinde** (de inde), as used of the consecutive order of the parts of a proposition, signifies *secondly*. **Tum** then denotes *thirdly*; **postea** *fourthly*:

*Præceptū primum ut p̄re lōquamur; deinde ut dilueide; tum ut ornate postes ad rērum dignitatem apte, It is laid down as a rule that we speak first correctly, in the next place clearly, then elegantly, and fourthly suitably to the dignity of the subject.—Cic.*

X 4. **Locus**, i (m. in sing., m. and n. in plural), *place, as a spot*. The plur. loci is especially used of the *points or grounds of an argument*. **Tractus**, us, m., a tract of country, a region; with the notion of extent. **Rēgio**, ois, f., a district, country.

5. **Ignis**, is, m., fire in the abstract. **Flamma**, ae, f., flame. *Ignis is the cause, flamma the effect.* **Incedium**, i, n., a fire in the sense of a conflagration. It is sometimes used figuratively : us,

*Belli incendis, The flames of war.* —Virg.

X 6. **Cōthurnus**, i, m., a kind of buskin used by hunters, with a high heel. **Soccus**, i, m., a shoe worn by Roman women, with a low heel. The former was used by actors in tragedy; the latter in comedy. Sometimes these words have a figurative use: as,

*Nec cōmedia cōthurnis assurgit, nec contra trīgoedia socco ingrēditur, Neither does comedy soar in buskins, i. e. to the sublime, nor again does tragic walk in lowly style.—Quint.*

## PHRASES.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Eng. <i>Anaximenes, &amp;c. of Lampsacus,</i> | Lat. (Often) <i>Anaximēnes Lampsacēnus.</i>          |
| “ This proves the safety of,                  | “ This is for the safety for (est salutis).          |
| “ As men say,                                 | “ Et q̄unt (or aint).                                |
| “ To speak grandly, &c.,                      | “ Magnum, &c. lōquī.                                 |
| “ To value highly,                            | “ To value of much (magni uesti māre).               |
| “ “ more,                                     | “ To value of more (pluris).                         |
| “ To abound in gold,                          | “ Auro (abl.) abūndare.                              |
| “ To punish a man,                            | “ Aliquem poenā affōrare.                            |
| “ Milk, cheese, and flesh,                    | “ Milk and cheese and flesh, or milk, cheese, flesh. |

## EXERCISE XXXI.

1. The life itself which we enjoy is short. 2. Alexander the Great had (*utor*) as his teacher of eloquence Anaximenes of Lampsacus, which thing afterwards proved to be the safety of Lampsacus. 3. In a short time he possessed himself of the whole district which

he had  
(which)  
water  
ship.  
one ha  
tion<sup>o</sup>  
9. The  
(men)  
stage)  
less bo  
at a h  
more h  
chance  
shall y  
the Eu  
chose  
(thoug  
the affi  
them,  
remaini  
in win  
cramme  
on the

<sup>1</sup> Pha.  
<sup>2</sup> Say,  
<sup>3</sup> Mun  
<sup>4</sup> Quid

## XXX

§ 31  
Person  
require

Caes  
bris, Ca  
well-for

§ 31  
of qua  
with t  
the Ac

Nith  
is more  
Tulle  
was mor  
Seini  
that the

he had aimed at. 4. The Athenians used the port of Phalérum,<sup>1</sup> (which was) neither commodious (*magnus*) nor good. 5. We use no water nor fire, as the saying is, in more places than (we do) friendship. 6. Some vowels discharge the function of consonants. 7. No one has lived too short a time,<sup>2</sup> who has discharged the perfect obligation<sup>3</sup> of virtue. 8. He is a happy man who enjoys present pleasures. 9. They feed on milk, cheese, and flesh. 10. Aeschylus taught (men) both (how) to speak in a grand style, and to tread (the stage) (*niti*) in the cothurnus. 11. And Achilles was selling the lifeless body for gold. 12. This would the Ithacan desire (*subj.*) and the Atridae purchase at a high price.<sup>4</sup> 13. Epicurus valued pleasure at a high rate; but no possession ought to be valued (*gerundive*) more highly than virtue. 14. You take away all hope: you perchance care little (*parvi pendis*) what becomes of me.<sup>5</sup> 15. Him shall you by-and-by receive in heaven (*dat.*) laden with the spoils of the East. 16. Life without friends is full of fear. 17. Romulus chose a spot for-his-city<sup>6</sup> both abounding in springs, and healthy (though) in a pestilential district. 18. Dumb animals are-without the affections of men, but they have certain impulses like (*similis*) them. 19. The woman asks him to buy (*ut with subj.*) the three remaining books at the same price. 20. What lands most abound in wine? France, Spain, (and) Hungary. 21. The house was crammed with gamesters, full of intoxicated (men). 22. We inflict on the wicked as great punishment as<sup>6</sup> equity and humanity allow.

<sup>1</sup> Phalérus, a. um.

<sup>2</sup> Say, a short time.

<sup>3</sup> Mūrus, ēris, u.

<sup>4</sup> Quid de me fiat, or quid me fiat.

<sup>5</sup> Dat. of purpose, see St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>6</sup> Quantus: for the construction, see St. L. Gr. 382.

### XXXII.—ABLATIVE OF QUALITY AND COMPARISON.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the Genitive of Quality (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

Caesar fuisse trāditur excelsā stātūrā, cōlōre cāndido, tērētib⁹ mem⁹bris, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.—Suet.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparati<sup>es</sup> instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

Nihil est otiosa sēnectūte (= *quam otiosa senectus*) jucundius, Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.—Cic.

Tullus Hostilius Rōmālo (= *quam Romulus*) fuit fērōcior, T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.—Liv.

Scimus solēm multo mājorem esse terrā (quam terram), We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.—C.c.

**Obs.** The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as,  
*Miltiades amicior (fuit) omnium libertati quam sive cunctationi,*  
*Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign power.* —Nep.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

*Virtus imitacione, non invidiā, digna est, Virtus is deserving of imitation, not of envy.* —Cic.

*Quam multi luce indigni sunt, How many are unworthy of the light of day!* —Sen.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Singulāris*, *e.*; and *insignis*, *s.* denote *distinction of any kind, good or bad*. *Eximus*, *a, um*; and *egregius*, *a, um*; *only that distinction which arises from excellence*. *Excellens*, *ēminens*, and *praestans* denote *superiority of any kind*.

2. *Opere*, *ae, f.*, *activity or work of some kind, service, instrumentality*: Gr. *γένεσις*. *Labor*, *ōris, m.*, *exertion followed by fatigue or pain, toil*: Gr. *πόνος*. *Industria*, *ae, f.*, *activity, industry*. It is opposed to *ignavia*. *Dilexū opem, to devote one's efforts, do all in one's power.*

*Potio*, *ēbōis, capable of enduring fatigue.* —Sall.

*Mibi ita abōre perférendo industria non dēbit, I shall lack no assiduity in sustaining toil.* —Cic.

3. *Forma*, *ae, f.*, *a form, model, or pattern*. *Figūra*, *ae, f.* (from *fingo*), *a figure, anything which possesses a definite outline*. *Forma* would therefore characterize a *species*, while *figūra* would distinguish the *individual* of that species. But they are often used indiscriminately. *Spēcias*, *ei, f.* (*spēcio*), denotes the *outside appearance of a thing, as opposed to the inner substance; the appearance*:

*Corp̄is nostri magnam nātūrā ipsa vldētur, h̄abuisse rātiōnem, quae formam nostram, rēlquaque figūram in quā ērat spēcies hōnesta, ea pōsuit in promptu, Nature herself seems to have had a leading design in reference to our persons, in that she has brought into full view our shape, and the rest of our figure, to which there belonged a comely exterior.* —Cic.

4. *Ignōrō*, *avi, ētum, 1, not to know*, *se.* implies *carelessness or negligence*. *Nescio*, *ivi and II, 4*, rather implies *want of opportunity to learn*. *Ignōrō* is often used with reference to persons; *nescio* only of things:

*Nescire Lātīne, To be ignorant of Latin.* —Cic.

*Ignorat patrem, He does not know his father.* —Ter.

5. *Histōria*, *ae, f.* (*īstorīa*), *properly an investigation*. It often signifies a history of the time in which its own author has lived. *Annāles*, *lum, m.* (*annus*), *properly records of what occurs from year to year, especially a history of former times, chronicles*. *Histōria* moreover comprises the causes of events, the description of places and men, while *annales* rather relate ancient facts without entering into particulars. Latin writers, however, sometimes use the terms indiscriminately. *Fasti*, *ōrum, m.*, *a calendar containing the festivals and other important days*:

*Res mēmōranda nōvis annālibus atque rēcenti histōriā, A thing to be related in new chronicles, even in the history of modern times.* —Juv.

*Ērat ūnū histōria n̄ illud n̄lī annālibus confectio, For history was no more than an arrangement of old records.* —Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *Of noble birth*

Lat. *Nobili gēnere*

" *Of low birth*

" *Malo gēnere*

" *The last king, the one immediately preceding*

" *Rex proximus*

" *Worthy of a man*

" *Viro cōmītē*

1. Cat.  
2. Iphic  
form. 3.  
both of m  
lius of A  
mind tha  
6. There  
firmness;  
and prude  
such<sup>3</sup> infl  
people a d  
it-to-pass,  
est honou  
pleasing th  
nothing w  
Hostilius v  
than Rom  
who more  
another pla  
defeats. 1  
beneficenc  
pure and p  
thing is ac  
Laelius, wh  
that he wa  
Hercules, J  
disgraceful,  
lamentation

<sup>1</sup> Possessed  
quality.

<sup>2</sup> Lōctipes,

<sup>3</sup> Tantus :

quantity or de

<sup>4</sup> Non mōde

#### XXXII

§ 321. *T*  
thing is gr  
nexion with

*Turres dē*  
*than the walls*

*Q. Pompēi*  
*older than F.* (

*Quo quisq*  
*more (by what*

*labour does he*

*PE. L.—IV*

## EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Cato possessed<sup>1</sup> remarkable foresight and industry in all things.  
 2. Iphicrates possessed<sup>1</sup> both a great mind and body, and a princely form.  
 3. Lucius Catilina, a man of noble birth, possessed<sup>1</sup> great power both of mind and body, but a bad and depraved disposition.  
 4. Gellius of Agrigentum (*ad/j.*) was more amply endowed (*lit. richer*)<sup>2</sup> in mind than in wealth.  
 5. I have outshone my ancestors in valour.  
 6. There is C. Cassius (a man) of remarkable uprightness, virtue, and firmness; there is C. Curio (a man) endowed with the highest ability and prudence.  
 7. Therefore, since (*quum*) you are (a person) of such<sup>3</sup> influence, you ought not, M. Cato, to call a consul of the Roman people a dancer.  
 8. By your virtue and your industry you brought it-to-pass, that (*ut with subj.*) you were thought worthy of the highest honour.  
 9. None of (*de*) the virtues is more admirable or more pleasing than compassion.  
 10. Nothing is more amiable than virtue, nothing which more attracts (men) to love (*gerund*) it.  
 11. Tullus Hostilius was not only<sup>4</sup> unlike the last king, but even<sup>4</sup> more warlike than Romulus.  
 12. Who was more illustrious than Themistocles? who more powerful?  
 13. Either<sup>4</sup> I am ignorant-of this enemy, or<sup>4</sup> another place will be better-known<sup>5</sup> than the Trasimene lake by our defeats.  
 14. What is better, or more excellent, than goodness and beneficence?  
 15. There is nothing in history more pleasant than a pure and perspicuous brevity.  
 16. Of all things from which anything is acquired, nothing is better than agriculture.  
 17. Caius Laelius, when (*quum*) a certain man of low birth said (*imp. subj.*) that he was (*inf.*) unworthy of his ancestors, rejoined,<sup>6</sup> "But<sup>7</sup> by Hercules, you (are) not unworthy of yours."  
 18. It seems to be disgraceful, and not worthy of a man, to groan, to howl, to make lamentation, to be overcome (*frangor*), to cry (*plorō*).

<sup>1</sup> Possessed: say, *was of*, with abl. of quality.

(*est*) *etiam*.

<sup>2</sup> Aut... aut: see *St. L. G.* 579.

<sup>3</sup> Compar. of *nobilis*.

<sup>4</sup> Inquit, which is to be let into the following sentence, like our "said he."

<sup>5</sup> At: see *St. L. G.* 578.

<sup>6</sup> Tantus: the reference being to quantity or degree, not quality.

<sup>7</sup> Non modo (or *solūm*)... *vérām*

## XXXIII.—ABLATIVE OF MEASURE AND OF TIME.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes by *how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

*Turres dēnis pēdibus quam mūri altiores sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.*—Curt.

*Q. Pompeius, biennio quam nos mājor, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicerō) by two years.*—Cic.

*Quo quisque est sollertia et ingēnitior, hoc dōcet labōriosius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.*—Cic.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died while writing in his eighty-first year.*—Cic.

*Extremā pueritiae miles fuit summi imperatōris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.*—Cic.

§ 323. But when the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition in is generally used: as,

*Aurigandi arte in adolescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.*—Suet.

*Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The following Ablatives are exceptions: die, by day; nocte, by night (but also de die, de nocte); vespere s. vespri, in the evening; tempore, in time, in season: which are used without a Preposition.

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition in: as,

*Agamemnon vix dēcem annis unam cēpit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.*—Nep.

*Senatus dēcretivit, ut légati Jugurthae in diēbus proximis dēcem Italiam dēcederent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.*—Nep.

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with ante or post after it. But the Accusative may be used with ante or post preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

*Accusative.*

ante or post tres annos

post tertium annum

tres ante or post annos

tertium ante or post annum

tribus annis ante or post.

tertio anno ante or post.

tribus ante or post annis.

tertio ante or post anno.

*Ablative.*

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

*Annis quingentis et dēcem post Rōmam conditam, Livius fabulā dedit, Livius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of the city.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When *ante* or *post* is followed by *quam* and a verb, the following constructions may be used:

*Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.*

*Post tres annos quam vēnērat.*

*Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) vēnērat.*

*Post annum tertium quam vēnērat.*

*Or post may be omitted:*

*Tertio anno quam vēnērat.*

*All these expressions signify equally, Three years after he has come.*

## SYNONYMS.

*Dimidium, i. n., the half of a thing.* It is the neuter of an adjective used substantively. *Medium, i. n.* is also strictly an adjective, and signifies *the middle of a thing*: see St. L. G. 341:

*Dimidium facti qui bēne cœpit, habet, He has accomplished half his undertaking who has fairly commenced it.* —Hor.

*Mēdīo campī = medio campo, In the centre of the plain.* —LIV.

*Littorae, ērum, f., is the general expression for a letter (see § 297, syn. 4).*

*Simul accepī a Sēleuco littorā, stūtim quæstivē Balbo per cōdicilli quid eset in lēge, As soon as I received the letter from Seleucus, I at once inquired, by note, of Balbus what the law was upon the point.* —Cic.

*Cōtis, is, f., the skin, generally of *human beings*, though also used of *animals and inanimate objects*. *Pellis, is, f., usually the hairy, bristly hide of a beast, whether on the body or off.* *Vellus, ūris, n., the skin of a sheep, with the wool on it or the fleece itself when taken off.* *Tergus, ūris, n., the coarse hard skin or hide of an animal, as of the elephant.* *Cōrium, i, n., a hide after it has been tanned:**

*Dēformis pro cōte pellis, An unsightly hide in place of a skin.* —Ju.

*Rūpīt nōvēna terga boum, He burst through the nine thicknesses of bull's hide.* —Ov.

*Altēni cōrium concidēre, To tear a man's hide.* —Plaut.

*4. Rēdo, i, Itum, 4, to return, usually after attaining one's object. Rēvertor, sus sum, 3 (opposed to prōfiscor, to set out), to turn back on one's way. Rēvenio, vēni, ventum, 4, to come back again; especially after a distance of time.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *Half as large,*

Iat. *Dimidio mīnor.*

" *The more, &c. . . . the more,*

" *Tanto . . . quanto.*

" *To appoint a dictator,*

" *To name a dictator (dictatōrem dicere).*

" *Nearly ten years,*

" *Dēcēm fērē annos.*

" *In spring,*

" *Fērē (abl.).*

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Ireland is, according to estimate,<sup>1</sup> half as large as Britain. 2. The more<sup>2</sup> severe and dangerous the siege daily became, so much the more<sup>2</sup> frequently were letters and messengers being sent to Caesar. 3. The shape, and the dappled skin (*vāriētūs pellūm*) of these animals, is very similar to goats, but in size they a little surpass them.<sup>3</sup> 4. The longer<sup>2</sup> Simonides considered the nature of God, the more obscure<sup>2</sup> did the matter seem to him (to be). 5. Far more laborious is it to overcome one's own self than an enemy. 6. The more difficult<sup>2</sup> a thing is, the more illustrious<sup>2</sup> (it is). 7. On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Caesar concerning peace. 8. On the following day he divided the cavalry into three parts. 9. Swallows go away in the winter months, and return in the spring. 10. Christ, the author of the Christian religion, was born in the time of Augustus. 11. Charles the Fifth reigned in the sixteenth century after the birth of Christ;<sup>4</sup> Philip the Second succeeded

him in the year fifteen hundred and fifty-five.<sup>4</sup> 12. Within a short time<sup>5</sup> he dispersed the forces of the barbarians. 13. One hundred and eight years after Lycurgus began to write the laws, was the first Olympiad. 14. T. Lartius was appointed dictator about ten years after the first consuls. 15. In the year of Rome<sup>6</sup> four hundred and fifty-eight,<sup>7</sup> the Romans undertook an expedition against the island of Corsica.<sup>8</sup> 16. Paulus Aemilius, whom in her had been slain forty-eight years before in the battle of Cannae,<sup>9</sup> was sent against the Macedonians. 17. Micipsa dies a few days afterwards.

<sup>4</sup> Ut nesciematur.

<sup>5</sup> The more . . . so much the more . . . quanto . . . tanto, or quo . . . eo: as, quanto gravior oppugnatio . . . tanto crebriores litterae, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Say, they are (by) a little larger.

<sup>7</sup> Say, after Christ being born, post Christum natum.

<sup>8</sup> Use the ordinals: anno millesimo sexcentesimo quinquagesimo quinto (post Christum natum).

<sup>9</sup> Say, in a short time (abl.).

<sup>10</sup> In the year of the founding of the city, anno urbis conditae.

<sup>11</sup> Say, the island Corsica (apposition).  
<sup>12</sup> Pugna Cannenesis.

#### XXXIV.—ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained, p. 26.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand;* *laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand;* *terrā mārique, on sea and land;* *bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as,

*Intonuit laevā, It thundered on the left hand.*—Virg.

*Terrā mārique conquirere, To make search by sea and land.*—Cic.

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus, terra, rēgio, via, Iter,* are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

*Athēnienses lōco idoneo eū in fecerunt, The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Ncp.

*Auréliā viā prōfectus est, He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tūtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as

*Quis tōto māri lōcūs tūtus fuit, What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

*Totā Asiā, Throughout all Asia.*—Cic

§ 331. In all cases besides the above, a Preposition must be used: as,

*In Italiā nullus exercitus (erat), There was no army in Italy.—Sall.*

*In hac solitudine cæro omnium collōquio, In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.—Cic.*

*Obs.* These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

*Sileisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, O'er forest, field and highway, the loathsome bodies lie.—Ov.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Cultus*, *us, m.*, in its widest sense signifies *anything belonging to dress*, especially the ornamental part of dress, *jewels, gold, &c.* *Habitus*, *us, m.*, also has general reference to dress, but more particularly regards the decency or cleanliness of the exterior—the style of the hair, carriage of the body, &c. *Vestis*, *is, f.*, signifies clothes as a necessary covering of the body—*anything, in short, that serves as a covering*. *Vestimentum*, *i, n.*, is an article of clothing (*vestis*). *Amictus*, *us, m.*, denotes *anything used as a wrapper over the underclothing*.

*Frusta jam vestes, frustra mütantur amictus, In vain, now the under, and in vain the outer dress is changed.—Catul.*

*Caleos et vestimenta mütavit, He has changed his shoes and his garments (i.e. he has become a senator).—Cle.*

2. *Via, ae, f.* (probably digammated from root *i-Ire*), *a road or way*—the usual route from one place to another. *Iter, Itinēris, n.* (*It-e, It-um*), *a way or course to a particular point*, whether ordinarily used as such or not, also *a journey*. *Via* and *Iter* may be either narrow or wide, but the former generally denotes a broad carriage-road. *Trāmes*, *Itis, m.*; *callis*, *is, m.* (sometimes *f.*); and *sēmita*, *ae, f.*; all denote *a narrow path*. *Trāmes* (*trans meo!*), *a by-path*. *Callis*, *a cattle-walk*, or the track of wild beasts in the forest. *Sēmita*, *narrow way or footpath*, a causeway which often runs by the side of the *high road*:

*Trēbōnūs Itinēribus dēvīs in viam prōfessicſtūr, Trebonius by sequestered paths wends his way into the high road.—Cic.*

*Discēdam égo illi de viâ, de sēmitâ, I will make way for him on the road and on the causeway.—Plaut.*

*Egressus est non vīs sed trāmītibus, He went out, not by the high road, but by footpaths.—Clio.*

3. *Nēmo, Inis, c., no one, nobody* (*nullius* used as genitive) *is used of persons only*. *Nullus, a, um*, *of persons or things*:

*Nēmo omnium tam est immānis, No human being is so monstrous.—Cic.*

*Elephanto nulla belluīrum prudēntior, No animal is more sagacious than the elephant.—Clio.*

*Argūmentum id quidem nullum est, That argument is indeed of no force.—Clio.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. To put on (an article of dress), Lat. *Se } vestem induere.*

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| ,, The space of three days,        | ” <i>Triduum.</i>                            |
| ,, By forced marches,              | ” <i>By long marches (longis Itinēribus)</i> |
| ,, During the whole of that night, | ” <i>Ea totâ nocte.</i>                      |
| ,, By sea and land,                | ” <i>Terrâ marīque (by land and sea).</i>    |
| ,, The river Po,                   | ” <i>Pôdus amnis.</i>                        |
| ,, Above and below,                | ” <i>Supra infra.</i>                        |

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. The Lacedaemonians were hard-pressing<sup>1</sup> the men of Attica in a severe war. Codrus, king of the Athenians, put on a shepherd's<sup>2</sup> dress and was slain in the enemy's camp. 2. The Romans in the first naval engagement with the Carthaginians used grapplers<sup>3</sup> made of iron (*a.ij.*). 3. Caesar in the harbour of Alexandria leapt down into the sea from his ship. 4. Who can compute those who in the city of Rome were slain in civil war? 5. Because they were greatly impeded neither by the mountaineers, nor by the ground,<sup>5</sup> he performed in that space of three days a considerable part of the journey.<sup>6</sup> 6. (He) himself, by forced marches, hastens into Italy and there raises two legions. 7. They, pursuing the rear too eagerly,<sup>7</sup> engage in battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavourable position. 8. In the whole of this engagement no one was able to see an enemy who did not face him.<sup>8</sup> 9. The whole of that night they marched<sup>9</sup> uninterrupted, and came, on the fourth day, into the territories of the Lingones.<sup>10</sup> 10. Almost sixty years had war raged<sup>10</sup> in Sicily, by sea and land. 11. He journeyed<sup>11</sup> towards the left. 12. The Hercynian forest stretches in a straight line with the river Danube.<sup>12</sup> 13. By all the well-known roads and footpaths he sent forth chariots<sup>13</sup> from the woods. 14. On the right hand and the left two seas shut us in; around (us) is the river Po, larger and more rapid<sup>14</sup> than the Rhone. 15. There are innumerable worlds above, below, on the right hand and the left, before and behind.

<sup>1</sup> Præmēbant.<sup>2</sup> Men of Attica, Attici.<sup>3</sup> Use the adj. *pastorilis*.<sup>4</sup> Lit. crows (corvi), so named from their hooked form.<sup>5</sup> Lōcus.<sup>6</sup> A considerable part of the journey, M̄iquantum Itinēria.<sup>7</sup> Too is often expressed by the compar. degree, see St. L. Gr. 351.<sup>8</sup> Say turned away (from him), aver-<sup>9</sup> sus, part. of avertō.<sup>10</sup> Ierunt, from eo.<sup>11</sup> Use the impers. form, bellūtum<sup>ērat, lit. it had been warred.</sup><sup>12</sup> To journey, Iter fācēre.<sup>13</sup> Say in a straight direction of (or with), rectā flaminis Dānūbii régionē.<sup>14</sup> Say charioteers, essēdārii.<sup>15</sup> Violentus.

## XXXV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

*His rēbus coquitiis, Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur, Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.—Cae.*

*Pythagoras Turquiniō Sūperbo regnante in Italiam venit, Pythagoras comes into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit. Tarquinius Superbus reigning).—Cic.*

*Aliquid salvis legibus agere, To do a thing without breaking the laws.*

Cic.

*Obs.* 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

*Obs.* 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

*Cæsar, expedito exercitu, ad hostes contendit, Cæsar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.—Cæs.*

✓ § 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,

*Nondum comperto, in quam r̄giōnem vénisset, If not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.—Liv.*

*Excepto quod non sūmū escess, cetera laetus, This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.—Hor.*

*Obs.* This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives auditio, cognito, comperto, and the like.

✓ § 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb sum has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

*Natus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerone et António consiliis, Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.—Suet.*

*Si se invito transire cōnārentur, If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).—Cæs.*

#### SYNOMYS.

1. *Contio, ónis, f.* (prob. a shortened form of conventio: less correctly spelt concio), an assembly of people or soldiers convened to listen to speeches. *Concilium, i., n.* (con- cito), a council, does not differ widely from contio, though it is usually applied to smaller bodies. *Consilium* (con-, sēdeo), is a council for the purpose of deliberation. *Cōmītia, órum* (con or cum and et), an assembly for electing magistrates or making laws. *Conventus, ña, m., an assembly for the purpose either of business or pleasure:*

*Dimissa contione, concilium habitum, When the public assembly had been dismissed, a council was held.—Liv.*

*Vénio ad cōmītia, sive māgistratūm sive lēgūm, I come to the meetings whether for the appointment of magistrates or the passing of laws.—Cic.*

*Festos dies agunt vīfrōrum et mīllērum cōventu, They celebrate their festivals in a mixed gathering of men and women.—Cic.*

*Creo, ávi, átum, 1, to call out of nothing, to give existence by one's own will or creative power. Figuratively, to appoint to an office. Pāris, pēpēri, partum, 3, to bring forth, give rise to. Gigno, gēnui, gēnūtum, 3, to beget, of either parent. Genēro, ávi, átum, 1, to engender, only used of the male parent:*

*Quae in terris gignuntur ad usum hōmīnum omnia creasuntur, All things which are produced on earth are made for the use of man.—Cic.*

*Hécuba gēnūt Alexandrum, Hecuba gave birth to Alexander (Paris).—Cic.*

A Marte p̄pūlūm Rōmānūm ḡn̄crātūm accēp̄mūs, We have heard that the Roman people were descended from Mars.—Cic.

Gallina ūva p̄frē aſſet, The hen usually lays eggs.—Enn.

3. Scūtūm, l., n. (σκύρον), used generally for any shield, but also especially for an oblong shield covered with hide. Clipeus, i., m., a round bossed shield. Parma, ae, f., was of similar shape, but smaller; a buckler. Pelta, ae, f., (πέλτη), the Amazonian crescent-shaped shield. Ancile, is, n., an oval shield—properly the one which, in Numa's reign, was said to have fallen from heaven, and was preserved by the Salii priests; and after the pattern of which others were made.

4. Pāco, avi, atum, l. (pax), to appease or subdue. Pācificor, atus sum, 1 (pācem sācērō), to make peace:

Civitatis pācificat, He had subdued the states.—Caes.

Dux pācificari eum altero stātūt, The general resolved to make peace with the other of the two.—Just.

#### PHRASES.

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Eng. To deliver a speech         | Lat. Orātiōnēm hāb̄re.  |
| " Against one's will,            | " Invitus in agreement with the subject. See St. L. Gr. 343.        |
| " Under the leadership of Caesar | " Caudēre dīces.  |
| " His name was John,             | " To him the name was John, or to John; see St. L. Gr. 296, Obs. 1. |
| " The ships are stationed now,   | " Nāvēs stānt ad, &c.   |

#### EXERCISE XXXV.

[N.B.—The phrases to be rendered by the Ablative Absolute are put in Italics.]

1. When this was done, the resources of the Lacedaemonians were shattered.<sup>1</sup> 2. Caesar, summoning a council, delivered a speech, by which the minds of all were changed. 3. On the death of Trajan, Aelius Hadrianus became emperor. 4. Ships cannot enter the harbour of Alexandria, against the will of those by whom Pharos is held. 5. Caesar, seizing a shield from the hand of a fugitive (*fugiens*), renewed the battle. 6. Under the generalship of Pausanias, Mardonius with two hundred thousand foot<sup>2</sup> and twenty thousand horse was routed from Greece. 7. When these things had been done, and the whole of Gaul had been subdued, the nations which dwelt beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors to<sup>3</sup> Caesar. 8. Caesar, sending his cavalry ahead, follows-up with all his forces. 9. The Germans, hearing the shouting in their rear,<sup>4</sup> cast away their arms, left their military standards, (and) rushed<sup>5</sup> from<sup>6</sup> the camp. \* 10. When Augustus was Emperor, a certain boy, named (*cui nomen erat*) Thoas, brought up a very small serpent with great care, until the citizens, in spite of the wishes and tears of the boy,<sup>7</sup> sent it into a wilderness. 11. He himself, when it was heard that the fort of Lupplia, situated close to<sup>8</sup> the river, was besieged,<sup>9</sup> led thither six legions. 12. It being ascertained from the rustics that the ships of the enemy were stationed at Aethalia, he advanced thither.

<sup>1</sup> Use affligo; lit. to dash to the ground.

<sup>2</sup> Say of foot, pēdūm: since millia (pl.) is always used substantively.

<sup>3</sup> Ad with acc., after a verb of motion.

<sup>4</sup> Say behind their back, post tergum.

<sup>5</sup> Say cast themselves forth, se c̄se-

erunt

<sup>6</sup> Ex not a, because they were before in the camp.

<sup>7</sup> Invito ac flente puero.

<sup>8</sup> Appōlitus with dat.

<sup>9</sup> Pres. imperf. inf., because the action was still going on.

§ 33  
Substan-

—Ter.

Parv-

Obs.

sub-

mu-

[M]

Obs. 1

doc-

as,

§ 341

Adjecti-  
quires a  
top, t  
the me-  
diūm, t  
the begin-  
halved, t

Ad in-  
Unus  
Extrē-  
Reliqu-

Obs. 1

Gen-

1. Siccus,  
Aridus,  
Pēdibū-  
fect.—O  
In the ab-  
dried sub-

Atque  
Virg.

Siccus we-

2. Semper,  
contin-  
Mhl q  
knō wh-

Quod a  
eternal.—

2. Affātim  
(short for  
Sītis ce-  
Sītis si-  
Sītis al-  
enough an-

## XXXVI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

—Ter.  
Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good things,*

Parvum parva dōcent, *Small (things) besit a small (man).*—Hor.

*Obs.* 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *hōmo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multōrum bōnum, of many persons; multarum rērum, of many things.* [Multorum alone might refer to either persons or things.]

*Obs.* 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti, learned men.* But in the Singular, *vir* or *hōmo* is usually added: *as, hōmo doctus, a learned man.*

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus, at the top, the top of;* *infimus or imus, at the bottom, the bottom of;* *mēdius, the middle;* *extrēmus, last, at the end of;* *primus, first, at the beginning of;* *rēliquus, remaining, the remainder of;* *dīmidiātus, halved, the half of:* as,

Ad imam quercuin, *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr.

Unus dīmidiātusque mensis, *One month and a half.*—Cic.

Extrēma hīcō, *At the end of winter.*—Cic.

Rēliqua vita, *The rest of life.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But *rēliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *rēliquum vītae* (= *reliqua vita*), Liv.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Siccus, a, um, dry, as opposed to wet.*  
*Āridus, a, um (areo), parched up, thoroughly dry:*  
Pēdibus siccis super sequora currit, *She runs over the sea without wetting her feet.*—Ov.  
In the above example *āridus* would not do. But in speaking of fuel, or any dried substance, *āridus* should be used:  
Atque ārida circum nūtrīmenta dēdit, *And he placed dry fuel all around.*  
Virg.  
*Siccus* would mean *not wetted*, whether internally dry or not.
2. *Semper, always, at all times. Usque, always, up to a certain time, or continuing beyond it:*  
Mīhi quidem usque cūrāe ērīt quid nīgas, *I truly shall ever be concerned to know what you are about.*—Cic.  
Quod semper mōvētur id aeternum est, *That which is constantly in motion is eternal.*—Cic.
3. *Affātīm* (orig. *ally ad fatim, as two words, to satisfy), abundantly. Satis* (short form *sat*), *enough.* *Affātīm* expresses greater abundance than *satis*:

*Satis est et affātīm prōrēs, It is enough—in fact it is abundant.*—Cic.  
*Satis et pērēque, enough and more than enough:*  
*Satis superēque id hābēo quod mīhi dēdēris, I account what you have given me enough and more than enough.*—Cic.

4. **Proprius**, *a, um, peculiar to a man's own self, proper to him, one's own*. **Suus**, *his, his own, her own, its own*, with reference to the subject. Hence, *Litteras in manu sua (not propriis) scriptae, A letter written with one's own hand.* **Peculiarius**, *e, especially one's own, in opposition to universalis, that to which all are entitled.*

5. **Amitto**, *missi, missum, 3, to let fall or slip, to lose*. It expresses less than *perdo, didi, datum, 3*. **Amitto** denotes that a loss has been incurred unconsciously, or without opposition on the part of the agent. **Perdo** implies that a thing is knowingly wasted. Hence,  
*Amittere tempus is to lose time or an occasion.*  
*Perdere tempus, to waste, i.e. mis-spend time.—Cic*  
*Décimus vitam amissit, non perdidit, Decimus gave up his life voluntarily, he did not lose it (after a struggle).—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| ng. <i>My Virgil! my Maccinas!</i>               | Lat. <i>Virgili! Maccinas!</i>     |
| " <i>The same as,</i>                            | " <i>Idem qui.</i>                 |
| " <i>I have a supply,</i>                        | " <i>Aliud habeo.</i>              |
| " <i>At daybreak,</i>                            | " <i>Mithi suppedit.</i>           |
| " <i>On the top, bottom, middle of the hill,</i> | " <i>Primum tunc.</i>              |
| " <i>At the end of the second book,</i>          | " <i>In extremo libro secundo.</i> |
| " <i>To provide for corn,</i>                    | " <i>De frumento prouidere.</i>    |
| " <i>The rest of the spoil,</i>                  | " <i>Reliqua præda.</i>            |

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. But one night awaits (us) all. 2. To few persons do their own things seem to be enough (*satis*). 3. For<sup>1</sup> to the indolent all things seem to be difficult. 4. Not always do the same men reap who have sowed.<sup>2</sup> 5. You<sup>3</sup> will have an abundant supply of everything if diligence do not fail (*fuerit perf.*) you. 6. Justly will he<sup>4</sup> lose his own (*proprium*), who covets what belongs to another (*alicium*). 7. To those who aim<sup>5</sup> at much, much is wanting. 8. Those things, which you relate concerning me, are true, my so<sup>6</sup>; nature has bestowed much<sup>7</sup> upon us. 9. At daybreak, the summit of the mountain was in possession of<sup>8</sup> T. Labienus. 10. Afranius leads out his forces and stations them in the centre of the hill. 11. Afranius and Petreius lead out their forces to the foot (*radices*) of the mountain, and provoke (the enemy) in battle. 12. The Peloponnesians founded Megara, a city midway<sup>9</sup> between Corinth and Athens. 13. At the end of the bridge, Caesar plants<sup>10</sup> a tower of four storeys, and he strengthens that position with fortifications. 4. They have made no sufficient provision<sup>10</sup> for (*de*) corn, and other supplies. 15. To the soldiers also we have given up the rest of the spoil, with the exception of the horses.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Enim, which must be the second word in the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Say have made the sowing, sēmen-  
ū sēminū.

<sup>3</sup> Say to you all things will be, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Is, not illē, is the regular ante-  
cedent to the relative : see St. L. Gr.  
172.

<sup>5</sup> Dat. pl. of participle.

<sup>6</sup> Say, many things, multa.

<sup>7</sup> Say was held by, imperf. pass. of  
teneo.

<sup>8</sup> Mēdīus, in agreement with urbem

<sup>9</sup> Conscētū.

<sup>10</sup> Non sītis prouidērunt.

<sup>11</sup> Abjat. absol. Exoptio.

§ 343  
used also  
Adverb  
describi  
of the ad  
place, o

Ego e

Plus l

11. ve to  
tingly; —T

The i  
quently  
willingly  
pleasure;  
tingly; in  
in the m  
sublimis,

Obs. Suc  
dōnt, u

§ 345.  
ment wi  
clause w

Hamil  
who crossed  
Hispani  
the last of

Obs. Th  
distinc  
The a  
time)  
prim  
speak

1. **Accido**, *of what occ*  
*Évenio*, *w*  
*unlucky,*

Scies pl  
blessing to  
His māl  
former mo  
Auspicio

2. **Ianquo**, *l*  
*lietum, 3,*

## XXXVII.—ADJECTIVES—continued.

**§ 343. Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.**—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego cum a me *invitissimus* dimisi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*  
—Cic.

Plus hodie boni *imprudens* feci, quam *sciens* ante hunc diem unquam,  
*I have to-day done more good unwillingly, than I ever before did willingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus, unwilling, unwillingly; laetus, joyful, joyfully; libens = libenter, gaily, with pleasure; sciens, knowing, knowingly; imprudens, unwitting, unwittingly; impetratus, unskilled, unskillfully: add to these, matutinus, in the morning; pronus, on one's face; supinus, on one's back; sublimis, aloft.*

*Obs.* Such instances as *matutinus, vespertinus, domesticus* == *mānū, vēspere, dōmī*, are of rare occurrence.

**§ 345. Prior, primus, posterior, postremus.** are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

*Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.*

*Hispania postrema omnium provinciarum perdormita est, Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The use of *prior, primus*, and *posterior, postremus*, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs *prius, primum*, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus *primus dixit* means, *he was the first who spoke*; *primum dixit, he first spoke, and then, etc.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Accidō, id, s.** is used of *any unexpected event*. **Contingo, vgi, tactum, s.** of *what occurs by the gift of fortune*, and generally implies *something favourable*. **Évenio, vénī, ventum, 4.** to turn out, issue, is used of *what is either lucky or unlucky*: **Obvénio, vénī, ventum, 4.** is to fail to the lot of: *Sicut plura mīla contingere nōbis quam accidere, Know that more illis are a blessing to us than a misfortune.*—Sen.  
*His mīlo évenit, illis optime, In the case of the latter it turns out ill—of the former most successfully.*—Cle.  
*Auspiciis secunda obvénérunt, They met with favourable auspices.*—Cle.
2. **Linquo, liqui, lictum, 3** (rare), signifies *to quit or leave*. **Rēlinquo, liqui, lictum, 3**, *to leave behind*. **Déséro, ui, seratum, 3** (*de séro*), proper: *y to untie*,

*break a connection—to desert.* **Destituo**, *ui, Ætum, 3, to abandon, leave in the lurch:*

*Potentes dōmos linquit, She leaves the abodes of the mighty.—Hor.*

*Relinquere aēs alīcūm, to leave a debt behind, to die in debt.—Cic.*

*Omnes nōti me atque amici dēsérunt, All my acquaintances and even my friends desert me.—Ter.*

*Quod sit destitutus quēritur, He complains of being abandoned.—Caes.*

**Nēgo**, *āvi, Ætum, 1; and Rēfūso, āvi, Ætum, 1; to deny, as by speech or words.* **Abnuo**, *ui, Ætum, 3; and Rēnūto, ui, Ætum, 3; by signs and gestures.* **Abnuo**, perhaps, *by a wave of the hand;* **rēnūto**, *by drawing back the head.* **Nēgo** implies that a negative answer is returned to a question. **Rēfūso** that a request has been denied, or that something offered has been refused or rejected. *lēnēo* is a milder expression than *rēfūso*.

**Rēfūso** also refers to a thing which is regarded as burdensome. **Rēpūdio**, *āvi, Ætum, 1, to that which promises advantage:*

*Saepē evēnt ut et vōluptatēs rēpūdlandae sint, et mōlestia non rēcensanda, It will often occur that even pleasures must be set aside, and toit not shruck from.—Cic.*

**Altus**, *a, um (illo, to rear or raise), high.* **Arduus**, *a, um, inaccessible; figuratively, difficult.* **Celsus**, *a, um (obsolete cello, to raise), lofty, stately.* **Excelsus**, *a, um, stronger than celsus, of great elevation, raised above other objects.* **Editus**, *a, um, raised, elevated.* **Prōcerus**, *a, um, long or tall.* **Sublimis**, *e (prob. for sublevinis from sublēvo), raised high; aloft.*

*Via alta atque ardua, A high and moreover difficult road.—Cic.*

*Ardua mōliri, To attempt impossibilities.—Ov.*

*Ostendēbat Carthāgēnē de excuso quādam lōco, He was pointing out Carthage from a certain spot higher than the rest.—Cic.*

**Sōleo**, *itum sum, 2, to be accustomed to do.* **Suesco**, *suēvi, suētum, 3, to grow accustomed to, and so to contract a habit:*

*Drusus in Illyricum missus est ut suesceret militiae, Drusus was sent into Illyricum to get accustomed to service.—Cic.*

#### PHRASES.

**Eng.** *It was his happy lot,* &c.,

**Lat.** *Huius contigit.*

**" Only a few,**

**" Pauci tantum.**

**" With my eyes open,**

**" Vtēdens.**

#### EXERCISE XXXVII.

- To the wise man only this happens, to do (*ut* with *Subj.*) nothing unwillingly, nothing sorrowfully, nothing by compulsion.
- Few only, of<sup>1</sup> so great a number, return in safety to<sup>2</sup> the camp.
- The senate also had, even gladly, decreed a levy.
- An assemblage of the whole of Italy willingly recognised the glory of that deed.
- (He) who sins wittingly deserves heavier punishment than (he) who sins unwittingly.
- Joyfully I confess that you have surpassed me in<sup>3</sup> well doing.
- The former part is open to view,<sup>4</sup> the hinder (parts) are concealed.
- We were compelled to do (it) against our will, an<sup>5</sup> reluctantly.
- Therefore not reluctantly did I, at your request,<sup>6</sup> act so as to be<sup>6</sup> of service to many.
- Cheerfully do I die<sup>7</sup> for my country.
- The carcasses of men were believed to float with the face upwards: (those of) women downwards.
- Him will I wittingly and designedly send down to that place,<sup>8</sup> whence there is no escape.
- Why, now, with your face upwards, are you looking towards the

sky? 14.  
lifted. 15.  
elect were  
17. Read  
other.

<sup>1</sup> Ex with  
<sup>2</sup> In with  
<sup>3</sup> Expr. b  
<sup>4</sup> Say appre

§ 346.  
*nam*, the  
when the  
Neque  
Nor has he  
Dicit n  
Our country

§ 347. I  
by a word  
sum must  
verb to be  
Hace ve

These are the  
Verbs a  
Cn. Calidius  
influential th

*Obs.* If it  
frequent  
Ego  
Phormio  
Patro  
father o

§ 348. T  
with the on

§ 349. P  
numerals a  
quāni, as in  
the constru

*Non plus*  
*than four thousand*  
*Pictores e*  
*cōlōribus, Th*

*M̄nas due*  
*two thousand*

sky? 14. Joyfully they enter, erect, and with (their) heads uplifted. 15. I (am) the first to feel our ills. 16. For the consuls elect were usually first of all asked their opinion in the senate. 17. Read me, I pray (you),<sup>9</sup> this bill first, and afterwards that other.

<sup>1</sup> Ex with abl.

<sup>2</sup> In with acc.

<sup>3</sup> Expr. by abl. of gerund without prep.

<sup>4</sup> Say appears, appetet.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>6</sup> So as to be, ita ut with subj.

<sup>7</sup> Pro with abl.

<sup>8</sup> To that place whence, eo unde;

<sup>9</sup> Quaeso.

## XXXVIII.—COMPARATIVES.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque habet [hērus mens] plus sapientiae quam lapis [habet].  
Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).—Pl.

Dēbet nōbius cariorem esse patriam quam [dēbet esse] uosmetipos.  
Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.—Cic.

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb to *be* is frequently omitted: as,

Hace verba sunt Varriōnis, hōmīnis doctiōris quam fuit Claudiūs,  
These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than C. Claudius.—Gell.

Verves argenteum reddidit L. Cordio, hōmīni non p̄cūsiōri, quam  
Cn. Calidiūs est, Verves restored the silver to L. Cordius, & was not more  
influential than Cn. Calidiūs.—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Ego hōmīnem calidōrem vidi nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem (= quam  
Phormio est), I have seen no man more cunning than Phormio.—Ter.

Patrem tam plēdiūm reddi quam dērem (= quam dēs est), I make (your)  
father as quiet as a sheep.—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. See p. 63.

§ 349. *Pius* and *amplius*, *more*, and *minus*, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Non plus quam quattuor mille effugērunt (not effugit). Not more  
than four thousand escaped.—Liv.

Pictōres antiqui non sicut usi plus (not pluribus) quam quattuor  
coloribus, The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.—Cic.

Minus duo milia hōmīnum ex tanto exercitu effugērunt, Less than  
two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, either *māgis* is used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree : as,

*Corpōra magna māgis quam firma, Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—*Liv.*

*Pauli contio fuit vērior quam grātior pōpūlo, The speech of Paulus was more true than popular.*—*Liv.*

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree : as,

*Sēnectus est nātūrā lōquācior, Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—*Cie.*

*Vōluptas, quum mājor est, omne ānīmi lumen extinguit, Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—*Cie.*

*Obs. 1 Too great in proportion to something is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro* : as,*

*Proelium atrōctūs quam pro nūmēro pugnantum, A fierer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—*Liv.*

*Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut* : as,*

*Mājor sum quam cui possit fortūna nōcēre, I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—*Ov.*

*Damna mājora sunt quam quae aestimāri possint, The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—*Liv.*

*Obs. 3. The same constructions are employed in the case of Adverbs.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Omnis, e, every, all without exception*; it is opposed to *nēmo* or *nullus*. *Universi, ae, a, all collectively, at once and together*, is opposed to *singūli*. *Cuncti, ae, a (contr. of co-juncti = con-juncti), all combined and united together*, not materially different from *universi*, but less emphatic. *Tōtūs, a, um, is the whole as made up of parts, and which may be broken up into those parts; whereas omnis, especially in pl. omnes, applies to each of the individuals of a species, which make a whole by being associated together:*

*We say, tōtūs, not omnis orbis, the whole world.*

*Omnies, not toti homines, all men.*

*Cuncti clamāre coepūnt, all (in an assembly, for instance) cried out.*

*Universi familiā, The whole body of slaves.*

*Universos esse pātres aīchāt, dispersos pēritifros, Combined, he said, they would be a match for them (the Persians); but scattered, would all perish.*—*Nep.*

2. *Terra, ae, f., the earth, or sometimes a part of the earth.* *Tellus, ūris, f., properly the goddess of the earth; hence used poetically for the earth itself.* *Hūmns, i, m. (root *xw-*—whence *xwai* = humi), is the ground.* *Sōlūm, i, n., properly that which sustains anything upon it; hence the soil or the earth itself.*

*Terra locata in mediā mundi sēde, The earth planted in a central position of the universe.*—*Cie.*

*Mūl calceāmontum sōlōrum callum est, The hard skin of my soles serves me for shoe-leather.*—*Cie.*

3. *Religio, ónis, f. (prob. fr. rōligōre), the fear of God; with the ancients often, a religious or ceremonial scruple.* *Fides, fi, f., a sense of obligation, because of a promise.* *Sūperstītio, ónis, f., a needless fear of the gods, superstition:*

*Sūperstītio in quā inest inānis timor dēorum, religio quae dēorum cultu pīo*

contin  
of the p  
—Cie.

1. Pernic  
um (da  
gan.  
Exitia  
affecting  
Lēges  
Extic  
Dōnu  
Consu  
and fort

Eng. Man  
,, Thre  
,, Not  
,, Wit

1. The  
was your  
walls of I  
tude (we  
seers bett  
destructiv  
is more i  
Socrates,  
to fear d  
Twenty-t  
hundred  
and twen  
most brav  
battle. 1  
fortune.  
than a sp  
than stea  
live too t  
prudence  
belongs to

1 In with  
2 Say by  
3 Capta:  
often expre  
being outwit

*together, or both*  
*big than*  
*of Paullus*  
*quality*  
*hat talka-*  
*Pleasure,*  
*omparative*  
*battle than*  
*the Com-*  
*fortune to*  
*ees are too*  
*os.*  
*or nullus.*  
*to singuli-*  
*ed together,*  
*, a, um, is*  
*ose parts;*  
*duals of a*  
*out.*  
*they would*  
*-Nep.*  
*is, aris, f.,*  
*with itself.*  
*olum, i, n.,*  
*with itself.*  
*position of*  
*serves me*  
*ents often,*  
*because of*  
*ition:*  
*culta pio*

*continetur, (It is) superstition in which there is involved an empty (foolish) fear of the gods, (it is) religion which is comprised in a pious worship of the gods.* —Cic.

4. *Perniciosus, a, um (per, nec), bringing death, destructive. Damnōsus, a um (damnum), causing damage, also used in the sense of prodigal or extravagant. Exitiosus, a, um (exitium), destructive, charged with fatal consequences. Extitialis, e (poet.), destructive, calculated to destroy. Capitalis, e (capitum), effecting the life or civil status of a citizen; mortal, deadly:*

*Lēges perniciōsae, Laws destructive to states.—Caes.*

*Exītiosa conjūratiō, A conspiracy of fatal tendency.—Cic.*

*Dōnum extitiale Minervae, The offering to Minerva ruinous (to us).—Virg.*

*Consutūdō damnōsa famae, rēque, A connexion detrimental to character and fortune.—Liv.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *Many times greater,*

Lat. *Greater by many parts,*

*Multis partibus major.*

“ *Three years younger,*

“ *Younger by three years,*

*Triennio minor.*

“ *Not less than two thousand,*

“ *Two thousand, not less,*

*Duo millia, haud minus.*

“ *With more courage than success,*

“ *More courageously than successfully,*

*fortius quam felicius.*

## EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. The sun is many times larger than the whole earth. 2. Crassus was younger by three years than Antonius. 3. The towers on<sup>1</sup> the walls of Babylon are ten feet higher<sup>2</sup> than the wall. 4. The multitude (were) seized<sup>3</sup> with an empty superstition, (and) obeyed its seers better than its leaders. 5. The disorders of the mind are more destructive than (those of) the body. 6. The name of Themistocles is more illustrious than (that) of Solon. 7. These are the words of Socrates, a man wiser than all his (fellow) citizens. 8. We ought to fear diseases of the mind more than (those) of the body. 9. Twenty-two thousand of the enemy were slain; more than three hundred were taken alive. 10. He remained not longer than seven and twenty days. 11. The soldiers, for more than four hours, fought most bravely. 12. Not less than two thousand infantry<sup>4</sup> fell in the battle. 13. His wars were conducted with more courage<sup>5</sup> than good fortune. 14. The horns were indeed small, but more transparent than a spotless gem.<sup>6</sup> 15. The besieged fought with more fierceness<sup>7</sup> than steadiness. 16. A prudent father does not suffer his son to live too freely. 17. Alexander pursued his enemies with more prudence<sup>8</sup> than eagerness. 18. The joy was too great for human beings to contain. 19. No response of Apollo is more true than this.

<sup>1</sup> In with *abl.*, rest being signified.

<sup>2</sup> Say by ten feet: see St. L. Gr. 321.

<sup>3</sup> *Capta*: the former of two verbs is often expressed by a participle, and being omitted.

<sup>4</sup> Use *dicit*.

<sup>5</sup> Genitive pl. of *pēdes*, *litus*, *boenū*; *mille* in pl. is always a substantive.

<sup>6</sup> Use adverbs, *fortius*, *fēcōlius*, etc.

<sup>7</sup> *Pūmā magis polideba gemina.*

## XXXIX.—SUPERLATIVES.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum*: as,

*Jugurtha quam maximas potest cōpias armat. Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

*Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse mōrum stūdiōrumque distantia. There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

*Dicam quam br̄vissimē, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

*Obs.* We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of:

1. *Unus* or *unus omnium*: as,

*P. Scaevolūm unū nostrac civitatis et ingēnīo et justitiā praestantissimum audeo dīcere, I venture to call P. Scaevola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

*Miltides et antiquitātē gēnēris et glōria mājorūm unus omnium maximē dōrēbat, Miltades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. *By longē* or *multo*: as,

*Alcibiades omnium aetatis suae multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative: as,

*Tam sum mitis quam qui lēnissimus (i. e. est), I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

*Tam sum amīcus rīpublīcae quam qui maximē, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. “All the best,” “all the wisest,” and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative: as,

*Sāpiētissimus quisque aequissimo īfimo mōritur, All the wisest men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

*Allistrua quaque flāmina mīnimo sōno labuntur, (All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Epūla, n., f., an entertainment, usually of a sumptuous kind. Epūlum, i., n., a public or religious feast. Convivium, i., n., a repast of several persons together—a convivial meal. Cōmissātiō, oīta, f., a glutinous festivity, a reveling. Dapse, dīplia, f. (less frequently in singular, and not so<sup>nd</sup> in gen. pl.), a sacrificial feast; poet. any meal;*

Bēne  
clōnem  
ing of f  
each oth

Epūla  
Ampli  
Obligā

2. *Mōs, n.  
morals,  
results i  
whether  
from Ca*

3. *Dignita  
esteem.  
which a*

Ampli  
—Cic. —  
Quod a  
that this  
(consequ

4. *Nōvus  
opposed t  
—opposed  
Nilh &  
E prōv*

Eng. Provis  
" As qui  
" Till la  
" As gre  
" The ma  
" All the

1. Caesa  
on<sup>2</sup> to Arie  
quiet till la  
softly as po  
character a  
he possibly  
speak with  
who has do  
We have he  
whole of G  
rish, more  
the most we  
of the Ponti  
Pl. L.—

Bene mājōres nostrī accēsiōnēm ēpūlārem īmīcōrum, quia vītae conju-  
tōnēm hābēret, convīvium nōmārunt, *Well did our ancestors call the reclin-  
ing of friends at meals "convictum," because it involved living together with  
each other.—Cic.*

Epūlūm pōphlo Rōmāno dāre, *To give a banquet to the Roman people.—Cic.*  
Amplissimae ēptilae, *A magnificent entertainment.—Cic.*  
Obligātām reddē Jōvi dāpem, *Pay to Jove the sacred banquet due.—Hor.*

2. **Mōs**, mōris, m., *an established custom, especially of a national kind.* In pl., *morals, character.* **Consūtido**, Inis, f., *usage, habit, the continuance of which results in a settled usage (Mos).* **Ritus**, ds. m., *traditional custom or usage, whether religious or secular.* **Caerēmōnia**, or **cérēmōnia** (*said to be derived from Caere in Etruria, which sheltered the Vestals and holy things of Rome during the Gallic invasion), a religious ceremony.*

3. **Dignitas**, atis, f., *implies merit or dignity which makes a man worthy of esteem.* **Existimātiō**, onis, f., *is the effect of dignitas, the general esteem in which a man is held, as a recognition of his worth;*

Amplissimae dignitatis grādus ēalpīsei, *To attain the highest degrees of rank.—Cic.*

Quod sentībam et dignitati et existimatiōni tuae condicōre, *I was of opinion that this contributed both to your dignity, and the esteem in which you were (consequently) held.—Cic.*

4. **Nōvus** is new, *inasmuch as it did not exist before, or in olden times—opposed to antiquus.* **Rēcens**, ntis, new, *as not having been long in existence—opposed to vētus:*

Nihil ērat nōvi in ējus ēpīstolā, *His letter contained no news.—Cic.*  
Ē prōvinciā rēcens fuit, *He was fresh from his province.—Cic.*

#### PHRASES.

| Eng.                                | Latt.  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| " As quickly as possible,           | Res frumentaria.   |
| " Till late at night,               | " Quam celerime pōtuit.  |
| " As great as possible,             | " Ad multam noctem.  |
| " The most cruel man that ever was, | " As great as the greatest can be,<br>Quantus maximus pōtest esse. |
| " All the newest things,            | " Cūdēlissimus quam qui unquam<br>fuit.<br>Recentissima quaque.    |

#### EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Caesar after collecting provisions<sup>1</sup> as speedily as possible, pushed on<sup>2</sup> to Arioivistus. 2. In varied discourse we lengthen out the banquet till late at night. 3. Birds build their nests and line them as softly as possible. 4. There is between them as great a difference of character and pursuits as possible. 5. For he gave me as much<sup>3</sup> as he possibly could, intending-to-give more<sup>4</sup> had he been able. 6. I speak with<sup>4</sup> (you) one of the bravest of men (use *inus*), (and one) who has done nothing but (*nisi*) what is most full of dignity. 7. We have heard that Plato<sup>5</sup> was by far the most learned man in the whole of Greece.<sup>6</sup> 8. This (*rel. pron.*) land Juno is said to have cherished, more than all (other) lands.<sup>7</sup> 9. Plato was in speaking by far the most weighty and eloquent of all. 10. From the commentaries of the Pontifices he seems to have been far superior<sup>8</sup> in natural talent.

11. While every kind of arrogance (*omnis arrogantia*) is hateful, that arising from talent<sup>9</sup> and eloquence is by far the most annoying. 12. All these things aid and adorn speech.<sup>10</sup> 13. They waged war with the tyrant, the most cruel and violent towards his own (subjects) that ever was. 14. Somehow or other<sup>11</sup> all the most learned despise him. 15. All the newest things are corrected and most carefully<sup>12</sup> amended. 16. All the best things are the most rare.

- <sup>1</sup> Abl. *absol.*, *comparatū re frumentis*.
- <sup>2</sup> *Contendo*.
- <sup>3</sup> *Quantum maximum . . . amplius*.
- <sup>4</sup> *Cum with abl.*
- <sup>5</sup> *That Plato was*, Aeo. and Infin. : see St. L. Gr. 507.
- <sup>6</sup> *Say, of the whole [of] Greece, using*

*universus.*

<sup>7</sup> *Magi omnibus dinam.*

<sup>8</sup> *To be superior, villo,* 2.

<sup>9</sup> *Say, that of talent, ingēnum.*

<sup>10</sup> *Oratio, i.e., set or formal speech.*

<sup>11</sup> *Nescio quoniam.*

<sup>12</sup> *Most carefully, maxime.*

#### XL.—THE PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

*Ego te laudavi, tu me culasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

*Hoc nos consules dōsumus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting in our duty!—Cic.*

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri*, *vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *ūnus nostrum* (not *ūnus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (*not vestri*) *vōluntas*.—Cic.

*Obs.* *Nostrī, vestī, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster*, *vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *mēnor nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. *of us*).*

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

*Nicias tuā sui mēmoriā dēlectātur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

*Bestiis hōmīnes uti possunt ad suam utilitatem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *suus* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

*Hannibalem svī cives ē civitāte ejēcērunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic

On  
remain  
Such  
nature

§ 3  
may  
also t  
when  
(Pr  
orted  
Ari  
porten  
Ariove

§ 36  
in Lat  
suppli

Apr  
De  
confide

*Obs.*  
or

1. *Ama*  
*St. L.*  
*oris, r*  
*implie*  
*i, m., i*  
*Inte*  
*ūmante*  
*one th*  
*(for se*

2. *Incipi*  
*to begin*  
*either t*  
*is to b*  
*opposeo*  
*Si qu*  
*Inclp*  
*Inclp*  
*With*  
*Coep*  
*Hoc*  
*ment, n*

*Eng. To p*  
*" To g*  
*" He o*  
*" Thr*

Catilina admōnēbat d̄lum c̄gestatis, d̄lum c̄p̄dītatis m̄ae, Catilene reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.—Sall.  
*Sua c̄ijusque īm̄unis n̄atura est, Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui*, *sibi*, *sc.*, and *suus* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thought or wishes of the previous subject: as,

(Pr̄c̄ulus) dixisse fertur, a se visum esse R̄m̄idūm *proculis is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnire portere, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him Ariovistus, he ought to come to him.*—Cæs.

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

*Apud m̄atrem recte est, All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.  
*De frātre confido ita esse ut semper vōlui, As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

*Obs.* The Possessive Pronouns, especially *suus*, often denote something *proper* or *favourable* to: as, *suo lōeo, suo tempore, at a favourable place or time.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Amans**, *ntis*, (part. of *amo*, and not used as a substantive in nom. sing.: see St. L. Gr. 638), *one who at the time loves, whether permanently or not.* **Amator**, *oris, m.*, *one with whom the feeling is habitual and permanent.* Neither implies necessarily that there is any reciprocity of the feeling. **Amicus**, *i, m.*, involves the notion of reciprocity, a (*sincere*) friend:

*Inter ēbriōtatem et ēbriitatem int̄ress, illudque est ēmātōrem esse, illud ēmantem, There is a difference between sottishness and drunkenness, and it is one thing that a man should be a lover, another that he should have a liking (for some one).*—Cic.

2. **Incipio**, *c̄epi, ceptum, 3*; and **Coepi** (defect.: see St. L. Gr. 120) both signify to begin. *Coepi*, however, is intrans., and governs the Infinitive only; *incipio* either the infinitive or a substantive in the acc. case. *Ordior, orsum sum, 3*, is to begin, as opposed to advancement. *Inchoo, āl, atum, 1, to begin, as opposed to ending or accomplishing:*

*Si quando ībundare coepiro, if ever I begin to be well off.*—Cic.

*Incipio sp̄rare, I begin to hope.*—Cic.

*Incipere sēmentem, to commence sowing.*—Virg.

With passive verbs, *coepitus sum* is used for *coepi*:

*Coepita est p̄fūnia dēbērī, The money began to be due.*—Cic.

*Hoc inchoitū officiū est, non perfecti, This is characteristic of the commencement, not the completion of a duty.*—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. To put to flight,

Lat. In filgam dāre.

" To give every man his own,

" Sua c̄ique tribuere.

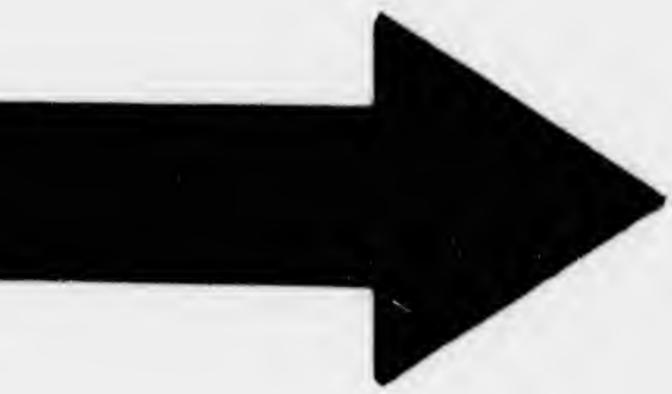
" He departed this life,

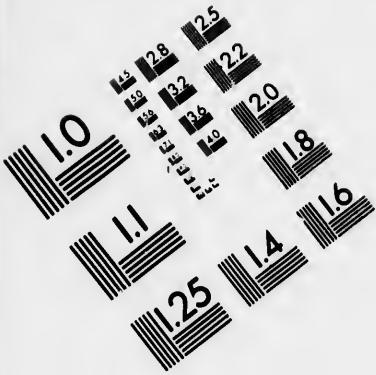
" Ex hac vīta excessit.

" Three (ſo.) miles,

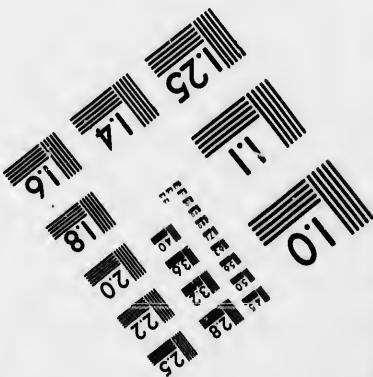
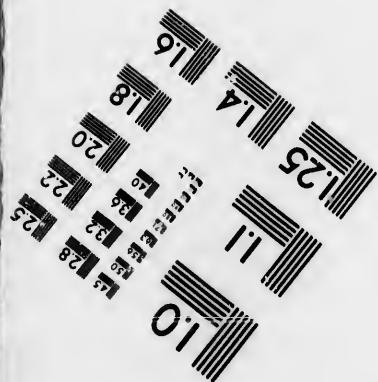
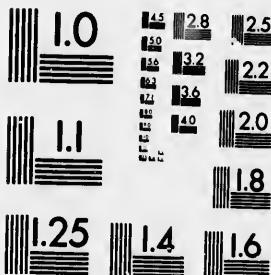
" Tria (ſo.) millia passuum.







## IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
28  
32  
25  
22  
20  
18  
16  
14  
12  
10

10  
12  
14  
16  
18  
20  
22  
24  
26  
28

## EXERCISE XL.

1. You have conquered, I will conquer. 2. I am Miltiades who conquered the Persians. 3. Fabius is most loving towards each of us. 4. His love towards us was never greater, never more welcome. 5. Dion's son threw himself from<sup>1</sup> the upper part of the house and so perished. 6. When<sup>2</sup> he had said this with a loud<sup>3</sup> voice, he cast himself forth from the ship, and began to bear the eagle towards the foe. 7. The Romans, all their men following up,<sup>4</sup> attacked the foe and put them to flight. 8. We render every man his own. 9. All the forces of the Treviri which had been sent against Labienus, encamped three miles away from his camp. 10. Q. Titurius, quite disturbed by these things, saw Ambiorix at a distance, exhorting his men, and sends his interpreter Cn. Pompeius to him. 11. On the announcement of these things to Afranius, he withdraws from his undertaking (*opus*) and retires into his camp. 12. He was treating with Caesar through Sulpicius the lieutenant about his own and his father's safety. 13. He sends a letter to Trebonius (to say) that he should come to him by forced marches with three legions. 14. In this way they signify (that) a great number (*cc.*) of the states are not able (*inf.*) to withstand their might. 15. He summons Dumnoniorix to him (and) introduces his brother. 16. When this<sup>5</sup> was known, Caesar earlier than he had been wont,<sup>6</sup> goes to his army. 17. He departed this life at the proper time<sup>7</sup> rather for himself than for his fellow-citizens.

<sup>1</sup> From, i. e., down from, de.

<sup>2</sup> Quum, with subj.

<sup>3</sup> Say, great, magnus.

<sup>4</sup> Abi. absol.

<sup>5</sup> Use Relative.

<sup>6</sup> Quam consurcat.

<sup>7</sup> Suo māgis quam civium suorum tempore.

## XLI.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. (See § 78.)

§ 364. *Hic* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

*Opus vel in haec magnificientia urbis conserendum, A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv.

*Qui haec vituperari volunt, Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

*Sox. Stola, iudex hic noster, Sextus Stoli, who sits here as our judge*—Cic.

§ 365. *Ils* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

I  
illa  
as the  
M  
  
§  
two  
near  
C  
vitae  
rlas  
and  
gaine  
confer

§ :  
Pters

D  
you ar  
Is

§ :  
in, ad

Is  
An  
forti

ob

1. Lāc  
osten  
(cont)

A  
He  
Sta  
Pa

2. Prōc  
point  
eitil.  
omen  
alarm  
of na

Pr  
Ost  
Dñ  
All

which

Quēn  
usull

*Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profagit, ut ex eodem Ponto Mœda illa quondam profugisse dicitur, Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Mœda fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.—Cic.*  
*Magnus ille Alexander, Alexander the Great —Vell.*

§ 366. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer; *ille* to the more remote: as,

*Caesar benevolentis atque munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato. Ille manusætudine et misericordia clarus factus, hinc severe ritas dignitatem addiderat, Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency on the latter severity had conferred distinction.* —Sall.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you or that of yours*: as,

*De istis rebus expecto tuas litteras, Concerning those things where you are) I am expecting your letters.—Cic.*  
*Ista oratio, That speech which you make.* —Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

*Iste vir optimus, That excellent man of yours, ironically —Cic.*  
*Antini est ista molititia, non virtus, That is weakness of mind, not fortitude.—Cæs.*

*Obs.* The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.

#### SYNONYMS

1. **Lacus**, *ūs, m., a reservoir, a lake.* *Stagnum, t, n., a standing pool, a pond, often a fish-pond.* *Pâldus, ūlīs, f., a marsh, a marshy lake.* *Uligo, ūnis, f. (contr. for ūvfligo, from ūvēo), soil soaked with water, a fen, quagmire:* —  
*A furno rôdenantes lieueque, When returning from the oven and the reservoir.*  
*Hoc.*  
*Stagna virentia musco, Ponds green with moss — Virg.*  
*Pâldes sicâre, To drain marshes.—Cic.*

2. **Prôdigium**, *l, n., (pro and dig., rt. of d. g-itus, f. ger.; Gk. ἔξεργα, I show, point at), any prodigy or marvellous circumstance, whether indicative of good or evil.* *Ostentum, l, n., (ostendo), a marvellous circumstance; often of good omen.* *Portentum, l, n., (portendo, i.e. pro-tendo), a portent, usually of an alarming nature.* *Monstrum, l, n. (môneo), anything contrary to the course of nature, usually foreboding ill; a monster;* —  
*Prôdigia curâre, To attend to prodigies (by expiatory rites).—Llv.*  
*Ostentum pro laetissimo accepit, He took the omen for a most auspicious one*  
*—Suet.*

*Portentorum explanationes, Explanations of portentous events.—Cic.*  
*Dubia monstra, Prodigies of doubtful import.—Virg.*

All these words except *ostentum* are also used in a figurative sense of *that which excites disgust or alarm*.

3. **Querôla**, *ac, f., and Querimônia, ae, f., both denote a complaint; the latter, usually a well-grounded complaint, as of an injured person who denounces*

the injustice done him; while *querela* is usually the complaint arising from discontent, or reluctance to undergo hardship. *Questus*, *ūs, m.*, any kind of complaint. *Quērlātio*, *ōnis, f.*, continued lamentation. *Gēmitus*, *ūs, m.*, a groan, sob. *Plangor*, *ōris, m.*, and *Plauctus*, *ūs, m.*, express the beating of the breast as a sign of deep sorrow:—

*Cul sunt inaudita querelae tuae? Who has not heard of your complaints?*—Cic.

*Magnā querimōniā omnium discessimus, With loud complaints from all, we retired.*—Cic.

*Ingentes iterasti pectore planetus, Heavy blows thou hast redoubled on thy breast.*—Stat.

1. *Dēversōrium*, *i, n.*, any house of reception on a journey, whether one's own, or that of a friend, or of an innkeeper. *Hospitium*, *i, n.*, a place to receive strangers. *Hospitium* also denotes a reciprocal relation in the way of hospitality. (See Dict. of Antiq. s.v.) *Caupōna*, *ae, f.*, a tavern. *Hospitālitas*, *ūtis, f.*, denotes the act or practice of entertaining strangers kindly:—

*Dēversōria nōta præterigendus ēquus, The horse must be driven past the well-known halting-places.*—Hor.

*Cum Lycōne est nīhi hospitium, I am on visiting terms with Lyco.*—Cic.

#### PIKASES.

Eng. At day-break.

Lat. At first light (*prīmū lūce*).

" That famous Caesar.

" Ille Caesar.

" You on the other hand.

" Tu contra.

" I make no complaint.

" I complain nothing (*nīhil quēra*).

" Both armies.

" Each army (*āterque exercitus*).

#### EXERCISE XI.

- At Caere a vulture flew into the temple (*aedes*) of Jupiter; at Volsinii the lake ran<sup>1</sup> with blood. For the sake of<sup>2</sup> these prodigies there was a supplication for one day (*acc.*). 2. These complaints of the Sicilians even reached<sup>3</sup> the senate. 3. With this (aforesaid) cavalry having set out by night, he at daybreak entered the gate, and proceeded into the Forum. 4. This (same) is the famous battle near (*ad*) the (lake) Trasimenus, and (one) recorded<sup>4</sup> among the few ruinous-defeats (*clādes*) of the Roman people. 5. The latter relies<sup>5</sup> on the will,<sup>6</sup> the former on nearness of relationship. 6. That famous Antipater was a Sidonian, whom you, Catus, well remember. 7. If she praise<sup>7</sup> the beauty of the former, you on the other hand (will praise) that of the latter. 8. At<sup>8</sup> the banquet was this (same) person of whom I speak, a young man of Rhodes. 9. M. Cato, that wise (and) most illustrious man, is of all my friends the dearest to me. 10. Of<sup>9</sup> violated hospitality, and of<sup>10</sup> that nefarious crime (of yours), I make no complaint. 11. At your approach (*adh.*) those seats (where you were) were vacated. 12. That brother of yours<sup>10</sup> has told me all that occurred in the Senate. 13. Each army strove,—these to seem (*ut with subj.*) to have rendered aid, those not to have (*ne with subj.*) needed assistance. 14. With-the-latter (*dat.*) fatherland, wives, parents; with-the-former, avarice and extravagance<sup>11</sup> were the causes of war. 15. If you are willing to be men, I will show you a plan by which you may escape those great ills (of yours). 16. All these things

that cruel Sulla held, as though (they were) torn (*rāpīo*) from foreigners. 17. Fearing that very thing, Agricola opposed to them as they advanced (*part*) four troops (*ala*) of horse. 18. He himself, by a leisurely<sup>12</sup> march, established (*lōco*, 1) infantry and cavalry in the winter quarters.

<sup>1</sup> Mi., 1; with *abl.*

<sup>2</sup> Causa. St. L. G. 264.

<sup>3</sup> Pervēlo, vēni, ventum, 4: with in and *acc.*

<sup>4</sup> Mēmōro, 1.

<sup>5</sup> Nitor, nūsus and nūsus, 3: with *abl.*

<sup>6</sup> Testamentum.

<sup>7</sup> Fut. tense: see St. L. G. 407.

<sup>8</sup> In with *abl.*

<sup>9</sup> De with *abl.*

<sup>10</sup> Tuus iste frater.

<sup>11</sup> Luxuria.

<sup>12</sup> Lentus.

### XLII.—DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 370. *Is* refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdōte practōre. *Is* quum habēret ūnciam firam, eam bōnis suis hērēdem instituit, P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.—Cic.

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of *is* are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

Fratrem tuum in ceteris rēbus laudo: in hāc ūnā reprehendēre cōgor, *In other respects I commend your brother: in this alone I am compelled to censure (him).*

Nō obstat frātris tui vōluntati: tāvēre non pōt̄o, *I will not stand in the way of your brother's desire: further (it) I cannot.*

*Obs.* Sometimes the Accusative of *is* is omitted, even when it refers to a different case: as,

Litib, de quibus scribis, mei non sunt; sumpsi a frātre meo, *The books about which you write are not mine; I borrowed (them) from my brother.*

§ 375. *Ideam* may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem honestum, *(There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.*—Cic.

Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam profundere pro patria pārati essent, idēm glōriæ jactūrum ne minūm quidem facere vellent, *There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).*—Cic.

§ 376. *Ipse* gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very, just, or exactly*: as,

Queram ex ipse, *I will enquire of the woman herself.*—Cic.

Accipio quod dant; mihi enim satis est, *ipsie* non satis, *I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.*—Cic.

Ibi nithi Tulliōla mea fuit praesto, natali suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.*—Cic.

Crassus tricennio *ipso* minor erat quam Antonius, *Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.*—Cic.

§ 377. *Ipse*, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “me ipse laudo,” *I (but not another person) praise myself;* but “me ipsum laudo,” *I praise myself (but not another person):* as,

Non égeo mēdiciñā [i. e. ut alii me consolor], me ipse consolor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic.

Cato se ipse interfecit, *Cato slew himself [i.e. others did not slay him].*

Fratrem suum deinceps interfecit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Impédimenta.** Órum, *n.*, the baggage of an army, including the carriages. *Sarcina, ae, f.*, what was carried by the soldier on his back, a knapsack or bundle:—

Ad Cyrtham Q. Mætillus praedam, capitiros, et impédimenta locavit, *Quintus Metellus deposited the spoil, the prisoners, and the baggage near Cyrrha.*—Sall.

Sub sarcinis adoriri milites, *To attack soldiers when loaded with baggage.*—Quint.

Figuratively :

Sarcinam vñculi impõnere, *To impose upon a man.*—Plaut.

2. **Méreo**, ui, Itum, 2; and **Méreor**, Itus sum, 2; to deserve, earn. *Mérere* is usually a transitive, *méreri* an intransitive verb. The former is usually construed with an accusative, the latter with an adverb. *Mérere* is sometimes used without an object, by an ellipsis of the word *síppendit*:—

Bene de aliquo méreri, *To deserve well of a man.*—Plaut.

Mérere (rather than méreri) stpendit, *To serve a campaign* (lit. *to earn for*).

Mérere (not méreri) culpan, *To deserve blame.*—Ter.

Mérere équo vel peditis, *To serve either in the cavalry or infantry.*—I. iv.

3. **Gratiām** or **gratiás** hábere, to feel gratitude (Gr. χάριν εἰδέναι). *Gratiás ágere*, to return thanks in words (χάριν λέγειν). *Gratiām referre*, to show gratitude by deeds (χάριν ἀποδόντω). *Grates ágere* is a less usual form than *gratiás ágere*:—

Inops étiam si gratiām rēferre non pōtest, hábere tamen pōtest, *Even if the unready man cannot show gratitude by acts, he can feel it.*—Cic.

Gratiás tibi q̄ro, summe sol, vobisque rēliqui coelites, *Thanks I render to you, O most exalted sun, and the rest of the heavenly bodies.*—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *Musicians who are also called.*

“ To be greatly honoured.

“ It is ~~exact~~ thirty days since, &c.

Lat. *Musicians who the same, &c.*

*Musici qui idem, &c.*

“ *To be in high honour, &c.*

*Magni in honore esse.*

“ *There are thirty days themselves,*

*when, &c., Triginta sunt ipsi*

*dies cum, &c.*

1 of H  
rath  
ship  
the  
fort,  
him  
also  
cent,  
man  
whic  
great  
them  
on th  
thirt  
I can  
the o  
Sulla  
11.  
divin  
The  
drive

1 G  
2 H  
3 A  
4 C  
5 I

X

§ 3  
cipal  
or re

## EXERCISE XLII.

1. His father Necclcs was of good-family.<sup>1</sup> He married a citizen of Halicarnassus,<sup>2</sup> of (*ex*) whom was born Themistocles. 2. Chabrias rather chose to die than to throw away<sup>3</sup> his arms and<sup>4</sup> leave the ship in which he had sailed (*vēlor*). This the rest were unwilling to do. 3. Dividing his forces into three parts<sup>4</sup> he conveyed the baggage of all the legions to Aduaticea. That is the name of the fort. 4. Darius, surpassed by the king in acts-of-kindness, wrote him three letters and gave him thanks. 5. Musicians, who are also<sup>5</sup> called poets, are highly esteemed by all. 6. A man most innocent, and most learned also<sup>6</sup> who deserved well of the state and of mankind at large (*omnibus*), has departed this life.<sup>7</sup> 7. Beneficence, which one may (*taret*) also<sup>6</sup> call either benignity or liberality, is greatly admired by all. 8. They wish to have a friend such as they themselves cannot be: and what<sup>7</sup> they themselves bestow not even on their friends, this do they desire from them. 9. It was exactly thirty days from the time when I delivered this letter. 10. But I can advance no greater proof of his good-breeding than that, on the one hand,<sup>8</sup> when a youth, he was most agreeable to the old man Sulla; (and) when aged (he was so) to the young man M. Brutus. 11. The chariot and robes, and, if you can believe it (*subj.*), the divinity (*nūmen*) itself, are (*say, is*) purified in a secret lake. 12. The Marcomanni gained<sup>9</sup> their settlements by (their) valour, having driven out the Boii in former-times.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Génērōsus.<sup>2</sup> Halicarnassia (civis).<sup>3</sup> Abl. absol., omitting "and."<sup>4</sup> Cōpīs in tres partes distribuita.<sup>5</sup> Idem, eđdem, idem.<sup>6</sup> Vītā concessit.<sup>7</sup> Plur.<sup>8</sup> Idem.<sup>9</sup> Pōtior, with abl.<sup>10</sup> Oīlm.

## XLII.—RELATIVE AND CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

## RELATIVES.

- qui
- quālis
- quantus
- quot (indecl.)

## CORRELATIVES.

- is, idem
- talis
- tantus
- tot (indeel.)

## ADVERBS.

- <sup>†</sup>
- quāliter
- quantōpēre
- quōtias (-ens)

- Ita
- tālitter (rare)
- tantōpēre
- tōties (-ens)

*Bestiae in quo lōco nātac sunt ex eo se non commōvent, Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.—Cic.*

*Hādem utilitatis quae hōnestatis est rēgula, The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.—Cic.*

*Quāles . . . principis, tāles . . . cīves, Like rulers, like people.—Cic.*

*Tantas spes quantas nūne hābet, non hābōret. He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.—Cic.*

*Quotiescumque dieo, tāles mihi vīdeor in jūnileum vēnire, As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial. Cic.*

*Obs. 1. After tālis, tantus, tot and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives quālis, quantus, etc., are often left to be understood : as,*

*Quāso tam angustum tālis vir (sc. quālis tu es) pōnix dōnum, Prythee, being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?—Phaedr.*

*Conservare urbes tantas atque tāles (sc. quantae atque quāles cas sunt), To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).—Cic.*

*Obs. 2. It must not be supposed that the Relative qui is regularly preceded by is or idem : but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not hic, ille, or iste. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force : as,*

*Ille fulgor qui dicitur Jōvis, Fonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.—Clo.*

**§ 381. Special constructions of the Relative.**—When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause : as,

*Thēmistōcles noctu de servis suis [eum] quēm hōbuit fōdissimū. id Xerxem misit, Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.—Nep.*

**§ 382. The Relative Adjectives quālis, quantus, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb, Substantive or Adjective in their own clause : as,**

*Tālis (erat) quālem te esse vīdeo, He was the like of what I see you to be.—Cic.*

*Nunquam vidi tantū (contionem,) quanta nūne vēstra est, I never saw so large an assemblage as yours now is.—Cic.*

*Obs. Tālis, tantus are often followed by the Subjunctive with ut.*

#### SYNONYMS.

. *Diligo, lexi, lectum, 3, to love from a sense of worth, to esteem. Amo, avi, atum, 1, to love affectionately. Diligo denotes therefore a quieter feeling, whereas amo often denotes a passionate love. Amo is less forcible than déamo, which is to love passionately or desperately. Adiamo is to fall in love:*—

*Tantum aēcessit ut mihi nūne dēn'que amare vīdeo, ante dīflexiſe, So much has it increased that now at length I seem to myself to love, before to have (merely) felt a regard.—Cic.*

. *Disputatio, ônis, f. (disputo), a debate or disputation between persons of different opinion. Contentio, ônis, f. (contendo), properly an effort, a striving, hence a warm dispute. Contestatio, ônis, f. (cum testis), strong solicitation or entreaty. It is not used by good authors in the sense of a quarrel:—*

Vehementissima contentio animi, ingenii, virium, *the most powerful effort of the mind, talents, and strength.* —Cic.

Disputationem de aliquo re instituire, *To commence an argument on any topic.* —Cic.

1. Dēlecto, avi, atum, i., *to confer a positive pleasure.* Oblecto, avi, atum, i., *to amuse or entertain:*—

Rēfōrō me ad Mūsas, quae me maxime dīlectarunt, *I resort to the Muses, who have yielded me especial delight.* —Cic.

Habebis quae seneconsum oblectent, *You will have the means for enlivening your old age.* —Ter.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *As much as.*

Lat. *Tantum . . . quantum.*

" *As many . . . so many.*

" *Quot . . . tot.*

" *As many and great.*

" *Tot tantaque.*

" *The better a man is, the more, &c.*

" *Quo quis melior est eo, &c. . . ita*

*&c. Ut quisque est vir optimus,*

*. . . ita, &c.*

" *I am not the man to fear.*

" *Nisi si non qui timam.*

## EXERCISE XI.III.

1. I am not the man, said he, to be very seriously terrified (*sulj*) by the chance of death.
2. The citizen is he who loves his country.
3. We know as much as we retain in-our-memory.
4. In the same night that<sup>1</sup> Alexander was born, was the temple of the Ephesian Diana burnt-down.<sup>2</sup>
5. As much time (*gen.*) as others allow for pleasures, and to the mere<sup>3</sup> rest of mind and body, so much have I, for my part (*ęgymet*), taken for these studies of mine.
6. Nor did I as greatly desire this argument (to be treated) by Crassus, as I am delighted by his speech.
7. I seem to myself to witness such<sup>4</sup> a fight as never took place (*say, was*).
8. As many kinds of speeches as we have said exist (*esse*), so many (kinds) of orators are there found (to be).
9. No one dared, (even) in silence,<sup>5</sup> to wish for as many and great things as the immortal Gods bestowed<sup>6</sup> on Cn. Pompey.
10. The better a man is, with the greater difficulty does he believe that others are wicked.
11. The exploits of Hercules were as many and as great as were ever heard of.
12. Caesar had not as great an army as Pompey.
13. The Athenians were not the men to be terrified by a tyrant's threats.
14. I do not so often receive your letters as I could wish.
15. And to the very men in whose presence<sup>7</sup> he was pleading (*ęgo*), he seemed to be such as he himself wished to be.

<sup>1</sup> Begin with the Relative clause: *qua nocte natus est.*

<sup>2</sup> *To be burnt down, dīfligāre.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ipse, u, um.*

<sup>4</sup> When such denotes magnitude, use *tantus.*

<sup>5</sup> *In silence, tūcitus, u, um; adjectives*

*being often used in Latin where the English idiom requires an adverb or*

*adverbial phrase. St. L. Gr. 343.*

<sup>6</sup> *Dēferō, 3, irr.: with ad and acc.*

<sup>7</sup> *Apud with acc.*

## XLIV.—INDEFINITIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 383. *A*lquis is more emphatic than *quis*. Hence *a quis* stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum*, *si*, *visi*, *ne* and *num* : as,

*Illi p̄m̄issis stundum non est, quae coetus quis m̄cū p̄m̄is̄rit.*  
*One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

*Divitiācū Caesarem obsecuravit, ne quid gravius in frātrem statueret.*  
*Divitiae besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quipiam* is used like *alquis*, but with less emphasis : as,

*Forstān alquis aliquando ejusmodi quidpiam fecerit.*  
*Perhaps some one may have at some time done something of the like.*—Cic.

§ 385. *Quidam*, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable : as,

*Quidam ex advōcatis intelligere se dixit, non id agi, ut vērum invēnitur.*  
*One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

*Habunt hic quidam iūdiciacae.*  
*There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, *any one whatever*, are used in negative propositions and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sive* : as,

*Justitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam h̄abet.*  
*Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

*Sine sc̄iis nēmo quidquam tāle cōnatur.*  
*No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

*Sine virtute nēque amicitium neque ullam rem exp̄tendā cōsequi possimus.*  
*Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

*Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēo affirro possit?*  
*What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

§ 388. *Quisque* denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suis* : as,

*Sibi quisque maximē cōsultit.*  
*Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

*Sue quenque fortunē maximē p̄oēnit̄.*  
*Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic : as,

*Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac se exerceat.*  
*Let each practise himself the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another*; *alter*, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things): as,

*Prōfērābant alii purpūram, tūs alii, gemmas alii, They brought forward some purple, others incuse, others precious stones.—Cic.*

*Alter exerēxit perdidit, alter vendidit, The one has lost an arm, the other sold one.—Cic.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Edīco*, xi, etum, 3, *to declare; issue an edict* as a magistrate. *Effāti*, stus, 1, properly *to speak out*, is used generally in a religious sense, as of *uttering prayers*.—

*Tribūni plēbis dīxerunt, The tribunes of the commons issued a decree.—Cic.*  
*Ad tempūm effādūm, To consecrate the temple.—Cic.*

2. *Commūnico*, āvi, ātum, 1 (*commūnis*); and *Participo*, āvi, ātum, 1 (*pers. cāpiō*); *to give a share of*. *Impertio*, Ivi, Itum, 4 (*in partī*); and *Tribuo*, ui, Itum, 3; *signify to impart, give, irrespective of any portion to be retained by the donor: the former as an act of grace and freewill; the latter as an act of justice. Impertio has a variety of constructions:*

*Prōvinciam cum Antōnio commūnīcāvi, I shared the province with Antony.—Cic.*

*Laudes cum alii quo partēcipare, To share the praise with any one.—Liv.*

*Fortūnas alii impertiri, To make others partakers of your fortune.—Cic.*

*Alquem mālis impertiri, To make a man share in your calamities.—Cic.*

*Hōmīnibus indigēntibus de rē familiāri impertiri, To impart to needy men (some of) your estate.—Ter.*

3. *Rēte*, is, n., a general expression for *a fishing or hunting net*. *Plāga*, ac, f. (prob. from *nkewō*), *a hunting net only; especially for large game*:—

*Aut trādit acres apros in obstante plāgas, aut lāmite lēvi rābra tendit rēta, Either he drives the fierce boars into the opposing toils, or on a smooth rod stretches fine-spun nets.—Hor.*

*Funda*, ac, f., *a casting-net for fish.* *Ēverriētūlum*, i. n., *a drag-net.*

1. *Pālam* (from *pādo*: opposed to *clām*), *openly, not shunning observation. Prā-pālam* (strengthened from *pālam*), *openly, even countng observation. Apertē* (opposed to *occultē*), *without concealment. Mānifestē* (*mānus, fero*), *palpably, in a self-evident manner*:

*Non ex insidiis sed aperte ac pālam, Not by stratagem, but openly in the light of day.—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Eng. <i>A man to communicate with.</i>                    | Lat. <i>Homo quocum (or quiem) quis<br/>communicet.</i> |
| " <i>According to one's fortune</i> (lit.<br>assessment). | " <i>Ex censu.</i>                                      |
| " <i>To hold a levy.</i>                                  | <i>Dēlectum hādere.</i>                                 |

## EXERCISE XLIV.

1. He published-a-decree that (*ut* with *subj.*) what each man had from the shrines (*sacris*) he should bring back before a certain day. 2. Themistocles demanded that the people should give him some one to communicate with: Aristides was given (him). 3. Dionysius handed<sup>2</sup> (his) sword to a young man whom he loved. Thereupon (*hic*) on<sup>3</sup> a certain friend jocosely saying,<sup>4</sup> “To this man you at least (*certe*) entrust your life,” and the young man laughing<sup>5</sup> at it, he ordered both to be slain: the one<sup>6</sup> because he had pointed out a way of killing him; the other<sup>7</sup> because by (his) laughter he had approved of the saying. 4. To some creatures is given<sup>8</sup> a kind of ingenuity (*quædam sollertia*), as in (the case of) spiders: some weave, as it were, a net, so that if anything becomes entangled<sup>9</sup> (in it) they may destroy it; others again<sup>10</sup> keep watch when not looked for,<sup>11</sup> and if anything falls in (their way), they seize it and consume it. 5. For both in daily discourse, and openly in the Senate, he so pleaded your case that no one could have pleaded it with greater eloquence, weight, zeal, or<sup>12</sup> earnestness (*contentio*). 6. None of these statuæ,<sup>13</sup> I say (*inquam*), has he left behind, nor yet any other, save one (that was) very old, (and) made-of-wood. 7. Since there was neither a sufficient-number of men,<sup>14</sup> nor any money at that time in the treasury from which<sup>15</sup> they might receive their pay, the consuls issued-a-decree that, as before, private persons, according to (ex) their assessment, should give rowers with pay for thirty days (*gen.*). 8. The gods having been propitiated in due form,<sup>16</sup> the consuls held (*imperf.*) a levy more severely and rigidly than in former years anyone remembered (it) to have been held. 9. Alexander remained at Babylon longer<sup>17</sup> than anywhere else, and no place<sup>18</sup> was more injurious<sup>19</sup> to military discipline. 10. The more versatile and subtle a man is, the more hated and suspected he is when<sup>20</sup> the (general) opinion of his uprightness is withdrawn.<sup>21</sup> 11. The Sicilians, as soon as they saw diseases propagated (*pres. inf.*) from the unhealthiness (*abl.*) of the place, made off (*litterabor*), all (of them), to their neighbouring cities. 12. The gods neglect very-trifling things; nor if blight or hail has injured (*induc*) in any way,<sup>22</sup> ought Jupiter to have directed his attention to it.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive: see St. L. Gr. 475.<sup>2</sup> Tridū, dīdi, dītum, 3.<sup>3</sup> On . . . saying, &c., quum . . . jū-  
cans dixisset.<sup>4</sup> The one . . . the other, alt̄rum . . .  
alt̄rum.<sup>5</sup> Perf. tense.<sup>6</sup> To become entangled, Inharesco,  
haesi, perf. subj.<sup>7</sup> Aliae autem.<sup>8</sup> When not looked for, ex Indipinato.<sup>9</sup> Nec, before each ablative.<sup>10</sup> Statuæ, signa, orum.<sup>11</sup> Sætis lōmīnum, St. L. Gr. 271.<sup>12</sup> Unde,                                    13 Rite.<sup>14</sup> Diūtius, Longius is rarely used of  
time.<sup>15</sup> And no place, nec ullus lōcus.<sup>16</sup> To be injurious, nōceo, ul, Itum, 2  
(with dat.).<sup>17</sup> Abl. absol.<sup>18</sup> If in any way, si . . . quidpium  
see St. L. Gr. 253.<sup>19</sup> Id Jōvi īñfāndvertendum fuit.

## XLV.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

*Dextrā laevāque duo māria claudunt nos;*, *On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

*Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur;*, *Pleasure viuis upon our senses.*

Cic.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative, for the sake of greater vividness, when it is called the *Historical Present*: as,

*Dum haec in his lōeis gōruntur,*, *Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit.* While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.—Caes.

*Obs.* Jam dādūm, jam pridem, with the Present give to it the force of a Perfect: as, *Jam pridem cōfīo, I have long desired.*

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

*Annis subtēmēn nēbat:* practēra una ancillā ērat; ea tezēbat, An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl herself, was weaving.—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what was wont to be done: as,

*Archytas nullam cāpitiālōrem pestem quam vōluptatēm corporis dicibat ī nātūra dātam,* Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.—Cic.

*Ut Rōmae cōsules, sic Carthagine quōdāniū annui bini rēgēs ereābantur,* As at Rome two cōsuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.—Nep.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the verb *sum* is sometimes used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or Aorist: as,

*Hōmo ērat Siculus,* The man was a Sicilian.—Cic.

*Classis cōmūnīs Græcīae, in quā dīcentia ērant Athēniensium,* The combined fleet of Greece, in which 200 ships, belonged to the Athenians.—Nep.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

*Cras ingēnū iterābimus acqōr,* To-morrow we shall again traverse the boundless ocean.—Hor.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense.*—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *fēci*

is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nēmo pārum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est mūnere. No one has lived Pres.-Perf., too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past.-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, *after that*; *ut primum, simul atque (ac)*, *as soon as*; *ut, ubi, when*; *where* in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as,

Pelopidas non dūtūvit, simul ac cōcepit hostem, cōfligōre, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.—Nep.

Ubi de Caesāri adventu Helvētii certiores facti sunt, lēgātos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.

Ut Hostius cīvīlē, contestim Rōmāne inclinātur aēcis, As soon as Hostius fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, Hannibal anno tertio postquam dōno profūgārat, in Africam vēnit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.—Nep.

*Obs.* 2. But *quām, when*, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense*.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

Prōgenēm Trōjano a sanguīne dūci audīerat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.—Virg.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense*.—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have taken place* by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmān quām vēnērō, quāc perspexērō scribām ad te, When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.—Cic.

Dūm tu hāce lēges, ego illūm fortasse convēnērō, While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.—Cic.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum ērīmus in terris, ērit ecclēsti vitæ simile, This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.—Cic.

Nūtrām si sīquimur dīcim, nūnquam aberrābīmus, If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.—Cic.

De Carthāgīne vērēri non ante dēshām, quām illūm excīsum esse cognōvērō, I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.—Cic.

1. Cīrō  
Egeo  
Vō  
yet na  
2. Errō  
roam  
stragg  
Err  
Unc  
sancti  
and a  
away  
Tao.

3. Sōdit  
derly,  
a, um  
Sēdī  
Tām  
4. Mūnī  
Mūnī  
Mūn  
Tēn

Eng. We  
,, Not  
,, Not  
,, To t  
,, Let  
,, Beyo  
,, To c

1. We  
children,  
not a wh  
Senate at  
Herdona  
Aegean S  
4. Caesar  
enduring  
before, s  
Senate w  
thousand  
(hoc agan  
PK, L-

## SYNONYMS.

1. **Cárcere, ci, Itum, 2, to be without a thing—not to possess it:** opposed to Hábere.  
**Egeo and Indígeo, ni, 2, to be in want of a thing:**  
 Vöuptate virtus saepe cäret, nunquam indiget, *Virtus often lacks pleasure, yet never needs it.*—Sen.

2. **Erro, avi, Étum, 1, to go astray, as from ignorance.** Vágor, átus sum, 1, to roam at will, have no direct path or fixed habitation. Pálor, átus sum, 1, to straggle about confusedly:—  
 Erranti viam monstrare, To point out the road to one who has lost it.—Cic.  
 Undique pöpilatio et caedes: ipsi in médio vágì: abjectis armis magna pars sancti aut palantes in montem Vocetum perlungére, On every side is devastation and slaughter: they themselves roaming about the midst: not a few, casting away their arms, betook themselves wounded, or straggling, to Mount Vocetus.—Tac.

3. **Séditiosus, a, um (séditio), seditious.** Turbulentus, a, um (turba) disorderly, turbulent. Tumultuósus, a, um, tumultuous, alarming. Tumultuarius, a, um, irregular; and so hurried:—  
 Séditiosus et turbulentus civis, A seditious and disorderly citizen.—Cic.  
 Tumultuaria pugna, An irregular engagement.—Liv.

4. **Múnitio, ónis, f., the act of fortifying or of making roads; a fortification.** Múnimentum, i, n., a rampart or fortification:—  
 Múnitio viarum, The paving of roads.—Cic.  
 Ténere se múnimentis, To keep oneself within the fortifications.—Tac.

## PHRASES.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Eng. We rest our hopes upon.           | Lav. We place our hope in (Spem pónimus or spem póstulam hábemus in, with abl.). |
| " Not much (not at all) alarmed.       | " Nihil admodum territus.  |
| " Not in the very least alarmed.       | " Nō tantillum quidem commotus.  |
| " To the senate at Rome.               | " To Rome, to the Senate<br>(Róman ad Sénatum).                                  |
| " Let us attend to the matter in hand. | " Hoc dğamus.  |
| " Beyond what is credible.             | " Ultrà vel supra fidem; also, supra quum, cuicunq; crèdibile (est).             |
| " To come off conqueror.               | " Superior discéderé.  |

## EXERCISE XLV.

1. We are wandering about needy, along with our wives and children; we rest our hopes on the life of one man. 2. Marcellus, not a whit alarmed by so great a slaughter, sends a letter to the Senate at Rome (*acc.*), concerning the general and the army lost at Herdonea. 3. When an island was rising (*subj.*) from (*ex*) the Aegean Sea, the sea foamed and smoke arose (*féror*) from the deep. 4. Caesar was most skillful in arms and horsemanship,<sup>1</sup> capable-of-enduring toil (*gen.*) beyond (one's) belief: on march, he used-to-go-before,<sup>2</sup> sometimes<sup>3</sup> on horseback, oftener on foot. 5. When the Senate was alarmed (*subj.*) by the groans (*sing.*) of so many thousand dying men, "Let us give attention to the matter in hand (*hoc agamus*)," says Sulla; "a handful of (*pauçūlū*) seditious persons

<sup>1</sup>R. L.—IV.

are being slain by my orders.”<sup>4</sup> 6. Hannibal, as often as he engaged<sup>5</sup> with the Romans in Italy, always came off conqueror. 7. While these things were-going-on<sup>6</sup> in Africa and Spain, Hannibal wasted the summer in the Tarentine territory, in the hope of gaining<sup>7</sup> the city of the Tarentines by treachery. 8. Sempronius the consul, in Lucania,<sup>8</sup> fought (*fācīt*) many insignificant (*parva*) battles, (but) not one worthy of record,<sup>9</sup> and took (*pres.*) several obscure<sup>10</sup> towns of the Lucani. 9. At first, secret indignation (*plur.*) on-the-part-of-the-better-class<sup>11</sup> made itself heard<sup>12</sup>; afterwards the matter extended<sup>13</sup> to the senate (*patres*) also, and (became a) general complaint (*acc.*). 10. If anything shall bring me (*fut. perf.*) in-your-direction,<sup>14</sup> I will strive, if I am in any way able (*fut.*), that (*ut*) no one but yourself shall be aware of (*sentiat*) my grief. 11. If pain is the greatest evil, who will not be miserable when he is oppressed (*fut.*) by pain, or even when he knows that this may<sup>15</sup> happen to him? 12. The consuls, neither by a decree of the Senate, nor by letter, had instructed<sup>16</sup> me what to do (*subj.*). 13. After the Carthaginian (*Pānītūs*) armies arrived, they very easily led up a-body-of-troops<sup>17</sup> on to the hill; but the novel aspect of the fortification at first checked them as though by a sort of miracle.<sup>18</sup> 14. After the light was more distinct (*cētior*), and the Romans who had survived the slaughter (*dat. plur.*) had fled into the citadel, Hannibal orders the Tarentines to be called together without their arms.

<sup>1</sup> Say, of riding (Equito).

<sup>2</sup> Past-imperf. of *anteo*, 4, irr.

<sup>3</sup> Sometimes . . . often, nonnunquam

. assepius.

<sup>4</sup> Jusue meo.

<sup>5</sup> Congēdior, congressus sum, 3.

<sup>6</sup> Gēruntur: dum, whilst, being usually construed with the present. St. L. Gr. 893, Obs. 2.

<sup>7</sup> Use gerund. part. (pōtior).

<sup>8</sup> Say, among the Lucanians, in Lūcānia. St. L. Gr. 606.

<sup>9</sup> Mēmbrātū dignum.

<sup>10</sup> Ignōbilis.

<sup>11</sup> Say, of the good (citizens).

<sup>12</sup> Say, was being heard, imperf. pss.

of exaudio.

<sup>13</sup> Excēdo, sei, ssum, 3.

<sup>14</sup> In your direction, isto.

<sup>15</sup> Use possum.

<sup>16</sup> Praecepio, sēpī, ceptum, 3.

<sup>17</sup> Agmen, Ynis, n. To lead up, ērlgo, exi, ctum, 3.

<sup>18</sup> Is velut mīrabilis quōdam tēnuit.

## XLVI.—THE INDICATIVE MOOD—continued.

### 1. SINGLE DIRECT QUESTION.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātilina, abūtere pitientiā nostrā, How far, I pray thee, Cātiline, will thou abuse our forbearance?—Cic.

Ut vēlē? ut mēmbrātū nostrī? How does he? how does he think of me?—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? What o'clock is it?—Hor.

Thrāx et Gallina Syro par? Is the Thracian Gallina a match, or Syrus?—Hor.

e engaged<sup>b</sup>  
7. While  
bal wasted  
ining<sup>c</sup> the  
consul, in  
tles, (but)  
<sup>10</sup> towns of  
part-of-the-  
extended<sup>d</sup>  
aint (acc.).  
on,<sup>e</sup> I will  
at yourself  
eatest evil,  
by pain, or  
12. The  
etter, had  
arthaginian  
of-troops<sup>f</sup>  
on at first  
After the  
d survived  
ibal orders

ns).  
imperf. pass.  
a, 3.  
nd up, ērīgo,  
tenuit.

rrogative  
as,  
far, I pray  
he think of  
s match, or

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—nē (enclitic), num; utrum and an. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē.*—The Particle nē is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

Turquinius rex interrogāvit: Estisne vos lēgati ḫrātōresque missi a pōpūlo Collatīno? Sūmis—King Turquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.—Liv.

Dātūre illa hōdīc Pamphilū nuptum, Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?—Ter.

*Obs.* Nē is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with non, as *nonne* (see next scct.).

§ 411. *Nonne.*—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so?* *Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

Cānis nonne sīmīlis lūpo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne ēmōri per virtūtem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die* *outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num.*—The Particle num indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

Num nēgare audes, *Do you dare deny it?*—Cic.

Num facti Pamphilū piget, *Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—Ter.

Num Viscellīum amici regnum appētentem débuērunt adjūvāre,  
Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming  
at regal power?—Cic.

## 2. DOUBLE DIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are utrum, an, -nē. Utrum is used only in the first alternative, and an only in the second; while -nē is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?*—  
Cic.

Iste est quem quaero apon, *Is that the man I am seeking, or not?*—  
Ter.

Bunt haec tua verba necue, *Are these your words or not?*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. *Neone* and *anon*, "or no," are written as single words.

*Obs.* 2. *No* is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative is stated in the form "or *no*," necne.

*Obs.* 3. The first particle (*utrum*) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. *An* is sometimes *apparently* used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

*Quid ait?* *An* *Pamphilus* *vénit?* *What say you?* *Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter.

*Quid dicas?* *An bell' fíglitivórum Siciliam virtute tuá libératam?* *What say you?* *Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?*—Cic.

*Obs.* In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

| First Alternative | Second, Third, etc.   |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>utrum</i> ,    | <i>an</i> , <i>an</i> |
| <i>-nē</i> ,      | <i>an</i> , <i>an</i> |
| (omitted)         | <i>an</i> , <i>an</i> |
| (omitted)         | <i>-nē</i>            |

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Nimis** and **Nimium**, both signify *too much, excessively*. The latter is sometimes used as a substantive:—

*Nimium* *not nimis bóni*, *Too much good.*—Cic.

*Magna nimis liberta*, *A too great liberty.*—Cic.

*Nē quid nimis*, *Nothing in excess.*

2. **Amens**, *ntis* (*a*, *mens*), *without reason, distracted*. **Dēmens**, *ntis* (*de*, *mens*), *mad, infatuated*. **Inánnus**, *a, um*, *not in one's senses, mad*. **Vésanus**, *a, um*, (chiefly poet.), *insane, furious, raging*. **Excoris**, *rdis*, *of weak mind, foolish, infatuated*. **Vécoris**, *rdis*, *maddened* (like *vésanus*).

3. **Acerbis**, *a, um*, *biting, sour* (Gr. *bē̄s*), is opposed to *mitis*. **Amārus**, *a, um*, *bitter, nauseous* (Gr. *τυρπός*), is opposed to  *dulcis*.

4. **Mansuētūdo**, *nts*, *f.* (*māniū suētūs*), *tameless* (of animals). *gentleness, mildness*. **Clementia**, *ae*, *f.*, opposed to *crudelitas*, *the humanity of a ruler or the mercy of a judge who does not inflict on the malefactor all that he deserves*.

#### PHRASES.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Eng. <i>Hard to tell.</i>                  | Lat. <i>Hard to be told</i> ( <i>dificile diriri</i> ).               |
| " <i>Within our recollection.</i>          | " <i>Mémoriā nostrā.</i>  |
| " <i>To inflict punishment on any one.</i> | " <i>Poenam</i> ( <i>supplícium</i> ) <i>de</i> <i>alique sámere.</i> |

#### EXERCISE XI.VI.

1. *For why do I speak of (de) Gabinius, Statilius, Coeparius?*
2. *Within our own recollection, when the victorious Sulla slew*

Dam  
3. I  
Yet  
vict  
great  
tear  
Has  
sick  
one)  
geth  
Did  
into  
so si  
(at le  
cum  
about  
we t  
suppo  
selver  
had l  
—did  
whet  
most  
should  
even i  
the cr  
vanqu

1. Of  
2. Qu  
3. Ac  
4. Fo  
jóra.  
5. Ab  
6. Mi  
7. Say  
8. See  
9. Qui

§ 42  
a fact  
mind.

Her  
(A).  
(B).

Damasippus, and others of this class,<sup>1</sup> who did not praise the deed? 3. Is it then a more severe (thing) to be beaten than to be slain? Yet what<sup>2</sup> (can be) unmerciful<sup>3</sup> or too severe towards (*in*) men convicted of so great a crime? 4. For why do I dissemble, or for what greater fate<sup>4</sup> do I reserve myself? Has he groaned because of my tears?<sup>5</sup> (No.) Has he turned (*in-to*) his eyes (towards me)? Has he, overcome, shed (*dō*) tears, or compassionated<sup>6</sup> the lovesick-one?<sup>7</sup> (No.) 5. But who is that man so infatuated? (Is he one) of (*de*) your friends? or (Is he) of that number who were together with you? 6. What also (did) the famous<sup>8</sup> Mithridates? Did he not send an ambassador to the same Cn. Pompey, as far as into Spain? 7. What state was ever before so feeble, what island so small, as<sup>9</sup> not to defend its own harbours, lands, and some portion (at least) of its territory and the sea coast? 8. But is not that (circumstance) so manifest (*praevens*) as to seem to have been brought about by the will (*nūtus*) of Jupiter most-good, most-great? 9. Do we then,<sup>10</sup> all of us, seem to be of a soul so mean (*parvus*) as to suppose<sup>11</sup> that all things are destined-to-perish<sup>12</sup> together with ourselves? 10. If any father of a family,<sup>13</sup> I ask, after his children had been slain<sup>14</sup> by a slave—his wife murdered—his house burnt—did not inflict the most severe punishment upon his slaves, whether would he (*is*) seem to be lenient and compassionate, or most inhuman and cruel? 11. If, as I have said, your country should thus speak to you, ought she not (*sulj.*) to gain-her-request,<sup>15</sup> even if she were unable to use force? 12. It is hard to say whether the enemy (*pl.*), when fighting, rather feared his valour, or where vanquished, loved his clemency (*mansiētudo*).

<sup>1</sup> Of this class, hujusmōdi.

<sup>2</sup> Quid autem.

<sup>3</sup> Acerbus.

<sup>4</sup> For what greater fate, ad quae mā-

jōra.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. of cause, fīctū meo.

<sup>6</sup> Miséror, fīctus, 1, dep.

<sup>7</sup> Say, the loving (one).

<sup>8</sup> See Phrases.

<sup>9</sup> Qui with subj.

<sup>10</sup> Use an.

<sup>11</sup> Ut with subj.

<sup>12</sup> Future inf. (p̄ereo).

<sup>13</sup> Father of a family, p̄terfamilias; as being an old termination of the gen. in 1 decl.

<sup>14</sup> Use abl. absol. in this and the two following clauses.

<sup>15</sup> To gain one's request, imp̄etru, āvi, atum, 1.

#### XLVII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a fact like the Indicative, but merely as a *conception* of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). An hypothesis.

(B). Doubt or uncertainty (including *indirect* questions).

(O). A wish.  
 (D). Purpose or result.  
 (E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*oratio obliqua*).  
 (A). *Si ita esset, ignoscarem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.  
 (B). *Cur dubitas quid de républica sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.  
*Non dubitabat quin Trója brévi péritura sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.*—Cic.  
 (C). *Valeas et mémoriis nostri, May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.  
 (D). *Légibus servimus ut libéri esse possimus, We submit to the laws that (Purpose) we may be able to be free.*—Cic.  
*Aecidit ut únā nocte omnes Herniae déjocrentur, It happened that (Result) in one night all the Herniae were demolished.*—Nep.  
 (E). *Dócent quanto in discrimine sit Nólana res, They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

**§ 422.** The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

- (1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425); or,
- (2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*sujungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

*Obs.* The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood.

**§ 423. Sequence of Tenses.**—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

#### Present and Future Tense.

|          |   |   |
|----------|---|---|
| PRESENT. | Scio quid agas,<br>Scio quid égeris,<br>Scio quid acturus sis,          | I know what you are doing.<br>I know what you have done.<br>I know what you are going to do.                      |
|          | Cognōvi quid agas,<br>Cognōvi quid égeris,<br>Cognōvi quid acturus sis, | I have learnt what you are doing.<br>I have learnt what you have done.<br>I have learnt what you are going to do. |
| FUTURE.  | Audiam quid agas,<br>Audiam quid égeris,<br>Audiam quid acturus sis.    | I shall hear what you are doing.<br>I shall hear what you have done.<br>I shall hear what you are going to do.    |
|          |   |   |

Past  
Independent. Imperf.

\* B  
when  
cul sta

Ac  
poratō  
such as  
general

ob

§ 42  
the P  
suppo  
clusio

N.E

(1).  
membe  
assume  
in the

Si es  
etc., If  
also the  
Si to

(2).  
sentenc  
or may  
the Sul

Si ne  
Tu s  
think dif

## Past Time.

|                            |                                |   |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| PAST<br>IMPERFECT. IMPERF. | Sciēbam quid ēḡres,           | I knew what you were doing.             |
|                            | Sciēbam quid ēḡsesse,         | I knew what you had done.               |
|                            | Sciēbam quid actūrus essem,    | I knew what you were going to do.       |
| PAST<br>IMPERFECT. IMPERF. | Coguōvi quid ēḡres,*          | I learnt what you were doing.           |
|                            | Coguōvi quid ēḡsesse,         | I learnt what you had done.             |
|                            | Coguōvi quid actūrus essem,    | I learnt what you were going to do.     |
| PAST<br>IMPERFECT. IMPERF. | Cognōvēram quid ēḡres,        | I had learnt what you were doing.       |
|                            | Cognōvēram quid ēḡsesse,      | I had learnt what you had done.         |
|                            | Cognōvēram quid actūrus essem, | I had learnt what you were going to do. |

\* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement : as,

Aemilius Paullus tantum in aerarium p̄cūniae invexit, ut unius imperiāris preda finem attulerit tributorum, Aemilius Paullus brought such an immense sum of money to the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the tax.—Cic.

Obs. The *Historical Pr.* at (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive : as,

Helvētiī lēgāto ad Cæsārem mittunt, qui dicērent, The Helvētiī sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.—Cæs.

## 1. HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Prōdōsis* and the *Apōdōsis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

N.B. For the sake of convenience, Hypothetical sentences with the *Indicative* are placed here.

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.*—If both members of the sentence deal with facts, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,

*Si est bōni consulis ferre opem patriae, est etiam bōnorūm cīvium, etc., If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.—Cic.*

*Si tōnuit, etiam fulsīt, If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or *may* or *might* have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

*Si nēgēm, mentior, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.—Olo.  
Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.—Ter.*

*Necassem jam te verbōribus, nisi irātus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.—Cic.*

§ 426. The Present and Perfect Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen or have happened*: as,

*Me dīes, vox, lātēra, defīciant, si hoc nūne vōclifūrī vēlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.—Cic.*

*Si sc̄lēris (Perfect) asp̄dēm occulēt lātēre uspiam,..... imprōbe fēcēris, nisi mōnuēris altērum no assidēat, If you should have become aware that an asp̄ were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a Past Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The Past Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not actually taking place, whether now (Past-Imperfect), or in the Past (Past-Perfect)*: as,

*St̄pientia non exp̄lērētur si nūl effēcēret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.—Cic.*

*(Si) uno p̄aelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.—Liv.*

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

*Mālus civis Cn. Carbo fuit:—fūerit alīis; tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?—Cic.*

*Vērum, ut Ita sit, tamen non pōtēs hoo praedicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.—Cic*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Obēdīo, iūl, iūtum, 4 (ob, audio), to obey in any given case; not as a servant or subject, but as one enjoying a certain freedom. Pāreō, ui, iūtum, 2, to obey as a servant or subject. Dicto audientem esse, to obey orders as a soldier or official. All these expressions denote obedience as an obligation, and are followed by the dative. Obsequor, cūtus, 3; Obtempēro, svi, iūtum, 1; and Mōrlgērōr, iūtus, 1; denote a voluntary act. Obēquor, to obey readily, to comply with, humour. Obtempēro, to listen to reason or persuasion. Mōrlgērōr, to humour, gratify (also all with dative):—*

*Jūbae barbārō wōtūs obēdīens fuit quam nuntio Scipiōnis obtempēravit, He rather chose to obey the barbarian Juba than to listen to the messenger of Scipio.—Hirt.*

*Obsequar wōntūtā tuae, I will yield to your wishes.—Cic.*

*Sic mīhi semper obtempēravit tanquam filius patri, He always rendered me such obedience as a son renders to his father.—Cic.*

2. P

(n

B

W

ar

ra

co

ME

ten

hi

cor

Eng.

"

1.

(sub

your

your

his

foe,

spoil

restr

into

been

battle

vence

and

(say

7. If

you t

is-be

sough

Arma

10. "

ben

to his

the a

nishe

tages,

(and)

enjoy

' S

' A

' M

lood.

' Co

' D

2. **Praeda**, *ae, f.*, any sort of plunder or pillage in war. **Mänubiae**, *ärum, f.* (*mänus*), spoils taken from the foe, the honourable booty of the soldier. **Spoliūm**, *i. n.* (often used in plur.), arms taken from the person of an enemy. When a Roman general slew the general of the foe and despoiled him of his armour, the spoils thus acquired were called *spolia opima*. **Rápina**, *ae, f.* rapine; the dishonourable spoils of the robber who violates the peace of his country.—

Dubitamus quid late in hostium praeda mōltius sit, qui mānubias tantas ex Mētelli mānubia abī fecerit? Do we doubt what that fellow would have at tempted with the booty of the foe, who from the spoils of Metellus made for himself spoils so great?—Cic.

Ea rite spolia opima hābentur quae dux dūci dētraxit, Those are properly considered spolia opima which one general has stripped from another.—Liv.

## PIRASES.

Eng. To give the signal to retreat.  
" To postpone to another time.

Lat. Rēceptui dāre signum.  
" In aliud tempus dīferre.

## EXERCISE XLVII.

1. If you wish (*subj.*) to enjoin anything on an inferior, you will (*subj.*) the more easily have all men obedient to you if you have yourself first established that law<sup>1</sup> over (*in* with *acc.*) yourself and your own. 2. If he as<sup>2</sup> a young-man had not served-in-the-army,<sup>3</sup> his father being (then) commander, he might seem either to fear the foe, or the command of his father. 3. If soldiers (*sing.*) greedy of spoil, wore-to-enter an inhabited<sup>4</sup> place (*plur.*) they could not be restrained<sup>5</sup> from wandering-to-and-fr.<sup>6</sup> 4. If he had received them into the citadel, the Roman army, shut up within walls, might have been destroyed. 5. Almost more were slain in flight than in the battle, nor would any man<sup>7</sup> have survived had not night intervened. 6. Either a frightful<sup>8</sup> slaughter of the fugitives<sup>9</sup> or a rash and dangerous attack upon the pursuers<sup>10</sup> would have taken place (*say* been), had not Marius quickly given the signal to retreat. 7. If the opportunity for any thing (*gen.*) pass by, in vain will you then seek (*suly.*) it when lost (*part.*). 8. If a good reputation is-better-than (*praesto*, with *dat.*) riches, and money is so greatly<sup>11</sup> sought after,<sup>12</sup> how much more ought glory to be sought for? 9. Arms are of little (*value*) abroad unless there is counsel at home. 10. "If you are a god," said the ambassadors, "you ought to bestow benefits on mortals, not take their own away." 11. Socrates said to his slave, "I would beat you if I were not angry." He postponed the admonition of the slave to another time: at that time he admonished himself. 12. Let those things,<sup>13</sup> forsooth (*äne*), be advantages,<sup>14</sup> which are (so) regarded, (as) honours, riches, pleasures, (and) the rest; yet in partaking of<sup>15</sup> those very (things) an eager enjoyment<sup>16</sup> is disgraceful.

<sup>1</sup> Si id prius ipse Jūris st̄ituēris.

<sup>2</sup> As not expressed. St. L. Gr. 217.

<sup>3</sup> Mērōe, 2: stipendī being under-  
blood.

<sup>4</sup> Contineo, ui, ntum, 2.

<sup>5</sup> Discorūs, ae. <sup>6</sup> Quisquam.

<sup>7</sup> Foedus.

<sup>8</sup> Pres. part.

<sup>9</sup> Tantōpēre.

<sup>10</sup> Expēto, Ivi, Itum, 3.

<sup>11</sup> Ista. St. L. Gr. 369. <sup>12</sup> Bōna, örum

<sup>13</sup> Pōtor, 4. Use gerund. part.

<sup>14</sup> Enger enjōymēnt, gestiōn laetit.

**XLVIII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.****2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DOUBT OR UNCERTAINTY.**

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used after words denoting doubt or uncertainty: as,

*Quum incertus essem ubi esse, As I was uncertain where you were.—Cic.*

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is quoted as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Qualis sit animus ipso animus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.—Cic.*

(Here the Direct Question would be, *Quid est animus?* § 408.)  
*Diogenes disputare solebat, quanto regem Persarum vita fortunaque viceret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.—Cic.*

(Direct Question: *Quanto regem Persarum supero? How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

*Dii utrum sint, necone sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether there are gods or no?—Cic.*

(Direct Question: *Utrum dī sint, necone sunt?*,  
*Multae gentes nondum scīunt, cur luna deficit, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.—Cic.*

(Direct Question: *Cur luna deficit?*)

*Obs.* Thus, *quae tu scias scio, is I know what it is you know: but quae tu scis, scio, What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

*Quaero ... num, iliter ac nunc evēnient, evēnirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?—Cic.*

*Exsistit hoc lōe quodam quaestio subdifficilis, num quando amici nōvi vētēribus sint antēponendi, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?—Cic.*

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

Quaeritur, utrum ... an ... an.  
 -nē ... an ... an.  
 (omitted) ... -nē ... -nē.  
 num ... an ... an.

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *hādū scio*, *usco*, *dūbito*, *dūbiū est*, *incertum est*: as,

*Aristotēlem, excepto Platōne, hādū scio an recte dixīrū principiū*

philosophi in Itria, *With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic.

*Dubito an Vénusiam tenlam, et ibi expectem de légionibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.*—Cic.

*Contigit ibi quod haud scio an némIni, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an,* always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English “I don’t know whether.”

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating perplexity, where the Verb *dubito* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*) : as,

*Quid hoc homine faciat, What are ye to do with this man?*—Cic  
*Quid aliud faciret, What else was he to do?*—Cic.

*Quid énumérem artium multitudinem, Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Expédio, ibi, itum, 4 (ex pes), lit. to free the feet; to disengage, relieve of difficulty.* *Extrico, avi, itum, 1 (ex, tricac), to extricate or disengage, as an animal would free itself from the meshes of a net:*—

*Cris expeditus, Released from care.*—Hor.

*Cerva extorta densis plágis, A roe escaped from the close meshes of the net.*—Hor.

2. *Expérior, ertus, 4, to try, to learn something by experiment.* *Tento, ibi, itum, 1, to try by feeling; carefully to sound or test.* *Pérfolltor, atus, 1, to attempt or make trial of, facing the danger arising from the experiment:*—

*Expériri illiciūs perfidiam, To experience a man’s perfidy.*—Cic.

*Iter tentare via négata, To attempt to go by a forbidden route.*—Hor.

*Tentare vénas illiciūs, To feel a man’s pulse.*—Suet.

*Extrema périctari, To brave the greatest dangers.*—Cic.

*Extrema expériri, To try one’s last resource.*—Sall.

3. *Aemilus, i., m. (fem. aemilia: both being strictly adjectives), one who is behind his opponent, and is striving to be even with him.* *Certator, óris, m., one who vies with his opponent, being on the same footing with him.* *Rivalis, i., o. (strictly, one who lives by the same stream as another), a competitor in love.*

4. *Ira, ae, f., anger, as a passion.* *Iráculia, ae, f., habitual inclination to anger, passionateness:*—

*Ira quo distet ac iráculia apparet; quo èbrius ab èbrioso, et timere a timido, It is plain how anger differs from angry temper; as a drunker man from a soi, and a man in fear from a coward.*—Sen.

5. *Perfuga, ae, m.; transfuga, ae, m.; a deserter who goes over to the enemy.* *He is perfuga with regard to those to whom he flies; transfuga, with regard to those whom he abandons.* *Prófugus, i., m., a fugitive who from misfortune leaves his home.* *Fugítivus, i., m., a runaway, whether slave or otherwise:*—

*Perfuga ab eo vénit in castra Fabrili, A deserter came from him into the camp of Fabrilius.*—Cic.

*Próditores et transfugas arbóribus suspendunt, Traitors and deserters they hang upon trees.*—Tao.

*Itálam isto prónigus vénit, To Italy, bled by fate, he came.*—Virg.

*Fugítivi, scinörsei, barbári, Runawa, Savages, outlaws, barbarians.*—Cic.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *To apply oneself to any object.* Lat. *Incumbere in (ad) illud quam rem.*  
 " *To shave or conduct oneself.* " *Se gerbere.*

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Many (persons) doubt what is best, many what is advantageous for them, many what becomes (them), some even what is lawful. 2. I easily understood, Quirites, both what judgment<sup>1</sup> you would form of (*de*) me, and what you would prescribe<sup>2</sup> to others. 3. You see what the case is (*subj.*): now consider what must be done. 4. Wherefore see whether you ought to hesitate<sup>3</sup> with all zeal to apply yourselves to that war, in which the glory of your name, the safety of your allies, the fortunes of very many of your (fellow-) citizens, together-with the (interests of) the state, are defended (*subj.*) 5. Perhaps it will be asked how, since these things are so, the remainder of the war can be important (*magnus*). 6. Therefore, on-account-of this avarice of the commanders, who does not know what calamities our armies sustain (*gero*) wherever they come?<sup>4</sup> 7. I am delighted<sup>5</sup> to make trial whether the earth has brought forth (*edo*) other Carthaginians, or (whether) they are the same that fought at (*apud*) the Aegatian islands: and whether this Hannibal be the rival of Hercules or the slave of the Roman people. 8. In the mean time, however, he sent deserters and other suitable (persons) to investigate (*sup.*) where Jugurtha was, and what he was doing; whether he was with few (attendants), or had an army; how (*ut*) he conducted himself (now that he was) conquered. 9. But Marius, when he had wasted several days, deliberated whether he should abandon<sup>6</sup> the undertaking, since it was to-no-purpose,<sup>7</sup> or (whether he should) wait for (good) fortune. 10. I know not whether anger be a more (*magis*) detestable, or hideous vice. 11. Whether Pompey wishes to make-a-stand,<sup>8</sup> or to cross the sea, is unknown.<sup>9</sup> 12. This also is doubtful, whether the ambassadors sent to the Boii were violated, or whether the attack<sup>10</sup> was made on the triumvirs as-they-were-measuring (*part.*) the territory.

<sup>1</sup> To form a judgment of any one, *Judicare (illiquid) de . . .*

<sup>2</sup> Praescribo, *psl.*, *plut.*, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Dubitō in the sense of to hesitate is followed by inf.

<sup>4</sup> Quocunque ventum sit.

<sup>5</sup> Say, *it delights (me)*, *jtvat.*

<sup>6</sup> Omitto, *misi*, *missum*, 3.

<sup>7</sup> Frustra.

<sup>8</sup> Consisto, *stitti*, 3.

<sup>9</sup> Pass. of *nescio*.

<sup>10</sup> Impetus, *ds.*, *m.*

## XLIX.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

## 3. THE SUBJUNCTIVE EXPRESSING A WISH.

§ 413. *Subjunctive Optativus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 44  
regard

Inte-

Hor.

Vile-

they be

Espa-

Utr-

my aim

§ 44

used to

Dun-

Imit-

Obs.

§ 44  
followe

(1.)

Subjun

Opta-  
might be

(2.)

and the

Mälo

rather a

praise yo

Nolo

accuser b

1. Poena  
(supple-  
torture,  
racking

Suppl

Suppl

or cruelty.

Quod

by tortur

Morte

He think

temper.—

2. Imprölt  
Malus,  
tively, e

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

*In tream si vñeo stñre, May I be a dead man, if I can stand bñl!—Hor.*

*Valeant cives mei, sint beati, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!—Cic.*

Especially with *utinam*, *O that!* as,

*Utinam nñlo cõnata perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!—Cic.*

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express mutual encouragement: as,

*Dum vivimus vivamus, While we live let us live!*

*Imitetur nos tristis mñjorcs, Let us imitate our ancestors!—Cic.*

*Obs.* In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mñmñtrimus*: as,

*Mñmñtrimus, Let us remember!*

§ 447. Very often a Verb of wishing is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut*:

(1.) *Opto, I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive): as,

*Optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.—Cic.*

(2.) *Vñlo, Nñlo, and Malo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted: as,

*Malo te stïpiens hostis mñtuat, quam stulti cives luident, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.—Cic.*

*Nñlo accusatõr in iudicium pñtentiam affrat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.—Cic.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Poena**, *ne. f.*, general term for *penalty, punishment*. **Supplicium**, *i. n.* (*supplex*), usually, *severe or capital punishment*. **Cruciatus**, *ñs, m.* (*crux*), *torture, agony, as of a man on the cross*. **Tormentum**, *i. n.* (*torqueo*), *a racking torture, intended to extort confession*:—

*Supplicium est poena peccati, Punishment is the penalty for a crime.—Cic.*  
*Supplicium crudelissime sumbre, To inflict punishment with very great cruelty.—Cic.*

*Quod tormentis invñbre vis, fitemur, That which you have a mind to extort by torture, we confess.—Cic.*

*Mortem nñtrare poenam pñtat esse: Irñeundiae tormentum atque cruciatum, He thinks that death is the penalty due to nature; torture and agony to an angry temper.—Cic.*

2. **Imprõbus**, *a, um* (*in-prõbus*), *dishonest, wicked*: also fig. *cruel or excessive*. **Mñius**, *a, um*, *bad by nature*. **Prãvus**, *a, um*, *crooked, deformed*: figuratively, *erroneous; evil, depressed*.—

*Fortuna imprōba, Cruel Fortune.*—Virg.

*Lābor imprōbus, Indefatigable toil.*—Virg.

*Māla ambītio, Evil (or misguided) ambition.*—Sall.

*Prāvum ingrēnūm, A bad natural disposition.*—Sall.

3. *Cūpido, Inis, f.* (esp. poet.), *a desire or appetite for something.* (In Cic. the word is always the proper name *Cupid.*) *Cūpiditas, Itis, f., any desire or p[ro]p[ri]ety.* *Dēsiderium, i, n., longing or regret for a thing once possessed; a sense of loss:*—

*Cūpido atque ira pessimi sunt consultōres, Pasion and anger are the w[ise]rs.* *advisers.*—Sall.

*Frangēre cūpīditātes, To crush the desires (or passions).*—Cic.

*Dēsiderium tam cāri cūpītis, Regret for (the loss of) so beloved a one.*—Har.

4. *Rēceptus, da, m. (re, cūpīo), retreat of an army.* *Rēceptaculum, i, n., a receptacle, a place for receiving, a magazine:*—

*Rēceptui signum audire non possūmus, We cannot hear the signal for retr. at.* —Cic.

*Quisi rēceptaculum īnumi corpus, The body a receptacle, as it were, for the soul.*—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *To happen contrary to expectation.* Lat. *Praeter spem ēvēnire.*

" *To despise this in comparison with*      " *Hoc prae illo contemnere.*  
          *that.*

" *To cut off a man's retreat.*      " *Rēceptui dīquem interlūdūrū.*

#### EXERCISE XLIX.

- Often, Campanians, have you wished to (*ut*) have the power of inflicting punishment on a wicked and detested<sup>1</sup> Senate.
- Wherefore, Senators,<sup>2</sup> let the wicked withdraw; let them sever themselves from the good; let them gather-themselves-together into one place.
- Let them set-out, let them not suffer the unhappy Catiline to pine-away<sup>3</sup> with longing for them (*sui*): if they will<sup>4</sup> hasten, they will overtake (him) by evening.<sup>5</sup>
- Nothing has happened contrary to his (*ipsius*) wish, except that he has set out from Rome with us alive<sup>6</sup> (in it): let us wish that he may go into exile.
- Would that Varro himself would apply himself to the case; which he certainly will do, both of his own accord, and from your urging him.<sup>6</sup>
- The humanity, virtuo, and love<sup>7</sup> of Piso towards (*in*) us all are so great that nothing can surpass it. Would that this (*ea res*) might prove (be) a pleasure (*dat.*) to him! I see indeed that it will prove (*/ōrē*) a glory.
- Would that he (*ille*) had led forth with him all his forces!
- This army, composed<sup>8</sup> of men (*iis*) who preferred rather to desert their bail<sup>9</sup> than that army, I greatly despise in-comparison-with (*prae*) our Gallic legions.
- I could rather wish (that) he had led forth (*subj.*) as his soldiers these whom I see flit-about (*inf.*) in the Forum; whom (I see) even come into the Senate.
- If the immortal Gods have willed this to be the end of my consulship, to snatch<sup>10</sup> you, Senators, and the Romau people from (*ea*) massacre; whatever lot shall be appointed<sup>11</sup> for me, let it be borne.
- Let every man know his own disposi-

tion;  
and  
the 1  
Histri

<sup>1</sup> D

<sup>2</sup> P

signat

<sup>3</sup> T

<sup>4</sup> F

<sup>5</sup> A

<sup>6</sup> Al

<sup>7</sup> Sa

repat

§ 4  
junct  
nē, les  
Purp

§ 4  
used  
Result

Rō  
Roman  
Py  
himself  
Cic.

Ob

Tan  
Tarqui  
garded

Ten  
pāreant  
to right

Sae  
occurs t

Cic.

Si h  
sition is  
Thr

sybolum

tion; let him show <sup>12</sup> himself a keen judge of his own good (points) and vices. 12. Miltiades, the Athenian, wished to break down <sup>13</sup> the bridge, and cut off the king with his army from retreat: but Histiaeus of Miletus <sup>14</sup> opposed (it).

<sup>1</sup> Dētestibylia.

<sup>2</sup> Patres Conscripti (P.C.), the designation used in addressing the Senate.

<sup>3</sup> Tābesco, 3.

<sup>4</sup> Fut. of vēlo.

<sup>5</sup> Ad vesp̄am.

<sup>6</sup> Abl. absol. Both...and, quum...tum.

<sup>7</sup> Say, humanity, virtue, love, or else repeat the et: St. L. Gr. 565, Obs. 2.

<sup>8</sup> Collātus (foli. by ex).

<sup>9</sup> To desert one's bail, vādīmālūm-dēstrēre.

<sup>10</sup> Ut with subj.

<sup>11</sup> Prōpōno, pōsū, pōstūm, 3.

<sup>12</sup> Praebeo, ul, Itum, 2.

<sup>13</sup> Solvo, vi, Itum, 3.

<sup>14</sup> Of Miletus, Milesius, a, um.

#### I.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

##### 4. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ut* (*uti*), *quō*, *that, in order that*; *nō* (sometimes *ut nō*, *lest*), *in order that . . . not*; *qui*, *quōmīnus*, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either *Purpose* or *Result*: as,

###### (a.) Purpose.

Rōmāni ab īrātro abduxērunt Cincinnātūm, *ut* dīctātor esset, *The Romans fetched Cincinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.  
Pylades Orestem se esse dixit, *ut* pro eo nēcārētur, *Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

###### (b.) Result.

Tarquinīus sic Serviūm diligēbat, *ut* is ējus vulgo hābērētur filius. Tarquinīus was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.—Cic.

Tempērāntia sēdat appētitiōnes et efficit *ut* hao rectae ratiōni pārēant, *Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

Saepē fit *ut*, *il qui dēbant, non respondeant ad tempus*, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

Si haec nūntiātio vēra non est, *sēqūtur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrasybulō configit *ut* patriām liberāret, *It fell to the lot of Thrasybulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

**Obs.** The phrases, *sæquuntur*, *it follows*; *restat*, *it remains*; *necessere est*, *it is necessary*; *aequum, justum est*, *it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *nō* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour*, *ut* in a positive, *nō* in a negative sense: as,

*Civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis exirent, He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories. -- Caesar.*

To hortor ut hos libros de philosophia studiōse legas, I urge you to read attentively these books of mine on philosophy.—Cic.

*Prēcor nē me dēsēras, I beg you not to forsake me.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive never expresses a purpose.

*Obe.* 2. *Jíbeo, I order; věto, I forbid; cônor, I attempt; and, sometimes, nitor, I strive, take the Infinitive: as,*

*Jubet nos Pythius Apollo noscere nosmet ipsos, The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."—Cic.*

*Lex peregrinum rēstat in mūrum ascendēre, The law forbids a foreigner  
to go up upon the walls.—Cic.*

*Ter sunt cōnati impōnērs Pēlio Ossam, Thrice they essayed to pile Ossam  
on Pelion.—Virg.*

Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpere n̄it̄tur, Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta. Sall.

*Obs. 3.* *Imp*é*rō* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,  
*Ipsos abdūci imp*ér*abat*, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*

§ 453. Quō. — The Conjunction *quō*, *in order that*; *that* *thereby*, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*: as.

Corru<sup>p</sup>isse dicitur Cluentius jūdīcium p̄cūniā, quo īm̄mīcum suum iūnōcentem condemnāret, *Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.—Cic.*

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause; as

Légem br̄vem esse öportet, quo fæcilius ab imp̄tritis teneātur, A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered --Cic.

(Here  $\sin \theta = \text{ut co.}$ )

*Obs.* 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a result.

*Obs. 2. Concerning non quo, not that, see § 487. Obs. 1*

§ 454. *Nō* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*, *ut* being omitted; it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quo non*, *in order that . . . not*: *Iest*: as

Nōlo esso laudātor, nē vīdear ūdūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an ap-  
plauder, lest I should seem a flatterer* — Aunt ad Her.

Gallinae & ceterae rēlique pennis frōvent pullos, ne frigore laedantur,  
*Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that  
 they may not be hurt by the cold.—Cic.*

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

|                                       |            |             |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| nē quis                               | instead of | ut nēmo,    | <i>that no one.</i>          |
| nē ullus                              | " "        | ut nullus,  | <i>that none.</i>            |
| nē unquam                             | " "        | ut nunquam, | <i>that never.</i>           |
| nē usquam                             | " "        | ut nusquam, | <i>that nowhere.</i>         |
| nēcūbi ( <i>i.e.</i> ne aliquid)      |            | "           |                              |
| nēcunde ( <i>i.e.</i> ne aliquid),    |            | "           | <i>that from no quarter.</i> |
| nēquando ( <i>i.e.</i> ne aliquando), |            | "           | <i>that at no time.</i>      |

Caessarem complexus obsecrare coepit ne quid grāvius in frātrem  
*stātuēret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any  
 too severe decision against his brother.—Caes.*

Circumspetans nēcunde impētus in frumentatōres sīcēt, *Looking  
 carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any  
 quarter.—Liv.*

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms *ut non*,  
*ut nēmo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut vōluptas non sit summum bonum, *From this  
 it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.—Cic.*

Dēmosthēnes perficit mēditando, *ut nēmo plānius eo locūtus pūta-  
 rētur, By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to  
 have been a plainer speaker than he.—Cic.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. Cōnor, atus, *1, to endear, to try.* Mōlior, Itus, *4 (mōles), to move a thing  
 with an effort; to undertake a difficult work.* Nitor, nisus and nixus, *3, pro-  
 perly to lean upon, to be supported by; to make an effort, strive:*

Magnum op̄ua et arduum cōnari, *To attempt a great and difficult work.—Cic.*

Num montes mōlīri sub sēde pāramus? *Are we preparing to move mountains  
 from their seat?—Liv.*

2. Cibus, *i, m., any kind of food.* Esca, ac, *f., food artificially prepared;  
 especially, a bait.* Alimenta, orum, *n., victuals, nourishment.* Pēnus, oris,  
*n., and ūs, f., victuals in reference to a household; provisions:*

Animalia cibum dentibus cāpessunt, *(Some) animals take their food with their  
 teeth.—Cic.*

Quae prima trātum ventrem plācavērit esca, *(Say) what dish first appenced  
 the impatient stomach.—Hor.*

3. Libertas, atis, *f., (liber), freedom; of any kind whatsoever.* Licentia, ac,  
*f. (licet), in bad sense, absence of all restraint; licence:*

Inter libertatem ac licentiam incerta civitas, *A state trembling between liberty  
 and licentiousness.—Tac.*

Deteriores omnes sumus licentia, *all of us are the worse for absence of restraint.  
 Ter.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *He was informed.*

Lat. *He was made more sure,*

*Certior factus est.*

" *Their design was.*

" *Hic prōpositum fuit.*

" *Provision had been made against.*

" *Cautum erat ne (with subj.).*

" *To take a short review of what  
precedes.*

" *Pauca supra répétēre.*

" *He imposed this task on me.*

" *Hic mihi partes impoedit.*

" *As great as possible.*

" *Quam (quantus) maximus.*

## EXERCISE L.

1. He is dear to us on account of his merit (*plur.*): we will strive with all our might<sup>1</sup> that he may also (*idem*) be so to the Senate and the Roman people. 2. By (*per*) this right hand, by the fidelity (due to) my kingdom (*gen.*), I warn and beseech you to hold (*subj.*) those dear who are related to you by birth. 3. They issued a proclamation<sup>2</sup> that no one should sell bread or any (*quis*) other cooked food in the camp. 4. As soon as Jugurtha was informed of the incorruptibility<sup>3</sup> of Metellus, he then at length attempted to make a surrender. 5. A decree of the Senate had been passed (made) that the town should be guarded by a garrison, and (*que*) all the Tarentines confined within the walls. 6. No one of these was by day removed from his post,<sup>4</sup> in order that neither (their) arms nor (the men) themselves might be seen<sup>5</sup> from a distance. 7. So great a fear fell<sup>6</sup> upon the Romans that they fled in all directions (*passim*) to the sea and the ships. 8. C. Terentius Varro was sent as pro-practor into Etruria, in order that from that province C. Hortilius might go to the army at Tarentum (*acc.*).<sup>7</sup> 9. Their design<sup>8</sup> was to enjoy<sup>9</sup> freedom, the characteristic<sup>10</sup> of which is so to live as you please (*subj.* of *volo*). 10. Provision had been made against (*quoniam*) our having at home more coined<sup>11</sup> silver and brass. 11. I will take a short review of the past, that the whole (all things) may be more and more evident. 12. Statilius and Gabinius were going-to-set-fire-to<sup>12</sup> the city, that (*quo*), in the tumult (*abl.*), access might be made easier to the consul and the rest for whom the plots were in preparation.<sup>13</sup> 13. They strove (*imperf.*), some to defend the rights of the people, others (to secure) that the authority of the Senate might be as great as possible. 14. Caesar imposed on me this task, not to suffer (*subj.*) any one at all to depart from Italy. 15. By a decree of the Senate the mourning was ended in thirty days, that the sacred (rites), public or private, might not be neglected.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Summā ḥpe. <sup>2</sup> Editio, xi, etum, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Innočentia.

<sup>4</sup> Ab st̄tione móvēbatur.

<sup>5</sup> Conspicio, xxi, etum, 3, to see,  
meaning here to get sight of.

<sup>6</sup> Say, was cast into, injicio, jōcl,  
jēctum, 3, foll. by dat.

<sup>7</sup> See Ex. XLV. Phr.

<sup>8</sup> Say, the design of them was, His prō-

pōstūm fuit.

<sup>9</sup> Otor, with abl.

<sup>10</sup> Proprium, strictly a neut. adjective.

<sup>11</sup> Say, stamped, signatus.

<sup>12</sup> Incendo, di, sum, 3 (*fut. part.*)

<sup>13</sup> Say, were being prepared, prā-  
bantur.

<sup>14</sup> Dēsēro, ui, rūm, 3 : begin the sen-  
tence with Ne scrua, &c.

§ the  
not  
I  
thing  
was  
Euti  
F  
the r  
again  
C  
take  
c  
junc  
is us

(1)

object t

Viz

from f

Ha

Iomeni

Ob

(2)

doubt t

## LI.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—continued.

§ 460. After words signifying *fear* or *anxiety* *ne* expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; *ut*, that it *will not* occur: *as*,

*Tinēbam ne ēvēnīrent ea quae accēderunt, I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic.

*Tinor Rōmāe grandis fuit, ne itērum Galli Rōmām rēdīrent, There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr.

*Pater terruit gentes grāve ne rēdīret sēcūlum Pyrrhae, The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor.

*Omnis labōres to excōp̄re vīdeo; tīmeo ut sustineas, I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non*; especially in negative sentences: *as*,

*Tīmeo ne non impētum, I fear I shall not prevail.*—Cic.

*Non vērōr ne tua virtus opīniōni hōmīnum non respondat, I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic.

§ 461. *Quin, that not, so that not,* is used with the Subjunctive after negative, or virtually negative sentences only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering*: *as*, *Non prōhibeo, I do not prevent*; *Non rētineo, I do not restrain*; *Non rēpugno, I do not object*; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as *Non est dūbiūm, There is no doubt*; *Quis dūbitat, Who doubts?* *Fieri non potest, It cannot be*; *Nēgāri non pōtest, It cannot be denied*; and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens without something else happening.

*Obs.* Under negative sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *No*: also those containing such words as *vix, scarcely, plurūm, (too) little, &c.*

(1.) *Non possimūs, quin alii a nōbīs dissēntiant, rēcūsāre, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.*—Cic.

*Vix me contineo quin in illūm invōlem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.*—Ter.

*Haud multūm abfuit quin Ismēnias interficērētur, A little more and Ismēnias would have been killed.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The expressions *haud multūm abfuit, mīnūm abfuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dūbiūm quin Helvētii plurūm possent, There was no doubt that the Helvētii had the most influence.*—Cæs.

*Haud dubia res visa ..... quin circumducet agmen, There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.—* liv

*Obs.* In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus

*Quis ignōrat quin tria Graecōrum gēnē sint, Who knows not (i.e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks? — Cic.: where we might equally well have had, *Quis ignōrat tria . . . esse* (§ 507).*

(3.) *Équidem nunquam dōmum mīsi unam čistōlām, quin esset ad te aliter. In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.—Cic.*

*Nullus fero dies est quin Satrius meam dōnum ventit̄, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.—Cic.*

§ 462. **Quin** is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (*qui ne*) ; and expresses an animated appeal : as,

*Quin igitur expergiscimini? Why not then be up and doing?—Sall.  
Quin concendimus equos? Why not to horse at once?—Liv.*

*Obs.* Quin with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as,  
Quin tu hoc uudi. *Nay but do you hear me*.—Ter.

§ 463. *Quomodo*, *that not, so that not*, is similar to *qui*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify hindrance; as, *impeditio*, *I impede*; *prohibeo*, *I prevent*; *officio*, *I obstruct*, etc.; also after *per me stat*, *fit*, *it is owing to me* (that something does not take place); as:

Non recusabo quomodo omnes mea scripta legant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.—Cic.

*Caesar cognovit per Afraniūm stāre quōmīnus dīmīcārētur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.—Cæs.*

## SYNONYMS.

**Dölus**, *i. m.* (**δόλος**), *guile, treachery*; always in a bad sense. **Fraus**, *dis. f.*, *dishonesty*; especially in *acts*. **Fallacia**, *ae, f.*, *deceit*; especially *deceit in speaking*. **Astus**, *us, m.* (**ἀστροῦ**), *subtlety, craft*. **Calliditas**, *atis, f.*, *the wariness arising from experience; adroitness, cunning*. **Sollertia**, *ae, f.*, *ingenuity, cleverness*; in good sense:—  
 Versare dölus astu, *Cunningly to practise tricks*.—**Virg.**  
 Ne qua *fraus*, ne quis *dölus* adhibeatur, *That no dishonesty, no guile may be used*.—**Cic.**  
 Hic, ex fraude fallaciis, mendaciis, constire totus videtur, *This man seems to be wholly made up of trickery, deception, and falsehood*.—**Cic.**

**2. Necro**, *xui, xum, 3, to* *weave, weave*. **Nexo**, *avi, atum, 1*, *frequentative of neco*. **Nōdo**, *avi, atum, 1*, *to tie up in a knot*. **Ligo**, *avi, atum, 1*, *to bind so as to prevent things from falling asunder*. **Vincio** *xvi, netum, 4*, *to bind so as to deprive of freedom*:—  
*Nectere cibōnam, To weave a garland*.—**Illi.**  
*Nōdūti crines, Knotted hair*.  
*Vincere hōmīnum, To put a man in chains*.—**Liv.**

**3. Extēmplo** (perh. *ex*, *templum*), *in a moment, forthwith*. **E vestiglio**, *on the spot, straightway*, *in reference to place*. **Rēpente**, *suddenly, unexpectedly*. **Subito**, *suddenly, as not seen beforehand*.

1. **Portus**, *ds.*, *m.*, a harbour, port. **Statio**, *ōnis*, *f.*, a road or anchorage for ships to ride in :—  
*Statio mālēfida cārlīnis*, An anchorage treacherous to shipping.—Virg.  
*Plenissimus nāvium portus*, A harbour very full of ships.—Cic.

2. **Vendo**, *didi*, *dītum*, *3* (*vēnum*, *do*), to sell, dispose of by sale. **Vendito**, *āvi*, *ātum*, *1* (*frequent of vendō*), to offer for sale; to hawk about; to exhibit (as a pedlar his wares). **Mancipo**, *āvi*, *ātum*, *1* (*mānus*, *cāpio*; the thing being symbolically laid hold of by the hand), to alienate from oneself and legally transfer property.

3. **Aegrē**, with much ado: refers to the agent. **Vix**, hardly, scarcely: signifies that a thing was near not taking place.

## PHRASES.

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Eng. I fear that I shall.                              | Iat. Vēreor <i>nō</i> , with subj.   |
| " I fear that I shall not.                             | " Vēreor <i>ū</i> , with subj.       |
| " To take anything amiss, be offended at anything.     | " Aegre, grātiāter, moleste ferre.   |
| " It was owing to you (that something did not happen). | " Per te stētit quōmīnus, with culp. |
| " There is hardly a day.                               | " Dies fēre nullus est.              |

## EXERCISE LI.

1. Crispinus, fearing that some treachery (*dolus*) was being planned<sup>1</sup> by the Carthaginian, had sent messengers to<sup>2</sup> the neighbouring states. 2. I am afraid that we shall be cut off (*interclūdo*). 3. I fear that Caesar is going-to-give-up the-city to be plundered by his soldiers.<sup>3</sup> 4. I fear that Dolabella will not be of much<sup>4</sup> service to us. 5. On-the-side-of (*āpud*) the Romans there was a fear that the enemy would at once attack the camp. 6. I fear you will not support all the toils which I see you undertaking (*infīn.*). 7. If Pompey should remain, I fear that he cannot have an army sufficiently strong. 8. I do not doubt that you will zealously do everything (in your power) for the sake of Lamia himself. 9. Such is the conclusion that there is no one who does not wish to be anywhere rather than where he is. 10. Death does not deter the wise man from consulting (the interests of) the state and his own (*suis*). 11. The soldiers of Caesar were with difficulty restrained from bursting into the town, and they were offended (see Phrases) because they did not obtain possession of the town (*abl.*). 12. It was owing to Trebonius that they did not obtain possession of the city. 13. Nor does age prevent our retaining a fondness<sup>5</sup> for cultivating<sup>6</sup> land. 14. And will any one doubt that the war ought to be entrusted<sup>7</sup> to him who seems (*subj.*) to have been born to terminate<sup>8</sup> all the wars of our time<sup>9</sup>? 15. And will any one doubt what he will achieve (*fut. subj.* of *prōficio*) by valour, who has achieved (*perf. subj.*) so much by his influence? 16. I do not doubt that you will achieve great things.

<sup>1</sup> Say, wōven, neecto: *plot*, *conflūmum*.<sup>2</sup> Use circa, with acc.<sup>3</sup> Say, to (his) soldiers, to be plun- dered (*drīplo*).<sup>4</sup> Say, enough (*satis*): to be of ser- vice, prōsum, ful, prōdēsse (with dat.).<sup>5</sup> Use plur. of *stūdium*.<sup>6</sup> Use the gerundive in agreement with the substantive (*gen.*).<sup>7</sup> Permitto, misi, missum, *3.*<sup>8</sup> Use prep. ad with gerundive (con- ficio)<sup>9</sup> Say, of our memory.

## III.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Cæsar légatis respondit: diem se ad déliberandum sumptūrum (esse), *Cæsar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Cæs.

(Words of Cæsar reported in their original form: Diem ego ad déliberandum sumam, *I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

- (A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.
- (B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.
- (C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.
- (D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.
- (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit*, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis se obsides redditūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Cæs.

(Direct form: Obsides non reddam.)

Ariovistus ad Cæsarem légatos mittit, "velle se de his rēbus agere cum eo," *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying, that he wished to speak with him on these points).*—Cæs.

(Direct form: Volo de his rēbus tecum agere.)

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Cæsar légatos cum his mandatis mittit, .. haec esso quas ab eo postularet, *Cæsar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Cæs.

(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te postulo.)

*Apud Hypatium fluvium Aristoteles ait, bestiolae quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant. On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.—Cic.*

(Direct form : Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.)

Obs. But if a statement of the writer's be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative : as,

*Quis potest esse tam inversus a vero, qui neget haec omnia, quae videntur, deorum immortalium potest esse administrari, Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods ?—Cic.*

§ 468. (C.) Questions transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rrogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434) : as,

*Fure omnes tribuni plebis .. "quidnam id rei esset ?" All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) "What did that mean?"—Liv.*

(Direct question : Quidnam id rei est ?)

*Quid de praedā faciendum cōcērent, What did they think should be done about the spoil ?—Liv.*

(Direct question : Quid de praedā faciendum est. Itis ?)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is usually expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*"Si rētēris contumelias oblīvisci vellet, num etiam rēcentium injūriarum mēmoriā dēpōnere posse ?" "Even if he were willing (he said,) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries ?" —Cæs.*

(Here, *num dēpōnēre posse = non dēpōnēre posse.*)

*Interrogabat .. "quando ausūros exposecērē dēmēlia, nisi .. etc." He asked "When would they venture to demand redress, if not .. etc.?" —Tac.*

(*Quando ausūros = numquam ausūros.*)

*An quicquam esse sūperbius ? Could anything be more arrogant ?—Liv.*

(*An quicquam esso = nihil case.*)

§ 470. (D.) Commands and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *impērāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451) : as,

*(Orāre) .. ferrent ūpein, adjūvārent, (He begged them) to come to his assistance and help.—Liv.*

*Sin bello persequi persēvēraret, rēmīniscērētur pristinæ virtutis Helvētiōrum." "If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them, (he bad him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii;" —Quæy*

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar respondit .. "nulos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae multitudini possint," Caesar replied .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude."—Caes.

(Direct form: "Nulli in Gallia vacant agri, qui dari possint." comp. § 480.)

"Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. qui inter quātuordecim annos tectum non subiissent, virtute possint," "He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle."—Caes.

(Direct form also: "Qui subiissent (§ 476) .. possint" (§ 434).

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Jusjurandum, Jürjeßrandi, n.*; and *Juramentum, i., n.*; denote a *sicil oath*. *Sacramētum, i., n.*, is a military oath, by which a soldier pledges himself not to forsake his standard:—

Obligāre aliquem willitiae sacramēto, To bind a man by oath to be a soldier.—Cic.

*Juravi vērisimilium pulcherrimumque jusjurandum, I swore a most true and honourable oath.*—Cic.

2. *Itērum, a second time.* *Rursus* and *Rursus, once more, another time.* *Dēnuo (de novo), anew.* *De intēgro, quite afresh, as if nothing had been done before:*—

Fabulam itērum lēgēre, To give a play a second reading.—Cio.

Itērum atque tertium tribūnum, Tribuna for a second and a third time.—Cic.

Rursus instre et proelium rēlinquēre coeprunt, They began to press the attack once more, and to renew the engagement.—Caes.

3. *Infans, ntis, c. (In, sālī), an infant; a child in his (or her) earliest years.* *Puer, ērl, m., a male child, a boy in his dependent years, from about seven to sixteen.* *Adolescens, ntis (ad and rt. ol., to grow), a youth growing up into manhood, from about sixteen to twenty-four.* *Juvēnis, is, c., a young man or woman in the prime of life, from about twenty-five to forty-five.*

4. *Silva, ae, f., any forest or wood.* *Saltus, us, m., a wild place or wood among mountains: often a mountain defile or pass.* *Nēmus, ūris, n., woodland with pastures.* *Līcus, i., m., a sacred grove.*—

Silvae rēcentes saltusque rēconditi, Woods freshly leaved and hidden glades.—Catul.

Te nēmus omne clement, Thy praise all the woodland shall sing.—Virg.

Pios errare per ilēos, To roam through hallowed groves.—Virg.

#### EXERCISE LII.

1. He shows<sup>1</sup> (them) that the war must be waged on a plan widely different from that<sup>2</sup> on which it has been waged before.
2. The whole multitude shouts out together<sup>3</sup> that Vercingetorix is a most excellent general, and<sup>4</sup> that the war could not<sup>5</sup> be managed with greater skill (*rātio*). 3. The equites shout out together that it should be enacted<sup>6</sup> by a most sacred oath, that that man<sup>7</sup> should not be received within house, who has not twice ridden-through the enemy's forces. 4. Considius says that the mountain which he wished (*perf. subj.*) to be seized<sup>8</sup> by Labienus is held by the enemy

5. He fight  
Caes  
had  
finish  
the c  
they  
of La  
was  
all th  
thing  
some  
weigh  
rende  
shoul  
Scipio  
were  
(dñm  
hear  
thing  
was  
toil,<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sa  
<sup>2</sup> Or  
longe  
<sup>3</sup> Ex  
compos  
<sup>4</sup> Ar  
<sup>5</sup> Co  
<sup>6</sup> Is  
<sup>7</sup> Oc  
<sup>8</sup> To  
express  
sum.  
<sup>10</sup> E

LIII.—

§ 4  
juncti  
not si

§ 4  
lowed  
belong

Had  
should  
(Qu

5. He said that if they wish to try a second time, he was ready to fight (*décerto*) a second time. 6. Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak of (*de*) those things which had begun<sup>8</sup> to be treated<sup>9</sup> between them, and<sup>10</sup> had not<sup>11</sup> been finished. 7. To (*ad*) this (*pl.*) Caesar replied that he would preserve the city, if, before the battering-ram touched (*pluperf. subj.*) the walls, they had surrendered themselves. 8. They relate that Ptolemy, son of Lagus, (when) an infant, being exposed by his mother in the woods, was preserved by an eagle. 9. He said that even<sup>10</sup> the bravest of all those of whom Troy could boast, ought not to attempt<sup>11</sup> those things which could not be done. 10. Liseus says that there are some whose influence with the common-folk<sup>12</sup> is of the greatest weight.<sup>13</sup> 11. Caesar sends ambassadors (urging that) he should render this favour to himself and the Roman people; (that) he should restore the hostages which he had from the Aedni. 12. Scipio said that it was (being) reported<sup>14</sup> to him that certain knights were declining<sup>15</sup> that (military) service. If any were so disposed (*animatus*) let them (said he) express<sup>16</sup> what they felt; he would hear them indulgently.<sup>17</sup> 13. To the armed soldier, carrying nothing with him besides the implements of war, what (he asked) was unsurmountable? To take<sup>18</sup> Saguntum what danger,<sup>19</sup> what toil,<sup>20</sup> for (*per*) eight months, had been gone through<sup>20</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Say, teaches (*dœco*).

<sup>2</sup> On a plan widely different from, long illā ratiōne atque . . .

<sup>3</sup> Express together by *cum* (*con*) in composition.

<sup>4</sup> And . . . not, nēc.

<sup>5</sup> Confirmari oportere.

<sup>6</sup> Is: see St. L. Gr. 372.

<sup>7</sup> Oeclipo, āvi, ītum, 1.

<sup>8</sup> To begin, before a passive verb, is expressed by the passive form *coepitus sum.*

<sup>9</sup> Ago, ēgi, actum, 3.

<sup>10</sup> Even . . . not, nē . . . quidem.

<sup>11</sup> Tento, āvi, ītum, 1.

<sup>12</sup> Plebs, plibis, f.

<sup>13</sup> To have the greatest weight, plūtum vīlere.

<sup>14</sup> Rēnuntio, āvi, ītum, 1.

<sup>15</sup> Dēcreto, āvi, ītum, 1.

<sup>16</sup> Exprōmo, psi, plum, 3.

<sup>17</sup> Cum bñā vénia,

<sup>18</sup> Say, that *Saguntum might be taken*, ut with subj.

<sup>19</sup> Partitive gen.

<sup>20</sup> Exhario, si, stum, 4 (lit. to swallow off, drink to the dregs).

### LIII.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. Qui hypothetical.—The Relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual hypothesis (§ 431): as,

Hace qui videat, nonne cōgātur fatēri deos esse, Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?—Cic, (Qui videt = si quis videat, if any one were to see.)

Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam percéperit, Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.—Cic.

(Qui non percéperit = nisi percéperit, unless he has learned.)

*Obs.* To this head belongs the phrase quod sciam, as far as I know, if only I know.

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortunatē adolescens, qui tuae virtutis Hōmērum praecōnem inventeris, O fortunate youth, who hast found (i. e. in that thou hast found) a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.—Cic.

Ut cubitum discessimus, me et de via et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, arctior quam solēbat somnus complexus est, No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.—Cic.

(Qui vigilassom = quem vigilassem, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of qui as introducing a reason is augmented by ut, utpote, quippe: as,

Magna pars Fidēnātium, ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent, Lātīne sciēbant, A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.—Liv.

Multa de mēa sententiā questus est Caesar, quippe qui ab eo in me esset incensus, Caesar complained much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).—Cic.

*Obs.* But quippe qui is also found with the Indicative: as,

Ānlmus fortinā non ēget, quippe quae prōbitatē . . . nēque dāre neque ēripere pōstet, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.—Sall.

§ 478. Qui of Purpose.—Qui takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of ut, and denotes a Purpose (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui ēripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.—Cic.

(Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.)

Clūsini lēgātos Rōmām qui auxiliū a sēnātu pēlērent, misēre, The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.—Liv.

(Qui pēlērent = ut pēlērent.)

§ 479. Qui of Result.—Qui is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of ut as indicating a Result (§ 449): as,

It ēnōdandis nēmīnibus, quod misērandū sit, labōratis, In explaining names, you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.—Cic.

(Quod misērandū sit = ut misērandū sit.)

Majus gaudium fuit quam quod universum homines cāpērent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.—Liv.

(Major quam quod cāpērent = major quam ut cāpērent.)

§ 4  
dignus  
is wor-

Liv  
play a

Nu  
quam  
age tha

Hō  
The wi

§ 4  
defini  
qui, th  
some w

Sun  
some w

Fāē

There v

—Sall

1. Ōdiu  
oney.

Sim

Ōdi

Sim

me.

Tic

to be d

2. Libe  
hence,  
a roll  
separat  
tablet  
scroll.

3. Obtin  
proper  
or obtai

Suan

house.

Ut q

Sum

from th

Eng. And

w At t

**M**agōrum  
ns who has  
d.)  
o, if only 1  
ctive in  
raecōnem  
ast found)  
m noctem  
sooner had  
sat up to a  
Cic.  
  
is aug-  
nt, Lātine  
from their  
eo in me  
sed by me,  
  
dāre neque  
con neither  
  
ve when  
Purpose  
  
are many  
  
nīsere, The  
he senate.  
  
he Sub-  
as indi-  
  
in explain-  
able.—Cic.  
  
nt, The joy

§ 480. Qui is especially so used after the adjectives *dignus, indignus, idōneus*, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of or fit for* : as,

Liviānae fabūlae non satis *dignae* sunt quas Itērum lēguntur, *The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic.

Nulla mihi vīdēbatur optior persōna quae de sēnectūte lōquerētur, quam Cātonis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic.

Hōmīnes scēlērati indīgni mihi vīdēbantur, quōrum causam dēfērem, *The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.*—Cic.

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such indefinite expressions as *sunt qui, there are some who; non dēsunt qui, there are not wanting men who; rēpēriuntur, there are found some who* : as,

Sunt qui discessum ānīmi a corpōrē pālent esse morteim, *There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.*—Cic.

Fūere qui crēderent M. Crassum non ignārum ejus consillii fuisse, *There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.*  
—Sall.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. **Ödium, i., n. (ödi), hatred.** Invidia, ae, f. (invīdeo), ill-feeling, odio, envy. Inimicitia, ae, f., often plural (in, amicus), enmity, animosity. Simultas, atis, f. (simul), a feud, quarrel :—

Ödium est tra invētērita, *Hatred is anger deeply rooted.*—Cic.

Simultatea quas mēcum hābit dēpōsuit, *He laid aside the feuds he had with me.*—Cic.

Mēltas māglī Inimicitiae timendae sunt quam ēpōrtæ, *Silent enmity is rather to be dreaded than that which is open.*—Cic.

2. **Liber, bri, m., strictly, the inner rind or bark of trees, as writing material; hence, a book of any kind; a section of a work.** Vōlūmen, līnis, n. (volvo), a roll (of parchment). The sections of works were generally contained in separate scrolls. Cōdēx, līcis, m., strictly, the trunk of a tree; also a billet or tablet of wood wazed for writing; a (bound) book, as distinguished from a scroll.

3. **Obtīneo, ul, entum, 2, is to hold, occupy.** Impētro, avi, stum, 1 (in, patro), properly, to execute; hence to obtain by entreaty. Adipiscor, eptus, 3, to get or obtain :—

Suam quisque dōnum tum obtinēbat, *Each man at that time occupied his own house.*—Cic.

Ut quod me dīxisti impētres, *To obtain what you implored of me.*—Cic.

Summos hōnōres a pōpulo Rōmāno ēdēptus est, *He obtained the highest honours from the Roman people.*—Cic.

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *And he who reads these.*

Lat. *Which (he) who reads (subj.),*

*Quas qui lēgit.*

*At the very time, oriole.*

*Ipse tempore, dissorimēns,*

## EXERCISE LIII.

1. He has conquered, who has not inflamed (his) hatred by success, but softened it by clemency. 2. For there is this common fault (*vitiūm*) in men, that they disparage<sup>1</sup> those who are eminent. 3. He sent Gongylus of Eretria<sup>2</sup> to deliver a letter to the king, in which these things were written. 4. Sixteen books (*volumina*) of letters, sent to Atticus, were published (*celo*); and (he) who reads these does not feel the want of<sup>3</sup> a (regular) history of those times. 5. For he invited those whose character was not uncongenial with<sup>4</sup> his own. 6. It is thought to be (the mark) not of a liberal, but a worthless (*levis*) man, to promise what he cannot perform (*praesto*). 7. He did not go to<sup>5</sup> parties with his father, for he<sup>6</sup> only very rarely came into the town. 8. He had been cruelly wronged (*violō*) by the tyrant, who had ordered him to be sold (as a slave). 9. Then at length Titurius, who had made no provision<sup>7</sup> beforehand, (began to) hurry and run to and fro, as<sup>8</sup> is usually the<sup>9</sup> case with (*in*) those who at the very time of action are compelled to be forming their plans.<sup>10</sup> 10. But Cotta, who had thought (*subj.*) that these things might<sup>11</sup> occur on the march, was in no respect found wanting<sup>12</sup> to the common safety. 11. Nor am I, says he, the man to be the most alarmed of you all (*ex vobis*) by the fear of death. 12. They beg (him) to (*ut*) defend (them) from wrong on the part of Cassivellanus (*gen.*), and to send into (their) state some one to<sup>13</sup> preside and hold (*oblineo*) the sovereign-power. 13. Caesar, in the beginning<sup>14</sup> of the summer, sent his lieutenant Q. Pedius to (*qui*) march<sup>15</sup> his legions into the interior (part of) Gaul. 14. He who obeys modestly seems to be worthy one-day<sup>16</sup> of ruling. 15. The character of Laclius seemed a suitable one to discourse<sup>17</sup> about friendship. 16. (The things) which to some seem marvellous, there are many who think<sup>18</sup> nothing of.

- 1. Destrō, xi, ctum, 3 : foll. by de.
- 2. Eretricensis.
- 3. To feel the want of, dēstidro, ēvi, ctum, 1.
- 4. To be uncongenial with, abhorreō (*subj.*) ab.
- 5. To go to parties, convivia int̄re.
- 6. Quippe qui, St. L. Gr. 447.
- 7. Ut qui n̄ s̄ll ante pr̄vidisset.
- 8. Say, that which, id quod.
- 9. Accidere consuevit.

- 10. To form a plan, consilium cōp̄ere.
- 11. Posse.
- 12. Nulla in re deerat.
- 13. Qui with subj.: to preside, pr̄sum, fui, esse.
- 14. Int̄a aestate (abl. absol.).
- 15. Dēdico, xi, ctum, 3.
- 16. Alquando. Of ruling, Qui imp̄eret.
- 17. See Obs. 12: to discourse, dissērō, ul, rtum, 3.
- 18. To think nothing of, pro n̄ibile habere.

## LIV.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

## Quum.

§ 483. Quum.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causāle*); it may then generally be translated by *as*, *since*, or *although*: *as*,

*Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratiō ipsa*

mōnet  
and al-

Quā  
nāri ex  
the gene-

—Cic.  
Phō  
was aw-

§ 48  
sequon-

Sōci  
multa n  
was bei-

are I do-

Quos  
Rēgū lib  
appointe-

king's li-

Obs.  
a

§ 48  
cative  
place :

Quum  
rejecti su  
put off ti-

Quam  
produce

Quam

1. Sēgrē  
flock).

ctum, 3,

Öves  
severed J

Péculi  
of a tem

2. Aegrit

m., opp  
discompa-

Quant  
does my

3. Chākīmī  
misfortu-

miser.

Übi e

cannot a

monet amicitias comparare, *Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.*—Cic.

*Quum* in communibus suggestibus consistere non auderet, contio-  
nari ex turri alta solebat, *As he (Dionysius) dared not take his stand in the general platforms, he used to deliver his harangues from a high tower.*—Cic.

Phocion fuit perpétuo pauper, *quam dītissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*—Nep.

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative : as,

Socrates in pompa quin magna vis aurii argenteique ferratur, quam multa non dēsidero! inquit, *When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are that I don't want!"*—Cic.

Quos quam tristiores vidisset, triginta minas accēpit, nē aspernāri regis liberalitatem vidēretur, *When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minae, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.*—Cic.

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the precise time at which something takes place : as.

*Quum to jam adventare arbitrābāmur, rēpente in mensam Quintilem rejecti sumus, Just when I was looking for your arrival, I was all at once put off till the month of June.*—Cic.

*Quum testes dōbo ex Sicilia, quem vōlet ille ēligat, When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.*—Cic.

*Quum ver esse coepérat, When it had begun to be spring.*—Cic.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Sēgrēgo, avi, atum, 1 (sc. grex), to separate from the rest (lit. from the flock). Sēpōsi, pōsū, pōsūtū, 3, to lay apart, or reserve. Sējungo, xi, ctum, 3, to disjoin, put asunder.*

*Ōvesque sēgrēgatas ostendit prōcul, And he points out in the distance sheep severed from the rest.*—Phacd.

*Pēfūniam in aedificatiōnem templi sc̄pōsūnit, He reserved money for the building of a temple.*—Liv.

2. *Aegrītūdo, mis, f., heaviness of heart, soul-sickness, vexation. Angor, ōris, m., oppression of mind; distress or anguish. Sollicitudo, mis, f., anxiety or discomposure. Cūra, ae, f., concern, care, in general sense :*

*Quantā me cūrā et sollicitudine afficit gnātus, How much concern and anxiety does my son cause me!*—Ter.

3. *Cālāmitas, atis, f., a disastrous blow, a calamity. Infortūnium, i, n., a misfortune, as the loss of property. Misēria, ae, f., a pressing state of affliction, misery. Infelicitas, atis, f., ill-luck, want of success :*

*Ubi est virtus, ubi misēria esse non pōtest, Where virtue is, (lasting) misery cannot exist.*—Cic.

4. **Vectigal**, *Aliis, n.* (*vēthō*), *revenue from duty paid on imports or exports.* It is used of all sorts of taxes. **Tributum**, *i. n.* (*tribuo*), *the money which all citizens pay in proportion to their wealth.* **Exactio, ônis, f.**, *a levying, or gathering of taxes;* —

*Lēvare agrum vectigalli, To release land from the payment of dues.* —Cic.

*Unius imperatōris praeda finem attulit tributis, The spoils of a single commander put an end to (the payment of) tribute.* —Cic.

*Äcerbisissima exactio caplum, A most cruel exaction of poll-tax.*

### EXERCISE LV.

1. Since he is a citizen, he must not be separated from the number of the citizens. 2. I do not doubt that you will prevail (*impētro*), since you promise to be<sup>1</sup> a friend to us. 3. When the Lacedaemonians, in a severe war, were pressing-hard-on<sup>2</sup> the Athenians, Codrus, laying aside his royal garb,<sup>3</sup> entered the enemy's camp. 4. When Chabrias, a general of the Athenians, was most bravely fighting in a naval battle, his ship began to sink (*sido*). Although he could have escaped from this position<sup>4</sup> if he had thrown himself into the sea, he preferred rather to perish than abandon the ship. 5. M. Atilius Regulus, although in the first Punic war he had broken the power of the Carthaginians, at last fell (*vénio*) into the hands of the enemy. 6. When a certain old man<sup>5</sup> at Athens had come into the theatre, a place was nowhere given him by his fellow-citizens: but when he had come to the Lacedaemonians, who, since they were ambassadors, were seated<sup>6</sup> in a certain place, they all arose together. 7. When we consider,<sup>7</sup> with attentive mind, the things which are past, then regret follows if they are bad, joy if they are good. 8. Never ought we to be more modest (*verēcundus*) than when we speak of God. 9. When it is asked what can be done, we must look to it<sup>8</sup> how it is to be done. 10. When the entire management of everything<sup>9</sup> is in the-power-of (*potēces*) one (man), that one (man) we call a king. 11. He acts unjustly who does not, when he can, ward off an injury from his friends. 12. In other things, when calamity comes, then loss is sustained<sup>10</sup>; but (*at*) in revenues not only the approach of evil, but even the very fear (of it) brings a calamity

<sup>1</sup> Acc. with future inf. after a verb of promising.

<sup>2</sup> Prēmo, est, erim, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Abl. absol., dēpōcta rēglā veste.

<sup>4</sup> Say, hence, hinc (as first word).

<sup>5</sup> Quidam grandis natus.

<sup>6</sup> Pluperf. of *considēo, scđi, sessum, 2*

<sup>7</sup> Intucor, itus, 2 (lit. to gaze upon)

<sup>8</sup> Videndum est.

<sup>9</sup> Omnitum summa rērum..

<sup>10</sup> Say, is received, accepitur.

### LV.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS

Quod (Quo), Cūia, Quippe, Quoniam.

§ 486. **Quod** (*quo*) and **quia**.—The Conjunctions **quod** and **quia**, because, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

*Idecirco sum tardior quod non invēnio fidum tābellarūm, I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.*

*Urbs quae quia postrēma aedificata est, Neapolis (νέα πόλις) nōmīnatur, A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (Neriton).—Cic.*

*Obs.* *Quia states a reason more directly and positively than quod.*

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod, non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

*Pugiles etiam quum feriunt adversarium ingēmiscauit, non quod dolent autem suam succumbant, sed quia profundā vōce omne corpus intendit, Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).—Cic.*

§ 489. *Quod* is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions: as, *jūvat, it delights*; *vitiū est, it is a fault*; *laudābile est, it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

*Jūvat me, quod vīgent stūdīa, prōférunt se ingēnia hōmīnum, It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.—Plin. Ep.*

*Magnum bēnēfīcium nāture est, quod nēcessē est mōri, It is a great boon of nature that we must die.—Sen.*

§ 492. *Quippe (quia-pe)*, because, as being, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, *quum, quod, quia, quōniam, ubi, ēnim, etc.* It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

*Ego vēro laudo: quippe quia magnārūm saepe id rēmēdium aegritūdīnum est, I do praise it (such conduct), inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.—Ter.*

*Lēve nōmen hābet utrāque res: quippe lēve ēnim est hoo tōtūm, risum mōvēre, Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.—Cic.*

§ 493. *Quippe* is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

*Quippe vētor fātis! Because forsooth I am for b. llen by the fates!—Virg.*

*Mōvet me quippe lūmon cūrīas! Forsooth that luminary of the female-house disconcerts me!—Cic.*

§ 494. *Quoniam* (*quum jam*), since, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

*Quoniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.—Cic.*

*De suis privatim r̄bus ab eo p̄t̄re coöp̄runt, quoniam civitati consilere non posse. They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.—Cæs.*

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified themselves merely: v. § 487.)

*Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit fr̄ter ejus, Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.—Nep.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Dēcēdō, ssi, ssum, 3, to retire or go away, often as a mark of respect so as to make room for another. Discēdō, ssi, ssum, 3, to go away to some other place, to depart. Āb̄o, i, itum, 4, to go away, not to remain :—*

*Idem ābeunt qui vēnērant, The same persons who had come, depart again.—Cic.*

*Eo die Cāpū discessi et Cālbus manū. The same day I departed from Capua and abode at Cales.—Liv.*

*Multi ob viam prōdiērunt de prōvinciā dēcēdenti, Many went forth to meet him as he withdrew from his province.—Cic.*

2. *Valdē* (vīldē) and *admōdūm*, *very*, are used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. *Admōdūm* (ad mōdūm), lit. to the (proper) degree, *quite*. *Multum* and *magnōp̄ēre*, *greatly*, are used with verbs. *Magnōp̄ēre* is sometimes written *magnōp̄ēre*; *superl. maximōp̄ēre* or *maximo p̄ēre*, *very greatly*. *Ferquam* (a colloquial word), *exceedingly* :—

*Perguam vēlin sc̄ire, I should exceedingly like to know.—Plin. Ep.*

*Crassus quām esset admōdūm ādolescens, When Crassus was quite a young man.—Cic.*

*Quidquid vult, valde vult, Whatever he wishes, he intensely wishes.—Cæs.*

3. *Lælo, ei, eun, 3, to inflict a physical injury, to hurt. Viōlo, īvi, atum, 1 (vis), to violate; esp. to injure a person's rights. Offendo, di, sum (ob, fendo, obso, to strike), to strike against, to wound a person's feelings, to affront :—*

*Quae laedunt oculū festinas dūmēre, Objects which hurt the eye, you hasten to remove.—Cic.*

*Viōlare fidem, To break faith.—Cic.*

*Justitiae partes sunt, non viōlare homīnes; vērēundiae non offendere, The province q. Justice is not to wrong men; of delicacy, not to wound them.—Cic.*

#### PHRASES.

Eng. *To make war on any one.*

Lat. *Bellum ālēui inferre.*

" *To be better off.*

" *Melius se habēre.*

" *To cause to be done.*

" *Faciendum cūrāre.*

" *Before the commencement of his tribunūship.*

" *Ante tribūnatūm inītūm.*

" *Such is the state of morals.*

" *Ita se mōres hābent.*

" *Aloof from public affairs (politics).*

" *Prōcul a rēpublīca.*

" *To make much of a person.*

" *Amplēcti aliquid.*

" *To be unsuccessful, to fail.*

" *Frustra esse.*

1. *I  
go' by  
2. By  
so ear  
spect)  
4. Th  
to me  
5. But  
mence  
benefit  
of me  
more s  
because  
read?  
tained  
9. Let  
fortune  
war, sl  
against  
to me  
12. Th  
aloof fr  
indolent  
every d  
failed,  
you by  
will do  
(nēmēc*

1 Dīmī  
2 Tam  
3 Dilig  
4 Say,  
gerundiv

5 Tibi n  
6 Comp  
7 Can līm  
8 Eo m  
9 Abl. a  
nūrīum e

10 Liket

1 Dīmī  
2 Tam  
3 Dilig  
4 Say,  
gerundiv

5 Tibi n  
6 Comp  
7 Can līm  
8 Eo m  
9 Abl. a  
nūrīum e

10 Liket

LVI.- U

Dun

§ 497

until, wi

& simple

PR. J.

## EXERCISE LV.

1. This concerns (*mōveo*) me not, that these who have been let go<sup>1</sup> by me, are said to have departed to (*ut*) make war on me again. 2. By this very (means) you diminish my sorrow, that you labour so earnestly<sup>2</sup> to diminish (it). 3. Those very men are in this (respect) better off than we, because they are many in one spot (place). 4. Thus much (*tantum*) will I say, that nothing is more gratifying to me than that you love<sup>3</sup> her, and take care to write<sup>4</sup> (her) letters. 5. But what does it benefit (*jūvat*) me, that I came before the commencement of (his) tribuneship, if (the fact) itself that I came, benefits me naught?<sup>5</sup> 6. You are not pleased<sup>6</sup> that he has written of me to (*ad*) many somewhat harshly.<sup>6</sup> 7. You write to me both more seldom than you used (to do), and more briefly; I suppose because you have nothing (to say) which you suppose I can like to read.<sup>7</sup> 8. I am the more unhappy,<sup>8</sup> because though I have sustained a very severe injury,<sup>9</sup> I am not even allowed<sup>10</sup> to grieve.<sup>9</sup> 9. Let them,<sup>11</sup> since such is the state of morals, be liberal from the fortunes of their friends! 10. T. Manlius Torquatus, in the Latin war, slew his son, because he, contrary to orders,<sup>12</sup> had fought against the enemy. 11. All charge (*cāra*) of public affairs seems to me far from desirable,<sup>13</sup> because honour is not given to merit.<sup>14</sup> 12. There are (some) who, because I have resolved to spend my life aloof from public affairs, bestow<sup>15</sup> on my useful toil the name of indolence. 13. The commander made more and more of Jugurtha every day,<sup>16</sup> inasmuch as no plan nor undertaking of his<sup>17</sup> (ever) failed. 14. Since nature is now putting<sup>18</sup> an end to my life, I adjure you by this right hand to hold these (your) brothers dear. 15. I will do this, not because I believe the man, but because I reckon (*nūmēro*) you among my dearest friends.

1. *Dimitto, misi, missum, 3.*2. *Tan valde.*3. *Diligo, exi, ctum, 3.*4. *Say, give; i.e. to the letter-carrier gerundive.*5. *Tibi non placet.*6. *Compar. of asp̄rē: St. L. Gr. 351.*7. *Can like to read, libenter r̄ḡre posse.*8. *Ei m̄st̄rior.*9. *Abl. absol.: to sustain an injury, iūriam sc̄lēre.*10. *Licit, with dat. of Eng. subject.*11. *Begin, sicut sāne (the latter word ironical).*12. *Contra imp̄rium.*13. *Minime cōpiendus.*14. *Virtus.*15. *Impōno, 3: with acc. and dat.*16. *In dies, gradual . . . use being denoted.*17. *In as much as . . . of his, quippe . . . cuius.*18. *To put an end to, finem facere, with gen.*

## LV.—USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CONJUNCTIONS.

Dum, Dummōdo, Antequam, Priusquam, Postquam, Quamvis,

Quanquam, Etsi, Etiamsi.

§ 497. *Dum, whilst, is construed with the Indicative; dum, until, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,*

Ea rēdemptio mansit..... dum jūdīcēs rejecti sunt, *That bargain remained in force..... until the judges were rejected.*—Cic.

Obsidio deinde per paucos dies māgis quam oppugnātio fuit dum vulnus dūcis cūrārītur, *The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.*—Liv.

Irāta subtrahēndi sunt it, in quos imp̄tūm facēre cōnāntur, dum se ipsi collāgant, *Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.*—Cic.

§ 498. Dummōdo (also simply *dum* or *mōdo*), *provided that* (Hypothetical; § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Ōdērint, dum mētūant, *Let them hate provided only they fear.*—Suet.  
Omnia recta et hōnesta negligunt, dummōdo pōtentium consēquāntur,  
*They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.*—Cic.

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam*, *priusquam*, before that, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnībus nēgōtiis, priusquam aggrediāre, nōlībenda est præpāratiō diligēns, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.*—Cic.

§ 501. When *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam*, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

*Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeo, de me pauca dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.*—Cic.

Non ante finitum est proelium, quam tribiūnus militū interfectus est, *The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.*—Liv.

*Ante aliquanto quam tu nātūs es, A good while before you were born.*—Cic.

Dēcessit post annum quartum quam expulsus ērat, *He died four years after he had been banished.*—Nep.

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

Prius Placentiam pēvēnēre quam sātis sc̄et Hannibal ab Tīcino p̄fēctos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv.

Interfuit pugno nāvāli apud Salāmina, quae facta est prius quam poenā liberārītur, *He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep.

§ 502. *Quamvis*, however much, and *icit*, although, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

*Quamvis Elīsios mīrētur Grēcia campos, However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg.

tatio  
L  
Thou  
Quin  
V  
shoul  
§  
Indi  
disti  
Q  
Sagitt  
suffici  
Q  
would  
Sc  
But a  
virtue

1. Spe  
(specie  
tem  
to th  
upon  
4, to

Spe  
Gu  
sweet  
Cor  
Virg.

Amb  
freq.  
briber  
Am  
myself  
Lex

Eng. To  
" On  
" To  
" I s

1. W  
Gauls co  
farther o

*Quamvis sit magna (exspectatio), tamen eam vinceas, Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.—Cic.*

*Licet ipsa virtus sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est Quiet. Though ambition in itself be a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.—Quint.*

*Vita brévis est licet supra mille annos exeat, Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.—Sen.*

§ 503. *Quanquam, etsi, etiamsi, although,* take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421): *vs,*

*Quanquam, etsi priore foedero stanetur, satis cautum erat de Saguntinis, Although,—even if the former treaty were adhered to,—sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.—Liv.*

*Quanquam festinas, non est mora longa, Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.—Hor.*

*Sed quanquam n̄egent, nee virtutes nee vicia crescere, attamen, etc., But although they (the Stoics) shoul'd deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.—Cic.*

## SYNONYMS

1. *Sperno, sprövi, sprētum, 3, to reject with scorn, refuse.* Aspernō, *ātus, 1* (*sperno*), *to reject, decline, refuse* (less strong than *sperno*). *Contemno* (rarely *temno*, Virg.), *m̄psi, m̄ptum, 3, to make light of what men usually fear or prize,* sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.—Liv.

*Despicio, exi, etum, 3 (de, sp̄cio), to look (arrogantly) down upon.* Negligo, *exti, etum, 3 (ne, lēgo), to disregard.* Fastidio, *lvi, etum, 4, to loath, distaste:—*

*Sperne v̄oluptates, Scorn (sensual) pleasures.—Hor.*

*Gustatus quo valde dulce est us-pnatur, The palate refuses what is over sweet,—Cic.*

*Contemnere ventos, opes, Not to care for the winds, not to care for riches. —Virg.*

*Omnis despiceare, To look down upon everybody.—Cic.*

*Impérium illeūs negligere, To disregard any one's authority. —Cic.*

2. *Ambitio, ónis, f. (amb, eo), a going round, suing for favour or office; less freq. ambition.* Ambitus, *ús, m., a circuitous route; illegal canvassing, bribery:—*

*Ambitione rēlegata dicere possum, I may say, without seeking to ingratiate myself.—Cic.*

*Lex ambitús, A bribery law.—Cic.*

## PHRASES.

Eng. *To make arrangements for the commissariat (of an army)* Lat. *Rēm frāmentariam expēdīre.*

" *On the following day.*

" *To recover from fear.*

" *I should like you to write.*

" *(Often) Postr̄idie ósus dīci.*

" *Se ex terrōre rēcipere.*

" *Velim scribas.*

## EXERCISE LVI.

- While these things were (say, are) being transacted (*ḡro*), the Gauls convened<sup>1</sup> a council of (their) chiefs.
- While they were farther distant<sup>2</sup> from the fortification, the Gauls had the advantage<sup>3</sup>

from the multitude of their missiles. 3. While these things were being transacted in Spain, C. Trebonius, the lieutenant, who had been left at Marseilles, began (*instiūto*) to advance<sup>4</sup> his battering-towers towards the town. 4. Caesar promises to provide (give) corn from that time until they reach<sup>5</sup> the river Varus. 5. Caesar came from that place to Gergovia: he determined that he ought to take no steps<sup>6</sup> concerning the siege, before he had made arrangements for the commissariat. 6. Thus the battle was rallied, and all the enemy turned their backs; nor did they cease from (their) flight until they reached the river Rhine. 7. On the following day, Caesar, before the enemy could recover from their alarm, led his army into the territories of the Suesiones. 8. However much I love my friend, as I both do, and ought (to do), yet this I cannot praise that (*quod*) he did not come-to-the-aid-of (*subvenio*, with *dat.*) such men. 9. Truth, though (*icit*) she obtain no patron or defender, is nevertheless defended by herself. 10. Even if there be (*fut.*) nothing for you to write, yet I should like you to write this very thing, that you had nothing to write, only not<sup>7</sup> (just) in these words. 11. However much he may despise those pleasures which he just now praised, I shall nevertheless remember what in his opinion is<sup>8</sup> the chief good. 12. Though (*icit*) all (possible) terrors impend over (in) me, I will undergo (them).

<sup>1</sup> Indico, xi, etum, 3 (to give notice of, advertise).

<sup>2</sup> To be farther distant, longius ibesse.

<sup>3</sup> To have the advantage, plus prōficere.

<sup>4</sup> To advance battering-towers, turreas agere or admovere.

<sup>5</sup> Use *impers. pass.*, dum vēniātur.  
St. L. Gr. 632.

<sup>6</sup> To take no steps about anything, nor agere de aliquā re.

<sup>7</sup> Dūmmodo ne, sc. scribas.

<sup>8</sup> Say, what *seems to him* (to be), quid ei videatur.

## LVII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

### 1. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvāt*, *dēlectat*, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum*, *dēcōrum est*, (*it*) *is fine, becoming, &c.*: as,

*Jūvāt integrōs accēdēre fontes, atquo haurīre.* *It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.* —Luer.

(Here *accēdēre*, *haurīre*, form subjects to *jūvāt*.)

At *pulchrum est dīgitō montrārī*, et dicier, "hic est," *But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, "There he is!"* —Pera.

## 2. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare, and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

*Quid sit futurum eras sōgo quaerēre, What is to be on the morrow,  
for hearken inquiring.—Hor.*

*Pro nobis mitte precāri, Give over praying for us! — Ov.*

## 3. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and *hearing*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

*Thales Milēsins āquam dixit esse iūlūm rōrum, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.—Cic.*

*Sentit ānūmus se mōrēri, The soul is conscious that it mores.—Cic.*

*Nou ēnim ambrōsiā deos aut nectare laetāri arbitror, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.—Cic.*

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy*, *grief*, *wonder*, etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Salvum te advenire gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.—Plaut.*

*Inferiores non dō tēre (dōbent) se a suis sūpērāri, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.—Cic.*

*Miror te ad me nūhil scribēre, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.—Cic.*

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, *it is certain*; *mānifestum est*, *it is manifest*; *aequum, justum est*, *it is fair or just*; *ōpus, nēcessē, est*, *it is necessary*; *sēquitur, it follows*; *constat, it is acknowledged*; *expēdit, it is expedient*, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Certum est libēros a pārentibus āmāri, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.—Quint.*

*Quae libērum scire aequum est ādolecentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.—Ter.*

*Constat ad salātem cīvium iūtatas esse lēges, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.—Cic.*

*Lēgem brēven esse ḥōportet, quō fācilius ab impēritiis tēneātur, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.—Cic.*

*Obs. Restat, reliquum est, it remains; proxīnum est, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, sēquitur, it follows; expēdit, it is expedient; mos (mōris) est, it is a custom, are often followed by ut and the Subjunctive: as,*

*Proxīnum est ut dōceam dōrūm prōvidentiā mundum admīnistrārī, The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.—Cic.*

*Si haec ēnuntiatio vēra non est, sēquitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.*

**§ 511.** Verbs signifying willingness, or permission (including *jubeo*), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Majores corpora juvēnum firmari labore völuerunt, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.—Cic.*

*Senātū placet, Crassus Syriū obtinēre, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.—Cic.*

*Verres hōmīnēm corrīpi jussit, Verres ordered the man to be arrested—Cic. (comp. § 451).*

*Cūpīo me esse clēmentem, I desire that I may be merciful.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. Verbs of wishing are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 413, sqq.).*

*Obs. 2. Impērio is sometimes used like *jubeo* (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,*

*Has omnes actūarias impērat fiēri, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.—Caes.*

#### SYNONYMS.

1. *Hūmo, avi, ētūm, 1 (hūmus), to cover with earth, hence to bury: opposed to crēmo. Sēpēlio, ivi, ultum, 4, to inter the remains of the dead in any way, in the ground, or in a sepulchral urn. Effēro, extūli, ētūm, 3, to carry forth (to the grave), celebrate the funeral of:—*

*Cæsōrum relīquias ūno tūmulo hūmāre, To bury the remains of the slain in one mound.—Suet.*

*Lex vētāt sēpēlīrī in urbe, The law forbids (a corpse) to be interred within the city.—Cic.*

*Ētūtus publice, Honoured with a public funeral.—Nep.*

2. *Angustas, a, um (ango, to press tight), opp. to lātūs, straitened, narrow. Arctus or artus (arcco), opp. to laxus, fast, tight, closely fenced in. Densus, a, um, closely pressed together without wide gaps between, thick together, crowded; opp. to rārūs. Spissas, a, um, packed so closely together that no space is left unoccupied; opp. to sōlitūs. Crassus, a, um, of thick or coarse composition; opp. to tenuis, subtilis (fine):—*

*Angusta dōmūs, A confined house.—Cic.*

*Arctioribus vincitūs tōnēri, To be confined in tighter bonds.—Cic.*

*Acte densi mīlitēs, Soldiers standing closely in line.—Liv.*

*Spissae partes, Particles closely packed (without vacum).—Lucr.*

*Crassus Bocōtūm hēr, The thick air of Boeotia.—HOr.*

3. *Bōnus, a, um, most general term for good, in whatever way or degree, honourable, virtuous, well-principled. Sanctus, a, um (sancio), unblemished, pure and moral:—*

*Bōnum virūm fīelle crēdōres, You would readily believe him to be a good man.—Tac.*

*Hōnesta res dīvidit in rectū et laudābile, That which is honourable divides itself into the right and the praiseworthy.—Cic.*

*Hōmīnes frūgaliſſiml, sanctissiml, People of most honest and unblemished life.—Cic.*

4. *Inēdīla, ae, e. (In cōlo), an inhabitant in general, whether in town or country. Inquiliinus, i, m. (incōla), a tenant, as opposed to the owner, of a house (dominus). Cōlōnus, i, m. (cōlo), a tiller of the soil, a farmer; a settler to whom land has been assigned. Cīvis, i, e., the member of a state, a citizen. Urbānus, i, m. (strictly an adjective), one who lives in the city (capital), a cit:—*

*Sōkratēs tōtūs mundū se inoblām et oīem arbitrab̄tur, Socrates deemed hi: if an inhabitant an i citizen of the whole world.—Cic.*

*Te inquitno,—non enim domino, While you the occupant of the house—  
you were not the owner of it.—Cic.*

*Optimus colonus, frugalissimus, parsimonius, An exceedingly good, honest,  
thrifty farmer.—Cic.*

*Dedictare colonos in coloniam, To conduct settlers to their settlement. —Cic.*

5. *Fossa, ae, f. (fūlio), a trench, a moat. Incile, is, n. (incido), a drain.  
Fōvea, ae, f. pitfall. Scrobs, is, m., a hole or trench made for the purpose  
of planting in. Lācūna, ae, f. (lacus), a ditch in which water stands:—*

*Fossa cui nōmen Drūsiāne (est), The dyke called after Drusus.—Tao.*

*Incilla apētere, To open the drains.—Cato.*

*In fōveam inclēre, To tumble into a pitfall.—Cic.*

*Cīvae soddant hūmōre lācūnæ, The hollow watercourses exude with moisture.*

—Virg.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *This kind of life.*

Lat. *Haec vita.*

" *To pitch a camp.*

" *Castra siccere, Wetter.*

" *To cause any one danger.*

" *Allui périculum siccere.*

## EXERCISE LVII.

1. It is better<sup>1</sup> to receive than to do an injury. 2. Their (*iis*) custom was not to bury the bodies of their (countrymen) without their being<sup>2</sup> previously torn by wild beasts. 3. This is the characteristic of a well-regulated<sup>3</sup> mind, both to rejoice at good things and to grieve at the contrary (*plur.*). 4. For nothing is (the mark) of so narrow and so mean (*parvus*) a soul as to love riches: noting more honourable and grand<sup>4</sup> than to-think-little-of<sup>5</sup> money. 5. Lycurgus required (*jubeo*) all the citizens to dine together in-public (*adv.*): besides this, he required the boys to exercise in-various-ways (*adv.*) their powers of body and mind. 6. Do you wish, Damon, since this kind of life (*haec vita*) delights you, yourself (*nom.*) to taste the same, and try my lot<sup>6</sup>? 7. Solon, when he was asked why he had fixed no punishment for (*in* with *acc.*) the murderer<sup>7</sup> of a parent, answered that he had thought no one would be guilty<sup>8</sup> of such a crime. 8. Themistocles used-to-walk by night in a public (place) because he could (*subj.*) not get (any) sleep: to-those-who-asked him<sup>9</sup> (why he did so), he replied that he was aroused from sleep by the trophies of Miltiades. 9. We-call-to-witness (*testor*) gods and men that we have taken up arms, neither against our country nor with-the-intention-of<sup>10</sup> causing peril to others. 10. Philip, king of the Macedonians, used-to-say that all fortresses could be taken<sup>11</sup> into which only (*mōdo*) a little-ass laden with gold could climb (*ascendo*). 11. Who does not know that it is the first law of history that you should not dare to say anything false (*gen.*)? 12. Socrates on being asked to-what-country he belonged,<sup>12</sup> answered that he was a-citizen-of-the-world<sup>13</sup>: for he believed himself to be an inhabitant of the whole world. 13. If it is best to live agreeably to nature, it necessarily follows that the wise are always happy, for they live agreeably to nature. 14. When the Persians had crossed-over into Attica, they wished to-come-to-an-engagement<sup>14</sup> before the Lacedaemonians came (*pluperf. subj.*) to the help of the Athenians.<sup>15</sup>

15. The Romans used to surround their camp, even if it was pitched for (*in*) one night (only) with a palisade and a ditch, in-order-to keep off those foes whom they saw (*sulj.*), and to prevent their being injured<sup>16</sup> by those whom they saw not. 16. When a-large-number-of<sup>17</sup> ships had been wrecked, as (*quum*) the rest from the loss<sup>18</sup> of anchors and other tackling were useless, a great confusion was caused throughout the whole army.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Praestat, stitit, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Without their being, n̄d with *plus*-  
perf. subj.

<sup>3</sup> Bōne institūtus.

<sup>4</sup> Magnificus : see St. L. Gr. 65, III.

<sup>5</sup> Contemno, m̄p̄d, ptum, 3.

<sup>6</sup> Fortina.

<sup>7</sup> Say, him who should have killed  
(nēco, 1).

<sup>8</sup> Say, would do it.

<sup>9</sup> Pers.-part. of quaero.

<sup>10</sup> Say, that we might (quo).

<sup>11</sup> Expugno, 1.

<sup>12</sup> Say, of what country (cūjas) he was.

<sup>13</sup> Mundānus (elvis being under-  
stood).

<sup>14</sup> Conditgo, xi, etum, 3.

<sup>15</sup> See St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>16</sup> And to prevent their being injured,  
n̄eße with subj.

<sup>17</sup> Compiliare.

<sup>18</sup> Perf.-part. of amitto, in abl. absol.

constr.

<sup>19</sup> Say, of the whole army.

### LVIII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD—continued.

#### 4. VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination*, *ability*, *lawfulness*, *duty*, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive without an Accusative : as,

*Sūdeo ex to audire quid sentias, I desire to hear from you what you think.*—Cic.

*Amicitia, nisi inter bōnos, esse non pōtest, Friendship can only exist between the good.*—Cic.

*Opat ārāe caballus, The nag would like to draw the plough.*—Hor. (cf. § 447).

*Dici bēatus ante ūbitum nēmo dībet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.*—Ov.

*Caesar bellum cun Germanis gōrēre constituit, Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.*—Cæs.

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive : as,

*Ubi vōles p̄ter esse, ibi esto, When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.*—Plaut.

*Cipio in tantis rēpublīcae p̄ficiālis, me non dissolūtum vīderī, I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic.

*Licuit esse ūlio Thēmīstocli, Themistocles might have been inactive.*—Cic.

¶ 4. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs : thus, *I wished to have been consul*, in *Vōlui me consilium esse*, not *fuisse*. see last example.

§ 514. Verbs signifying *to begin*, *continue*, or *leave off*; also *to be or become accustomed*, govern the Infinitive: as,

*Incepere, parve puer, matrem cognoscere visu, Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!* — Virg.

*Illiud jam mirari desisto, That I am now ceasing to wonder at.* — Cie.

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Auctoritas, àtis, f., influence* acquired by some eminent quality such as rank, integrity, wisdom. *Gratia, au, f., influence or favour* acquired by kindness or friendship:—

*Auctoritas propter magna in rem publicam mœrita, Influence because of great services to the state.* — Cie.

*Propter labores meos nonnulla apud bonos gratia, Because of my exertions, I enjoy some influence with the good.* — Cie.

2. *Percontor or percunctor, àtus sum, l, to ask questions eagerly*, particularly in reference to public matters or reports. *Interrōgo, avi, àtum, l, to ask with a view to get a man's opinion.* *Sciscitor or scitor, àtus sum, l (scio), to seek information.* It often implies curiosity or inquisitiveness:—

*Tu quod n̄st̄ rēfert percontari dēlinas, Cease you to ask of what concerns you not.* — Ter.

*Hoc quod te interrōgo responde, Answer what I ask you.* — Plaut.

*Non dēlino per litteras scisitari, I cease not to make inquiry by letter.* — Cie.

## PHRASES.

Eng. *The majority.*

" *To exchange hostages.*

" *To raise an army.*

" *At dinner-time.*

" *I am at liberty to do this.*

Lat. *Mjor pars.*

" *Obsides inter-ante.*

" *Exercitum p̄ rare.*

" *Inter cōnam.*

" *Mjhi livet hoc facere.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

1. A part of the enemy began to surround the legions on their exposed flank;<sup>1</sup> a part to make-for (*p̄t̄o*) the highest point (*lōcus*) in the camp (*gen.*). 2. The majority however decided<sup>2</sup> in-the-mean-time to bring the matter to an issue,<sup>3</sup> and defend the camp. 3. Wherefore in (this my) novel design, I resolved not to prepare (any) defence (of my conduct); I determined (only) to lay before you an explanation<sup>4</sup> founded-on (*de*) no consciousness of fault. 4. The barbarians began to dispatch ambassadors, to band together<sup>5</sup>, to exchange hostages, to raise troops. 5. On their<sup>6</sup> arrival invested-as-they-were-with<sup>7</sup> authority, and attended-by<sup>7</sup> a great multitude of men, they attempt to carry on the war. 6. Nor is it lawful to remain longer than a year in one place for the sake of an abode.<sup>8</sup> 7. These at first began to put to death all the worst (characters), and (such as were) hateful to all. 8. No one is at liberty to take up arms for the sake of making war on his country. 9. Romulus was believed to have passed<sup>9</sup> to the gods alive. 10. Caesar, while at supper (*inter coenūm*), is reported<sup>10</sup> to have said that a quick and unexpected death is the best termination of life. 11. Alexander wished to gain-possession-of the whole of India, and had already crossed the rivers Indus and Hysaspes. 12. The enemy were unwilling to desist from the

siege of the city, and yet they were not able to take it. 13. Turning to Charidemus, the Athenian, a man skilled in war, and personally hostile<sup>11</sup> to Alexander because of his exile (since it was at his instigation<sup>12</sup> that he had been banished from Athens), he began to inquire whether he thought<sup>13</sup> him sufficiently equipped for crushing<sup>14</sup> the foe? 14. After<sup>15</sup> a few days had been given to the soldiers (*sing.*) not for repose, but to restore their spirits, he began vigorously to pursue the foe, fearing that he would make for the interior<sup>16</sup> of his kingdom.

<sup>1</sup> Aperto lūtōre (without prep.)

<sup>2</sup> Use plēct, with dat. of subject.

<sup>3</sup> Ridi éventum expériri.

<sup>4</sup> Skitfactio.

<sup>5</sup> Conjurō, ávi and átu sum, 1.

<sup>6</sup> Gen. pl. of qui.

<sup>7</sup> Invested with, attended by, cum with abl.

<sup>8</sup> Inoblieni causa.

<sup>9</sup> Transeo, ii, Itum, 4, irr.

<sup>10</sup> Fertur.

<sup>11</sup> Infestus.

<sup>12</sup> Abl. absol. (jubeo).

<sup>13</sup> Say, whether he seemed to him, etc.

<sup>14</sup> Obtēro, trīvi, tritum, 3 (gerund-ive),

<sup>15</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>16</sup> Nout.-pl. of int̄erior, us.

## LIX.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD—continued.

### 5. THE INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mēne dēsistere victam, (*To think that*) I should give over as vanquished!—Virg.

Non pādūisse verbērare hōmīnem sēnem (*To think that*) he should not be ashamed to beat an old man!—Ter.

### 6. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

Intērā Manlius in Etrūriā plēbem sollicitare, *Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall.

Suo quisque mētū pēfēula mētiri, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall.

### 7. CIRQUMLOCUTION FOR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the active or Passive Voice, we often find fōrē ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Clūmābant hōmīnes, fōrē ut ipsi se dī immortāles uliscerentur, *The men exclaimed that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them-selves.*—Cic

Ex  
Sp  
may /  
§ 5

1. Eg  
(cōpe  
limit  
The  
dece

Is  
obsc  
never

V  
almo  
In  
rathe

2. Fest

1, to  
Pit  
your  
Qu  
Rome

3. Vind  
the a  
from

Te  
Öd  
sui, I  
him :

Eng. Al  
" In

1. A  
C. Figu

2. Mean  
people,  
resentm  
all: the  
thorough  
suring\*  
But after  
line ma  
now (m

3. Turning personally was at his began to for crush- en to the , he began ke for the

to him, etc.  
8 (gerund-

o denote sed: as, er as van- he should

mperfeet the Indi-

Manlius in all, the extent

or in the the Sub-

rentur, The range them-

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,  
*Spēro fōrē ut contingat id nōbis, I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic.

§ 519. Infinitive in *Oratio Obliqua*: see § 466.

SYNONYMS

1. *Egēstas, ans, j., destitution*; esp. as the result of profligacy. *Inōpia, ae, f. (ōpes), a want of means, scarcity.* *Panpertas, ātis, f., or paupēries, īi, f. (limited years, humble circumstances).* *Mendicitas, ātis, f. (mendicus), beggary.* The pauper hācē possesses but little; the Inops and ēgēnus too little: the mendicus nothing at all:—

*Istam paupertatem, vel pōtius egēstatem et mendicitatem tuam nunquam obscūre tulisti. That poverty of yours, nay rather want and beggary, you have never made any secret of.*—Sen.

*Vixi in summā paupertate et paene Inōpia, I have lived in extreme poverty and almost privation.*—Plin.

*Inōpia vel pōtius ut Lucretius ait, egēstas patril sermōnis, The deficiency, or rather as Lucretius says, the poverty of our mother-tongue.*—Cic.

2. *Festino, avi, ētum, 1, to hasten impatiently; to hurry.* *Prōpēro, avi, ētum, 1, to hasten energetically, will all suitable expedition (without hurry):—*

*Plūra scrissem nisi tui festinarent, I would write more were it not that your servants are in a hurry.*—Cic.

*Quae causa cur Rōmanū pūpēraret? What was his purpose in hastening to Rome?*—Cic.

3. *Vindico, avi, ētum, 1 (vīm, dīco), to avenge as an act of justice: especially of the action of the laws and magistrates.* *Ulciscor, ultus sum, 3, to revenge, from a feeling of anger:—*

*Te valde vindicavi, I have fully avenged you.*—Cic.

*Ödi hōmēm et ödērō: ütñam uicisci possem, sed illum nlecentur mōres sui, I detest and will detest the man: would that I could wreak my vengeance on him: but his own character will do it (for me).*—Cic.

PHRASES.

Eng. *About the beginning of June.* Lat. *Circiter ēklēendas Jūniās,*  
 " *In the consulate of M. Tullius* " *M. Tullio Cīcērōne, C. Antōnic  
 ēoero and C. Antonius.* *consulibus (Coss.).*

EXERCISE LIX.

[N.B. An asterisk indicates the use of the Historical Infinitive.]

1. About the beginning of June, in the consulship of L. Caesar and C. Figulus, he first began to address himself to<sup>1\*</sup> single (persons).
2. Meantime Manlius in Etruria was stirring-up<sup>\*</sup> the common-people, at once (*sīmūl*)<sup>1</sup> on the ground of their poverty<sup>2</sup> and (their) resentment for their wrongs (*sing.*).<sup>3</sup> 3. Suddenly a gloom fell-upon<sup>4</sup> all: they hurried-about, they were agitated<sup>\*\*</sup>; they (could) not thoroughly (*sātis*) trust<sup>\*</sup> any person or place: each one was measuring<sup>\*</sup> (the extent of) the danger (*pl.*) by his own fears (*sing.*). 4. But after Antonius began to approach (*imperf.*) with his army, Catiline marched<sup>\*\*</sup> through the mountains, shifted<sup>\*</sup> (*mōveo*) his camp now (*mōdo*) towards the city, now in the direction of Gaul,<sup>†</sup> (but)

gave\* the enemy no opportunity of coming to an engagement.<sup>5</sup> 5. The veterans, mindful of their former valour, fought\* fiercely at close-quarters<sup>6</sup>; the other side<sup>10</sup> offer an undaunted resistance<sup>11</sup>; the contest-is-maintained<sup>12</sup> with the greatest determination (*vis*). 6. Caius Memmius, of whose hatred for the predominance (*potentia*) of the nobles<sup>13</sup> we have before spoken, amid the hesitation and delay (*pl.*) of the senate, by his harangues urged\* the people to inflict retribution<sup>14</sup>; he warned \* (them) not to abandon the state nor their own liberty. 7. Caesar has himself recorded<sup>15</sup> the greater part of his achievements<sup>16</sup> in Gaul; and from his own words it may be inferred, that that country would not have been<sup>17</sup> easily subdued had not the inhabitants quarrelled among themselves. 8. They cried out that an innocent man ought not to perish unavenged. 9. Theophrastus when dying, is said to have found-fault-with<sup>18</sup> nature for giving so scanty (*extensus*) a life to men; for that if it could (only) have been<sup>19</sup> longer, all the arts would have been<sup>17</sup> perfected. 10. Think you that Cn. Pompeius would have rejoiced over his three consulships (and) his three triumphs, had he known that he was to be butchered in desertion amongst the Egyptians<sup>20</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Appello, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Abl.* without prep.

<sup>3</sup> Object. gen.; St. L. Gr. 268.

<sup>4</sup> Invādo, sī, sum, 3.

<sup>5</sup> Trépidō, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>6</sup> Iter fīlio, 3.

<sup>7</sup> In Galliam versus.

<sup>8</sup> Pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>9</sup> Cōmīnus, opp. to cōmīnus. <sup>10</sup> Ill.

<sup>11</sup> Haud tñmīdī rēsistūt: comp. St. L. Gr. 343.

<sup>12</sup> Certo, āvi, ātum, 1 (*impers. pass.*).

<sup>13</sup> Nōbilītas: abstr. for concr., St. L.

Gr. 592.

<sup>14</sup> Vindīeo, 1.

<sup>15</sup> I record, mēmōrīae prōdo, dīdi,

dītum, 3.

<sup>16</sup> Say, of those things which he achieved (perfleio).

<sup>17</sup> Use circumlocution, with fūtūrum fulisse.

<sup>18</sup> Accuso, āvi, ātum, 1.

<sup>19</sup> Pōtūset esse (not fulisse), the time being indicated by the former of the two verbs, not the latter as in English.

<sup>20</sup> In sōlītūdīne Aegyptiōrum.

## LX.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, *Obs. 1*) involved in the Verb, and is chiefly used in the way of *Apposition*: as,

*Dionysius*, cultros mētuens tonsōris, cādenti carbōne sibi ādūrēbat cāpillum, *Dionysius*, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

*Ipsa suā Dido conēdit ūsa mānu, Dido fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.*—Ov.

*Puer bēno sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capa-*  
*city* for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 5  
having  
and in  
ciple  
Partic

Obs.  
e  
§  
Obs.  
b  
s  
co

§ 52  
is going  
Curi  
lissent, i  
it his fin  
Script  
expecting  
importun  
Obs.  
oft

§ 524  
is havin  
only in  
The  
which l  
Audeo,  
Gaudeo,  
Sōleo,  
Fido (& co  
Jūro,  
Coeno,  
Frando,  
Nūbo,  
Ōdi,

§ 525.  
in an A  
the prin  
Adipi

Comit

gement<sup>5</sup>. 5.  
fiercely at-  
tance<sup>11</sup>; the-  
n (vis). 6.  
e (potentia)  
n and delay  
e to inflict  
te nor their  
ter part of  
it may be  
lly subnded  
8. They  
venged. 9.  
th<sup>12</sup> nature  
if it could  
perfection,  
d over his  
wn that he  
?

eo, 1.  
prōdo, dīdi,  
s which he  
with fūtūrum  
fuisse), the  
the sc. mer of  
latter as in  
rūm.

on as the  
Adjective.  
olved in  
tion: as,  
i Adārēbat  
is hair with  
se as the  
g) her own  
e.  
tion or capa-

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*, and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

*Obs.* 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which form a Perfect Participle Active: *as, adēptus, having acquired; usus, having used, &c.* (See § 103.)

*Obs.* 2. The lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: *as,*

Multi in *equis pārandis* adhīsent eūram, in *amicis pīgēndis* negligētē sunt, *Many take pains in getting horses* (Lit. *horses being got*), *but are careless in choosing friends.* —Cic.

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing *as going on* at the time spoken of: *as,*

Cūrio ad fūcum *sēdēti* magnū pūni pondus Samnites quum attī-  
lissent, rēpudiāti sunt, *When the Samnites brought Curius as he was sitting*  
*at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.* Cic.

Scripta tua jānū diu *espēctans* non audeo tāmen flagitāre, *While*  
*expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to*  
*importune you for them.* —Cic.

*Obs.* Instead of the *Imperfect* Participle, *quum* with the Past-*Imperfect* is often used: *as,*

Audīvi quum dīcēret, *I heard him saying.* —Cic.

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person *as having done something* at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a *Perfect* Participle with an Active sense:—

|                 |                      |                  |                                    |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|
| Audeo,          | <i>I dare,</i>       | <i>ausus,</i>    | <i>having dared.</i>               |
| Gaudeo,         | <i>I rejoice,</i>    | <i>gāvīsus,</i>  | <i>having rejoiced, rejoicing.</i> |
| Sōleo,          | <i>I am wont,</i>    | <i>sōllitus,</i> | <i>having been wont.</i>           |
| Fido (& comp.), | <i>I trust,</i>      | <i>fīsus,</i>    | <i>having trusted.</i>             |
| Jūro,           | <i>I swear,</i>      | <i>jūrātus,</i>  | <i>having sworn.</i>               |
| Coeno,          | <i>I dine,</i>       | <i>coenātus,</i> | <i>having dined.</i>               |
| Prandeo,        | <i>I breakfast,</i>  | <i>pransus,</i>  | <i>having breakfasted.</i>         |
| Nūbo,           | <i>I am married,</i> | <i>nupta,</i>    | <i>having married.</i>             |
| Odi,            | <i>I hate,</i>       | <i>ōsus,</i>     | <i>having hated, hating.</i>       |

§ 525. Some Deponents use their *Perfect* Participle both in an Active and a *Passive* sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so:—

Adipiscor, *I attain to,* *adēptus, having attained, or hav-*  
*ing been attained.*

Cōmītor, *I accompany,* *cōmītātus, &c.*

|                   |                           |  |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <b>Confiteor,</b> | <i>I confess.</i>         | <b>confessus, having confessed, or<br/>having been confessed</b> |
| <b>Mētior,</b>    | <i>I measure,</i>         | <b>mēnsus, &amp;c.</b>   |
| <b>Expērior,</b>  | <i>I try,</i>             | <b>expertus, &amp;c.</b>   |
| <b>Mēdītor,</b>   | <i>I practise,</i>        | <b>mēditatus, &amp;c.</b>  |
| <b>Testor,</b>    | <i>I call to witness,</i> | <b>testatus, &amp;c.</b>   |
| <b>Mōdēror,</b>   | <i>I control,</i>         | <b>mōdēratus, &amp;c.</b>  |
| <b>Pōpūler,</b>   | <i>I devastate,</i>       | <b>pōpūlatus, &amp;c.</b>  |
| <b>Partior,</b>   | <i>I divide,</i>          | <b>partitus, &amp;c.</b>   |
| <b>Pāciscor,</b>  | <i>I bargain,</i>         | <b>pactus, &amp;c.</b>   |

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:

(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

*Coquito Caesāris adventu, Ariovistus lēgātos ad eum mittit.* Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.  
*Dextrā Horcēles dītā omēn se accipere ait.* Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.—Liv.

(B.)

*Epāminondas quum vīcisset Lācēdāemōnīos āpud Mantīnēam, atq[ue] ipso grāvi vulnēre se exānlmāri vīdēret, quasivit, salvusno eset clipeus.* Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe.—Cic.

(For more examples see St. L. G. 332.)

§ 527. The Future Participle Active is used to denote (1) simple futurity; (2) intention or purpose: as,

*Delli mōritūre, O Delliūs, who art (one day) to die.*—Hor.  
*Perseus rēdiit, belli cāsum de integrō tentāfīrus, Perseus returned intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv.

*Obs.* The Future Participle occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

*Nam priusquam inēpias, consūlo; et ubi consūlēris, mātūre factō spūs est.* For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.—Sall.

*Nihil penī nequō mōdērāti hābēre.* They exercised no reflection, no restraint.—Sall.

§ 530. Frequent use of Particples.—Participles are very

often  
the  
V  
R  
and b  
T

songe  
1. In  
4, to  
to en  
to en  
In  
In  
Tu  
hard

1. In  
4, to  
to en  
to en  
In  
In  
Tu  
hard

2. Ag  
Rus  
woul  
The  
Ap  
—Cl  
Hū  
the u

3. Des  
decid  
consid  
was b  
numb  
RM  
Pr  
LIV.  
Cap  
Qa  
the (u  
Cor  
Com

1. H  
trusting  
(some)  
march  
us, after  
3. Par  
on the  
thus gi  
but by  
thirst w  
(passim)

often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predicates are united in a sentence : as

*Victa pietas jacet, Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate.—Ov  
Rursus in obliquum verso perrumpit aratro, Again he turns the plough,  
and breakes up (the soil) in a cross direction.—Virg.*

*Tythaens carmina compita exercitui rectavit, Tyrtaeus composed  
songs and repeated them to the army.—Justin.*

## SYNONYMS.

1. *Ineo*, II, *Itum*, 4, to enter upon ; figuratively, to engage in. *Intrœo*, II, *Itum*, 4, to go into a place : freq. followed by ad. in. *Intro*, avi, *Itum*, I (transitive), to enter, as by crossing a threshold or boundary. *Ingrédior*, gressus sum, 3, to enter (= intro) ; fig. to enter upon (= Ineo) :—

*Inte societatem cum aliquo, To form an association with a man.—Cic.*

*Intœit in tabernaculum, He goes into his tent.—Sall.*

*Tu illam domum ingrèdi ausus es ! tu illud Itum intrare ? Hadst thou the hardihood to enter that house, to cross that threshold !—Cic.*

2. *Agestis*, e, wild, as though growing or bred in the fields : fig. rude, boorish. *Rusticus*, a, um, living in the country : fig. clownish, awkward. The agrestis would violate the natural, the rusticus the conventional, laws of good-breeding. The former is opposed to *hincanus*, the latter to *urbinus* :—

*Agrestis et inhumana negligenter, Boorish and unrefined neglect (of person).—Cic.*

*Homo impetratum mōrum, agricola, et rusticus, A man unused to the ways of the world, a farmer and country-bred.—Cic.*

3. *Destino*, avi, *Itum*, 1 (de, sta-), lit. to fasten down ; make fast : fig. to form a decided resolution. *Décerno*, crêvi, *Cratum*, 3, to determine after deliberate consideration ; to decree. *Stātuo*, ui, *Itum*, 3, to station ; to settle (what was before undetermined). *Constituo*, ui, *Itum*, 3, to station (a large body or number) ; to settle (with anybody), to resolve :—

*Raten ancoris destinabat, He moored the rafts by anchors.—Cic.*

*Præter opiniōniū destinatam illeius, Contrary to a man's fixed opinion.—Liv.*

*Liv. Captives vincos in medio statuit, He set prisoners bound in the midst.—Liv.  
Quum apud flumen classem constituisset suam, Having stationed his fleet near  
the (mouth of) the river.—Nep.*

*Constitui cum hominibus, I made an appointment with the men.—Cic.*

*Constituēram ut in Arpinō mānērem, I had resolved to stay in Arpinum.—Cic.*

## EXERCISE LX.

- He dared not enter-on an unknown road without a guide ; trusting, however, to the good-fortune (*abl.*) of the king, he ordered (some) rustics to be laid-hold-of<sup>1</sup> who might serve-as<sup>2</sup> guides in the march (*gen.*). 2. There remains but this one decisive-contest<sup>3</sup> for us, after traversing<sup>4</sup> so many lands in (*in* with *acc.*) hope of victory.
- Parmenio, however, ignorant what was the fortune of the king on the right wing, checked his men ; Magaeus, when<sup>5</sup> space was thus given him for flight, crosses the Tigris, not in a straight course but by a circuitous-route.
4. Wearied and wounded (as they were), thisth was particularly oppressive to them ;<sup>6</sup> and in-every-direction<sup>7</sup> (passim) by all the streams they-lay-outstretched,<sup>7</sup> catching w<sup>8</sup>

gaping mouth the water as it flowed by. 5. The speech was received with the greatest alacrity on the part of the soldiers (*gen.*), who bade (*part.*) him lead them whithersoever he wished. 6. The other (*ille*) after having received the gifts and joined (a compact of) friendship, proceeds to carry out what-had-been-determined-on.<sup>6</sup> 7. Alexander restrained his soldiers from ravaging<sup>7</sup> Asia, affirming<sup>10</sup> that those things ought not to be destroyed which they were come to possess (*sut. part.*). 8. The king sent Hephaestion into the region of Bactria<sup>11</sup> to provide supplies against the winter. 9. Arsaces ravaged<sup>12</sup> Cilicia with fire and sword, in-order-to-make a desert for the foe: whatever could be of use<sup>13</sup> he destroyed<sup>12</sup> (*corrumpo*), in-order-to-leave the soil barren and naked. 10. He ordered<sup>12</sup> thirty thousand of the younger men to be collected from all the provinces, and brought to him, armed; intending-to-hold-them at once (as) hostages and soldiers. 11. Vercingetorix was charged with treachery, because by his departure the Romans had come at so-favourable<sup>14</sup> an opportunity and with such speed: "he wished," they said, "rather to have the supremacy (*regnum*) in Gaul (*gen.*) by the permission of Caesar than by their good-will."

<sup>1</sup> Exēpīo, cēpli, ceptum, 3, to meet and stop on the way.

<sup>2</sup> Say, be.

<sup>3</sup> Disserim, inis, n.

<sup>4</sup> Abl. absol. (finētior).

<sup>5</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>6</sup> Say, particularly parched (pērō).  
them: the predicates *wereared* and *wounded* agreeing with the object of the verb.

<sup>7</sup> Say, had stretched o' their bodies: prostrēre, strāvi, strālum, 3.

<sup>8</sup> Destināta.

<sup>9</sup> Use *subs.* (pōplūatio).

<sup>10</sup> Praefitūs.

<sup>11</sup> Adj. Bactriānu, a, nn.

<sup>12</sup> Hist. present.

<sup>13</sup> See St. L. Gr. 297.

<sup>14</sup> Say, so great (tantus).

## LX.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative: as, *rēgendi*, of ruling; *rēgendo*, to, for, or by ruling; *ad rēgendūm*, for the purpose of ruling.

*Obs.* Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

*Gen.*—*Omnis lōquendi élégantia expōlitur scientiā littorūm*, Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature.—Cie.

*Dat.*—*Āqua nitrōsa utilis est bibendo*, Water impregnated with natron is useful for drinking.—Plin.

A  
viven  
honor  
A  
—Cie  
0

§ 5  
the p  
Pa  
famil  
expens  
Di  
Diogen  
and th

§ 5  
necess  
mean  
from  
struct

(C  
NOT

§ 53  
the Ge  
stantiv

Dilig  
obs.  
(L)

§ 536  
than t  
with est

PL. L.

## THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE. 145

*Acc.* — Br̄eve tempus aetatis satis longum est ad b̄ene honesteque vivendum, *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably.* — Cic.

*Abl.* — Orātor in dicendo exercitatus, *An orator practised in speaking.* — Cic.

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions: otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

**§ 533.** The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

Parimōnia est scientia vītāndi sumptūs sp̄ēcūos, aut ars re familiari mōderāte utēndi, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation.* — Sen.

Diōgenes dicebat, artem se trādēre vēra ac falsa dijūdicandi, *Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false.* — Cic.

**§ 534.** The Gerundive Participle signifies that a thing is necessary or proper to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb est, sunt, etc., in agreement with a Substantive, to signify that something ought to be done.

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the Neuter Gender along with the Verb est, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the case of its Verb.

*NOTE.* The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case (comp. St. L. G. 294).

**§ 535.** (A.) If the verb is one that governs an Accusative, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive in gender, number, and case: as,

Diligentia est cōlēnda, *We must practise diligence.* — Cic.

*Obs.* Such a construction as poenas timendum est, we must fear punishment (Luor.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

**§ 536.** (B.) If the verb is one that governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally with est, in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

PE. L.—IV.

L

*Resistendum s̄enectūti est, We must resist old-age.—Cic.  
Corpōri subveniendum est, We must aid the body.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

*Obs.* 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

*Obs.* 3. But the Gerundives of some Deponent Verbs which govern an Ablative, as fruor, fūtor, fungor, are used both impersonally and in agreement with substantives : as,

*Utendum ērit verbis iis, quibus jam consuetudo nostra non dūtur, We shall have to employ words which our present usage does not employ.—Cic.*

*Non pāranda nōbis sōlum sāpientia, sed frēnda etiam est, We must not only get wisdom, but enjoy the benefit of it.—Cic.*

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place :—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case : thus

*Ars puēros ēducandi difficultis est  
becomes*

*Ars puērōrum ēducandōrum difficultis est*

in the following way : (1.) The Substantive *puēros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *ēducandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *ēducandi* is changed into the Gerundive *ēducandus, a, um.* (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *ēducandōrum*. For example :

*Nihil Xénōphonti tam rēgāle vīdētur, q̄iam stūdiū agri cōlēndi,  
Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.—Cic.*

*Rēgulus rētēndi officiū causā cōficiātūm subiit vōluntārium, Regulus for the sake of keeping his duty submitted to voluntary torture.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a neuter Adjective : as,

*(Pars hōnesti) in trībūndo suūmū cōique versātur, A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.—Cic.*

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a Purpose or Result : as,

*Valērius consul cōmītia collēgāe subrogāndo hābuit, Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing himself a fresh colleague.—Liv.*

*Dēcomītri lēgitib⁹ scribūndis, Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.—  
LIV.*

## THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE. 147

### SYNONYMS.

1. **Vasto.** *āvi, ētum, ī (vastus), to lay waste. Pōpūlor, ātus sum, ī (pōpūlus), prop. to strip of inhabitants; to ravage (by pillage and fire). Dēpōpūlor, ātus sum, ī (intensive of preceding), utterly to ravage:—*

*Noctu pōpūlābātūs agror, He ravaged the country by night.—Cic.*

*Agros et urbem dēpōpūlātūs est, He laid waste country and town.—Llv.*

*Omnia ferro et incendis vastūre, To lay all waste with fire and sword.—Llv.*

2. **Primo,** at first, has reference to time. **Primum,** first, first'ly, to order or arrangement:—

*Nēque illi erēdēbam primo, Nor did I at first believe it.—Ter.*

*Primum līgitū est de hōnesio, tum de ūlli dissērendūn, First we have to discuss the honourable, next the useful.—Cic.*

3. **Dēmūm,** at length, not till now. **Dēnique** (opp. to *primum*), finally, in short. **Tandem,** at last, often after many efforts or disappointments. **Postrēmō,** last in order of time, lastly:—

*Vab! nunc dēmūm intellīgo, Bless me, I see it now! Ter.*

*En dēmūm vēra est lāntellīta, That, and nothing short of it, is true friendship.—Sall.*

*Dēnique quid rēlīqui hābēmus? Finally what have we left?—Sall.*

*Jun tandem Itāliae fūgientes prendimūs Gras, Now at last we grasp the flying coasts of Italy.—Virg.*

*Quaero postrēmō, Lastly I ask, &c.—Cic.*

### PHRASES.

Eng. *It is said that a stone fell from heaven.* Lat. *Dicitur lōpis de cœlo lapus esse.*

" *I think I ought not to omit.*

" *Mīhi prætermittendum non cōdētur*

" *The states were unable to pay.*

" *Civitatis solvendo non cōvant.*

" *To make away with a man.*

" *Aliquem vīta privāre.*

" *To join battle.*

" *Proelium committēre.*

### EXERCISE LXI.

1. The three tribunes, when (*postquam*) it became evident (*apāreo*) that the Volscians would not join battle with them, parted (*discēdo*) into three divisions to (*ad*) devastate their territories. 2. A plan was entered upon of surprising<sup>1</sup> the warlike<sup>2</sup> enemy by means of an ambuscade. 3. So alarming tidings<sup>3</sup> had been brought to Rome that, laying aside now their hatred for the decemviri, the senate<sup>4</sup> decreed that night-watches should be maintained (*hābēo*) within (*in*) the city. 4. Minucius had neither the same fortune nor (the same) vigour of mind in action:<sup>5</sup> for while no serious<sup>6</sup> disaster was sustained (by him), he timidly<sup>7</sup> confined himself to his camp (*abl.*). 5. Meantime the Flamen of Quirinus<sup>8</sup> and the Vestal Virgins, abandoning all concern for their own property, held a consultation which of the sacred things they should carry<sup>9</sup> with them, and which should be left behind. 6. Both the friendly and the unfriendly had been persuaded<sup>10</sup> that there was no man (living) at the time<sup>11</sup> (who was) so great in war. 7. When the Gauls summoned the Romans to surrender (*subs.*) on-the-ground-that-they-were-

starving,<sup>12</sup> in order to<sup>13</sup> remove<sup>14</sup> that impression, it is said that bread was tossed from the Capitol to the posts of the enemy. 8. It is not denied that Demosthenes possessed very great eloquence;<sup>15</sup> but it is also agreed that he was very fond of hearing Plato. 9. And since I am speaking of orators, I think I ought not to pass by those two thunderbolts of the forum, Tiberius and Caius Gracchus. 10. He determined that since this charge did not seem possible to be disproved,<sup>16</sup> all the ship-captains<sup>17</sup> (who were) the witnesses to his guilt must be made away with. 11. You fixed<sup>18</sup> the expenses of the ambassadors at too high a sum, though the states were not able to pay it. 12. The property of many citizens is-at-stake, which you must care for<sup>19</sup> both on your own account and on that of the republic.

<sup>1</sup> Capto, ēvi, ītum, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Fērox, ūcis.

<sup>3</sup> Say, so great alarms.

<sup>4</sup> Patres.

<sup>5</sup> Say, in carrying on (the) business  
nēgōtiūm gērēre).

<sup>6</sup> Magnēpē : St. L. Gr. 546, 4.

<sup>7</sup> Adjective : St. L. Gr. 343.

<sup>8</sup> Quīfrīnālls, e.

<sup>9</sup> Use pass. (gerundive).

<sup>10</sup> See St. L. Gr. 284, Obs. 2 : friendly,

unfriendly, acquus, Iniquus.

<sup>11</sup> Ea tempestāte.

<sup>12</sup> Say, by hunger.

<sup>13</sup> Causē, foll. by gerundive.

<sup>14</sup> Āverto, ti, sum, 3.

<sup>15</sup> Vis dīcendi.

<sup>16</sup> Tollo, sustēli, sublātum, 3.

<sup>17</sup> Nāvarchus, i.

<sup>18</sup> Say, you determined (dēcēno) to

large expenses for the ambassadors.

<sup>19</sup> Considio, ui, ītum, 3 (gerundive).

## LXII.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *u* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive : as,

Fābius Pictor Delphos ad ōrāctūm mīssus est scītātūm quībus p̄rēclībus dēos possent plācīre, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

*Cibūtūm iro* (or, of several persons, *cibūtūm discedēre*), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Thēmīstocles.....Argos hābilātūm concessit, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of Manner, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jūcundus, pleasant*; *ſiciliſ, easy*; *hōnestus, honourable*; *erēdibilis, credible*,

admirabilis, wonderful; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in what respect they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam jucundum cognitu at quo auditu, quam sapientibus sententias gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?—Cic.

Id dictu quam re facilis, That were easier in the saying than in the doing.—Liv.

Nefas est dictu, There were an impiety in so saying!—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus (once) uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pudet*: as,

Pudet dictu, I am ashamed as I say it!—Agr. 32.

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,  
Mirabile dictu, Marvellous to relate!—Virg.

#### SYNONYMS.

1. Légatus, *i. m.* (*lēgo*), an ambassador; also a lieutenant. Orātor, *ōris, m.* (*ōrō*), one who pleads a cause or speaks for another, an envoy, a spokesman; an orator. Rhētor, *ōris, m.* (*ρήτωρ*), a rhetorician, one who gives lessons in rhetoric:—

Pyrrhus de captiuis rēdimendis missus orātor, Pyrrhus was sent as envoy respecting the ransoming of the prisoners.—Cic.

Rhētor māgister dēclānandi, A rhetorician (is a) professor of declamation.—Cic.

Grātūlor (*grātūs*) atū sum, *I*, to congratulate, wish one joy: less freq. to give thanks. It has a variety of constructions. Grātōr, *ātūs, I* (chiefly poet.), to give thanks, congratulate. Congrātūlōr (*con*, grātūlor) is used, generally of many persons, in the same sense as grātūr:—

Grātūlor tibi affīnitāte vīl, I congratulate you on your alliance with the man.—Cic.

Mīhi de filio grātūlārīs, You congratulate me on my son.—Cic.

Quā in rē tibi grātūlōr, On which matter I offer you my congratulations.

Ad coenam vōcānt, adūventum grātūlāntur, They invite him to supper, they welcome his arrival.—Tac.

Eāmus Jōvi Maxīmo grātūlātūm, Let us go and give thanks to Jupiter most great.—Scipio in Cēll.

Si mīhi tūm essent omnes congrātūlāti, If all had then joined to congratulate me.—Cic.

Jōvis templū grātāntes vāntesque dēlēunt, They repair in thankful procession to the temple of Jupiter.—Liv.

Grātātūr rēdīctūs, He congratulates them on their return.—Virg.

. Et serves to connect, in the most general manner, words or sentences which may be deemed of equal importance. Que indicates a closer connection, as when one thing is an appendage of another. It is always attached as an enclitic to the word to which it belongs. Atque (ad, que) or ac is similar to que, but gives more importance to what is added. Ac is rather used before consonants (excepting e): atque before vowels and consonants.

#### PHRASE.

Sug. If it may be said without impiety, Lat. Si hoc fas est dictu

## EXERCISE LXII.

1. The people of Veii, quelled<sup>1</sup> by (their) defeat, sent envoys to Rome to ask for peace.<sup>2</sup> 2. When the war with the Helvetii was finished, ambassadors from almost the whole of Gaul (*gen.*) came to congratulate Caesar.<sup>3</sup> 3. The viceroys<sup>4</sup> of the king of Persia sent ambassadors to Athens, to complain that Chabrias was waging war against the king, in alliance-with<sup>5</sup> the Egyptians.<sup>6</sup> 4. Upon the Saguntines requesting<sup>7</sup> (to be allowed) to go to see Italy, guides were given them, and letters were sent to the different<sup>8</sup> towns (instructing them) to receive the Spaniards courteously.<sup>9</sup> 5. Hannibal (though) unconquered in Italy, was recalled to defend his country against P. Scipio, son of the Scipio<sup>10</sup> whom he had routed first at the Rhone, a second time at the Po, a third time at the Trebia.<sup>11</sup> 6. The soul of man can be compared with nothing else than with God himself, if this may be said without impiety.<sup>12</sup> 7. Nor does he go further in narration than to state what needs to be known.<sup>13</sup> 8. Though they had nowhere ventured on<sup>14</sup> anything worth being related, they agreed, for two months<sup>15</sup> pay and corn, to a truce for thirty days.<sup>16</sup> 9. He proves to them that it would be an easy matter<sup>17</sup> to carry off their enterprise,<sup>18</sup> because he himself was shortly about to obtain (*fut. part.*) the supreme power in his own state (*gen.*).<sup>19</sup> 10. Hannibal, incredible to tell, in the space-of-two-days<sup>20</sup> and two nights, reached Adrumetum, which is distant from Zama about three hundred miles.

<sup>1</sup> Subiго, egl, actuū, 3. *Defeat, ad-*  
*versa pugna.* (Clades is a great or dis-  
astrous defeat.) <sup>2</sup> Praefecti.

<sup>3</sup> Say, together with (una).

<sup>4</sup> Abl. absol.: to request, pēto, Ivi,  
Itum, 8.

<sup>5</sup> Say, through the towns, per oppida.

<sup>6</sup> Say, of him (is).

<sup>7</sup> Part. constr., omitting though: for  
nowhere anything, say nothing anywhere

<sup>8</sup> Bimestrīs, c.

<sup>9</sup> Perfacile factū.

<sup>10</sup> Cōnīta (neut. pl.).

<sup>11</sup> Space of two days, bīduum.

Sec  
211  
212  
213  
214

215  
216  
217

218  
219  
220

221  
222

223  
224

225  
226  
227

228

229

## QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

**Sect.**

211. What may the subject of a sentence be?

212. Can the Infinitive Mood stand as the subject? Why?

213. What may the predicate of a sentence be?

214. When is a substantive said to be in apposition w<sup>th</sup> another substantive? What is usually the case, number, and gender of the latter substantive?

215. When does the Predicate usually follow the gender and number of the original subject? When does it usually agree with the apposition rather than with the original subject?

216. When the English words 'as' or 'when' are omitted in Latin does apposition take place? Give an example.

217. In what respects does a verb agree with its subject?

218. If two or more substantives form the joint subject, what will be the number of the verb?

219. What is the rule when subjects of different persons have a common predicate?

220. If the subject be a collective substantive, what is usually the number of the verb?

221. In what respects does an adjective agree with a noun?

222. Does the perfect participle in the compound tenses of the passive voice follow the same rule?

223. What rules must be observed when an adjective or participle is predicated of two or more subjects at once?

224. In what respect does the Relative agree with its Antecedent?

225. Suppose the Predicate of the Relative to be of a different gender from the Antecedent, with which does the Relative usually agree? Give an example.

**Sect.**

230. Suppose the Antecedent be a whole proposition, how is it treated? What is then used in 'end of the simple Relative'? Give an example.

231. What does the Nominative Case denote?

232. Does the Nominative ever denote the Predicate? After what four classes of Verbs especially?

233. What does the accusative denote? What kind of verbs govern the Accusative?

234. What Accusative frequently follows Intransitive Verbs? Give an example.

235. Explain how Lugeo, Horreo, &c., often govern an Accusative. In what writers is this idiom chiefly found?

236. Name the Prepositions which, in composition with intransitive verbs of motion, give them a transitive force.

237. Name the Prepositions which, in composition with intransitive verbs of motion, frequently give them a transitive force.

238. Name the Preposition which gives a transitive force to intransitive verbs of rest, such as jaceo.

239. With Pudet, Piget, &c., what cases are used? What do these cases respectively represent? Give examples.

240. Name the impersonal verbs which take an accusative of the Person, but no Genitive after them.

241. What verbs take a double accusative after them? Give examples.

242. Name other verbs, many of which take a similar construction. What do the two accusatives represent?

243. After what verbs is the Factive Accusative used? Give examples of it.

244. What compound Transitive Verbs take after them a double accusative? Give examples.

**SECT.**

247. In what case are the names of Towns, and small Islands, put after verbs signifying motion towards?

249. In what case are duration of Time, and extent of Space, put after 'how long,' 'how far,' &c.?

251. By what writers is the Accusative of Closer Definition generally used? What does it indicate? What is the usual construction in Prose?

252. How is a Passive Verb, by a Greek idiom, often used? Illustrate this by a quotation from Horace.

254. Name the expressions in which the Accusative is used adverbially.

257. What rule is to be observed with the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question 'Where?'

258. What other substantives also follow this rule?

259. In what case are names of Towns and small Islands put in answer to whither? Do the Poets extend the use of this construction? Give an example.

260. What two Accusatives have the same construction as the names of towns? Give an example.

261. In what case are names of towns and small islands put in answer to 'Whence?' Give an example.

263. State the general rule for the Genitive. Express in Latin *a ship of gold*.

264. Name some ablatives on which the Genitive depends. What is the usual position of the Genitive with these words?

265. In what case does the person or thing, to which anything belongs, usually stand?

266. What Genitive often follows the verb 'Sum'? What English word must then be expressed in the translation? With what words is this construction not admissible?

269. What do you understand by the Partitive Genitive?

270. Name the Adjectives and Pronouns after which the Partitive Genitive is used. May these neuters ever depend on Prepositions?

271. After what kind of Adverbs, used sub-

**SECT.**

stantively, is the Partitive Genitive found? Name these adverbs.

272. After what other words is the Partitive Genitive used?

273. Give examples of each.

274. If a substantive of quality, quantity, &c., have an adjective joined with it, in what case does it stand? Can the Genitive and Ablative ever be used without an adjective?

276. Name the class of adjectives which govern a genitive of the object. Give an example of each. What other adjectives follow the same rule?

277. Is there any difference of meaning between *patiens laborum* and *patiens laboris*? Give an explanation of it.

278. What case do verbs of Remembering and Forgetting usually govern?

279. After what verbs is the Genitive used to denote the Charge? What other construction is sometimes found? With what word is this the only admissible construction? With what adjectives is the Genitive also used?

280. How is the Genitive sometimes used after verbs of condemning? Is any other case ever used? Give an example of each.

281. By what words is the price or value expressed after verbs? How is a definite price expressed? Name some Genitives that are used to express of no value at all.

282. Name the verbs of feeling which take a genitive of the cause of emotion. What case do Miseror and Commiseror govern?

283. How is the Genitive used with Interest and Resent? What construction must be used in the case of Personal Pronouns? How is Resent generally used?

284. What case is used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal?

288. After what Verbs may the Dative be used? What construction must be used when for signifies in defence of, on behalf of?

289. Explain the Dative with *Vaco. Nubo.* &c.

**SECT.**

290. WI

C  
cl  
H  
ve  
an  
co  
In  
ac  
Ro  
'S  
acc  
sat  
292. Wha  
Da  
sat  
con  
two  
293. How  
fect  
294. After  
Dat  
295. What  
Dat  
Lice  
296. What  
val  
fied  
var  
297. What  
sign  
How  
After  
of  
used  
foun  
How  
ness  
306. After  
Separ  
is the  
307. After v  
often  
308. What  
est?  
310. After v  
of Or  
311. What d  
after  
tives f  
a Pa

QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

158

SECT.

290. What is meant by the 'Dativus Ethicus'? With what dative is it closely connected?

291. Name the verbs, which though apparently transitive, govern a Dative. How must the Passives of these verbs be used? What case do Juro and Adjuro govern? What is the construction of Medeor and Adulor? In what sense does Aemulor take an accusative? What case do Jubeo, Rego, and Guberno take after them? 'Some verbs have different meanings according as they govern the Accusative or Dative.' Give examples.

292. What compound Verbs govern the Dative? What verbs take an accusative in addition? Name some compound Verbs that often take two constructions. Give examples.

293. How is the Dative used after the Perfect Tenses Passive?

294. After what part of the Verb does the Dative regularly express the Agent?

295. What impersonal Verbs govern the Dative? What is often found with Licet, &c.?

296. What is 'Sum' with a Dative equivalent to? When a name is specified after 'Eas,' or any similar verb, into what case is it attracted?

297. What two Datives are used with verbs signifying to be, or become, &c.? How is a Dative of result often used?

298. After what Adjectives may the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage be used? What construction is often found with Similis and Dissimilis? How may an Adjective denoting fitness or ability be construed?

299. After what Verbs is the Ablative of Separation or origin found? What is the usual construction in Prose?

307. After what adjectives is the ablative often used?

308. What is the construction of *Opus est*?

310. After what participles is the Ablative of Origin especially found?

311. What does the Ablative usually express after Verbs, Particles, and Adjectives? When is the Ablative, after a Passive Verb used with a Preposi-

tion? When is it used without a Preposition?

312. When is the Ablative of manner generally used without 'Cum'? When is the Ablative of manner generally used with 'Cum'? Name the Substantives which never take 'Cum.' When will the English 'with' always be translated by 'Cum'? When will it always be translated by the Ablative only?

313. How is the Ablative used with Intransitive Verbs?

314. What sort of Adjectives are followed by the Ablative of Cause? Name examples.

315. Name the Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative. What were these Deponents originally? How is the Ablative with Potior probably governed? When does Potior take a Genitive?

316. What Verbs and Adjectives are used with an Ablative of Price? Why is the Ablative used to express the price? How is an indefinite price expressed? Name the exceptions to this rule.

317. What Verbs and Adjectives govern an Ablative of Means or Manner? What other case is sometimes used with them? What case does 'indigo' always take? What other verbs come under this rule? What other adjective also governs an ablative?

318. How is the Ablative of Quality used? In what respect is it like the Genitive of Quality?

319. How is the Ablative used after Comparatives? What rule must be observed when two Predicates are compared?

320. What case do Dignus and Indignus govern?

321. What does the Ablative of Measure denote? and how does it occur? Give examples.

322. How is the answer to 'When' expressed? Give examples.

323. If a Substantive denoting time is without any attributive word, what rule is to be observed? Name any exceptions to this rule.

## SECT.

324. How is the answer to 'within what time' expressed?

325. How is the answer to 'how long before' or 'how long after' expressed? Give the forms of expression that may be used with the same meaning. When may 'Ante' or 'Post' used in this way govern a dependent proposition? Give the forms that may be used when 'ante' or 'post' are followed by *quam* and a verb?

326. How is the answer to the question 'Where' expressed?

327. What is the rule for the construction of the names of Towns and small Islands?

328. Name the Ablatives which are used without a preposition in answer to the question 'Where'?

329. With what Adjective may a noun be placed in the Ablative without a preposition?

330. What rule must be observed in all other cases? Do the Poets observe these restrictions?

332. How do you define the Ablative Absolute? How may this Ablative be explained? How must the Perfect Participle active in English usually be dealt with in Latin?

333. How is the Substantive sometimes represented, in the Ablative Absolute? With what words does this construction most frequently occur?

334. Since the verb *Sum* has neither Present nor Perfect Participle, what often occurs in this construction?

339. How is a Masculine or Neuter adjective often used? What must be expressed if the termination of the adjective would not be a sufficient guide?

341. How is an Adjective sometimes used in Latin? With what words is this especially the case?

343. How are Adjectives often used with Verbs? Name some that are most frequently used in this way. Which of these are of rare occurrence?

345. What Adjectives may be used with a Noun, to substitute an English relative clause with 'to be'? What

## SECT.

is the difference between 'Primus dixit' and 'Primum dixit'?

346. In what case is the second member of a comparison put when the connection is made by *quam*?

347. If the first member of a comparison be governed by a word which does not belong to the second, what must then be used? If the first member of the clause is in the accusative, in what case is the second frequently placed?

348. What case does the comparative frequently govern?

349. How are *Plus*, *Amplus*, and *Minus* used with words of quantity?

350. When two adjectives are compared together, how is the comparison made?

351. What does the Comparative degree often denote? How may the same notion be otherwise expressed?

353. What forms are used to express the highest degree possible?

354. By what other words may a superlative be strengthened?

355. In what other way may comparison be made?

356. How would 'All the wisest,' 'All the best,' and similar phrases be expressed?

357. When are the Personal Pronouns not usually expressed?

359. What is the distinction between *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *nostrī*, *vestrī*? Are *Nostrī*, *Vestrī*, plural or singular?

360. To what do the cases of *Sui* and the Possessive Pronoun *Suis* always refer?

361. In principal sentences to what does *Suis* sometimes refer?

362. In subordinate propositions to what may the cases of *Sui*, and the possessive *Suis* sometimes refer?

363. When are the Possessive Pronouns frequently omitted in Latin? What do the Possessive Pronouns often denote?

364. What is the person of the Demonstrative 'Hie,' and how may it be often translated?

365. What is the person of the Demon-

366. W

368. W

369. W

370. To

371. W

375. How

376. How

377. Wit

379. Nam

381. Wh

382. By w

383. How

384. How

385. What

386. In w

388. What

389. What

390. What

392. What

393. What

394. What

395. What

QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

155

Secr.

stative 'Ille'? What does it often denote?

366. When *Hic* and *Ille* are used together, how are they distinguished?

368. What is the person of the Demonstrative *Iste*, and what does it denote?

369. What other signification has 'Iste'? Are these distinctions of meaning also found in the adverbs derived from these pronouns?

370. To what does the pronoun 'Is' refer?

371. When are the Accusative and Dative of this pronoun often omitted?

375. How may 'Idem' often be translated when it denotes similarity or opposition to something already mentioned?

376. How may 'Ipse' often be translated?

377. With what does 'Ipse' agree when joined to a personal pronoun?

379. Name the principal relative pronouns with their respective correlative. Give the corresponding adverbs. Are *qualis*, *quantus*, &c., always expressed after *talis*, *tantis*, &c.? Is it to be supposed that the relative 'qui' is regularly preceded by 'is' or 'idem'? When are these pronouns to be used?

381. When is the Superlative in Latin inserted in the Relative clause?

382. By what may 'qualis', 'quantus', be governed in their own clause?

383. How do you distinguish 'aliquis' from 'quis'?

384. How is 'Quisquam' used?

385. What does 'Quidam,' a certain one, denote?

386. In what sort of propositions are 'Quisquam' and 'Ullus' used?

388. What does 'Quisque' denote? What is its position in principal sentences?

389. What other use of 'Quisque' may be noticed?

390. What do 'Alius' and 'Alter' respectively denote when repeated?

392. What does the Present Tense express?

393. What is meant by the Historical Present?

394. What does the Past-Imperfect Tense denote?

395. What else does this Tense denote?

Sectr.

397. How is the Past-Imperfect of the Verb *Sum* sometimes used?

399. What is the meaning of the Future Tense?

400. In what senses is the Perfect Tense used in Latin?

401. For what is the Perfect often used after 'postquam,' &c.? What does 'postquam' take when a precise time is specified?

402. What does the Past-Perfect Tense indicate?

405. What does the Future Perfect Tense indicate?

407. When are both the Future Perfect and the Simple Future Tenses sometimes used in Latin?

408. How is the Indicative Mood used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs?

409. What interrogative particles are also used to indicate a question?

410. What is the use of the particle 'ne'? How is it placed?

411. What is the use of 'Nonne'?

412. What does the particle 'num' indicate?

414. What particles are used in asking double direct questions? How are *utrum*, *an*, and *ne* respectively placed? How are *neque* and *annon* written? What particle is often omitted?

415. Is 'an' ever used in single questions?

416. Give the sequence of the interrogative particles and double questions.

421. What does the Subjunctive Mood express? What is it therefore used to indicate?

422. On what is the Subjunctive Mood always dependent?

423. What is the fundamental rule for the sequence of the tenses in the Subjunctive Mood?

424. Of what parts does an hypothetical sentence consist? When is the verb of each member of the sentence in the Indicative? When are both verbs in the Subjunctive?

426. When are the present and perfect tenses of the Subjunctive used with the conditional conjunctions?

427. When are the past tenses used with the same conjunctions?

Sect.

432. What other use is there of the Subjunctive?

433. What mood is used after words of doubt or uncertainty?

434. What is an Indirect Question? In what mood will its verb stand?

435. In indirect single questions how is 'num' used?

436. In indirect double questions what particles may be used?

437. After what expressions is the particle 'an' used? What do the phrases 'hanc scio an,' 'nescio an,' &c., imply?

438. What is meant by the 'subjunctivus dubitativus'?

439. How is the Subjunctive often used without any preceding verb?

440. What kind of wish does the Present Tense Subjunctive express?

441. How is the first person plural of the same tense used?

442. Is a verb of wishing often expressed? What construction may then follow? How is 'opto' generally construed? What are 'volo,' 'nolo,' and 'malo' frequently joined to?

443. With what conjunctions is the Subjunctive used to express purpose or result?

444. How is the conjunction 'ut' used in connexion with the Subjunctive Mood?

445. After what verbs are 'ut' and 'ne' used with the Subjunctive, the former in a positive, the latter in a negative sense?

446. In what sense is 'quo' used with the Subjunctive? When is 'quo' chiefly used? What is it then equivalent to? Is 'quo' ever used to denote a result?

447. How is 'ne' used with the Subjunctive? To what is it then equivalent?

448. When a purpose is signified, what is used for 'ut nemo,' 'ut nullus,' &c.?

449. If only a result is signified, what forms must be used?

450. What is the difference between 'ut' and 'ne,' after verbs signifying fear or anxiety? Instead of 'ut,' what is sometimes found?

Sect.

451. When is 'quin' used with the Subjunctive? Give an example of each class. Are the expressions 'hanc multum abfuit,' 'minimum abfuit,' &c., ever personal?

452. In what sense is 'qui' used with the Indicative? What does it then express?

453. After what sort of words is 'quoniam' used?

454. What is meant by *Oratio Obliqua*?

455. Name the changes of mood that take place when a speech is transferred to the oblique form?

456. On what verb, expressed or implied, do all direct statements become dependent when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*?

457. In what mood are the subordinate verbs of Relative sentences placed in the *oratio obliqua*? Suppose a statement of the writer's, not of the speaker's, be interwoven in the *oratio obliqua*, in what mood will its verb stand?

458. In what mood will questions be placed when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*? On what word will they be dependent?

459. How is a rhetorical question expressed in the *oratio obliqua*?

460. How are commands and exhortations expressed when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*? What word would be either expressed or understood?

461. In what mood do the verbs remain in the *oratio obliqua* which were used by the speaker in the Subjunctive?

462. When do the relative and relative particles take the Subjunctive?

463. When is *qui*, *que*, *quod*, followed by the Subjunctive? What common phrase may be referred to this rule?

464. When stating the reason for something, what mood does the relative take?

465. How may the force of 'qui,' when introducing a reason, be augmented? Is this ever found with the Indicative?

466. When 'qui' denotes a purpose, what mood does it take?

| Sect. | Sect.  |
|-------|--|
|       | 479. When<br>W                                 |
|       | 480. After<br>cias                             |
|       | 482. After<br>ju                               |
|       | 483. When<br>tiv                               |
|       | 484. How<br>tor                                |
|       | 485. How<br>of t                               |
|       | 486. When<br>Qu<br>of<br>dive                  |
|       | 487. When<br>'No<br>Quo<br>the<br>with<br>juic |
|       | 489. After<br>Quoc                             |
|       | 492. With w<br>chief<br>it?                    |
|       | 493. What f<br>with<br>ampl                    |
|       | 494. How is<br>With                            |
|       | 497. With v<br>const<br>until?                 |
|       | 498 How is                                     |
|       | 500. When<br>'quam,<br>Mood                    |
|       | 501. When<br>Indicat                           |
|       | 502. How an<br>constru                         |
|       | 503. What M<br>'Etiam                          |
|       | 504. What is t<br>In what<br>takes it          |
|       | 505. With w<br>Phrases<br>Subject              |
|       | 506. By what<br>chiefly                        |

QUESTIONS ON SYNTAX.

157

Sec<sup>n</sup>

479. Is 'qui' ever used to denote a result? With what mood is it then used?

480. After what adjectives is 'qui' especially so used?

482. After what expressions is the Subjunctive generally used?

483. When does 'quum' take the Subjunctive?

484. How is the sequence of events in historical narrative expressed?

485. How is 'quum' used with the tenses of the indicative?

486. When do the Conjunctions *Quod* and *Quia* take the Indicative? Which of the two states a reason more directly?

487. When is the Subjunctive used with 'Non Quod' or 'Non Quia'? Quote a passage which illustrates the difference between *Quia* or *Quod* with the Indicative and the Subjunctive.

489. After what Impersonal expressions is *Quod* with the Indicative used?

492. With what parts of speech is 'Quippe' chiefly used? What Moods follow it?

493. What force has 'Quippe' sometimes with the Indicative? Quote examples.

494. How is 'Quoniam' generally used? With what Mood?

497. With what Mood is 'Dum' whilst construed? With what is 'Dum' until construed?

498. How is 'Dummodo' construed?

500. When do the Conjunctions 'ante-quum,' &c., take the Subjunctive Mood?

501. When do they usually take the Indicative?

502. How are 'Quamvis' and 'Licet' construed?

503. What Moods do 'Quanquam,' 'Etsi,' 'Etiamsi,' take?

504. What is the Infinitive Mood in reality? In what cases may it be used? What takes its place in other Cases?

505. With what Impersonal Verbs and Phrases is the Infinitive used as a Subject?

506. By what writers is the Infinitive chiefly used as a *Direct Object*?

Sect. 507. What Verbs are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive?

509. What other Verbs are also thus construed?

510. What Impersonal Phrases are followed by the Accusative and the Infinitive? Name some which are usually followed by the Subjunctive.

511. How are Verbs of *Willingness* or *Permission* usually construed? Have they ever any other construction? How is 'Impero' sometimes construed?

512. What Verbs govern the Infinitive without an Accusative?

513. In what Case will a Predictive Adjective or Noun be when joined to an Infinitive Mood? Is the same Tense used in Latin as in English after 'Verbs of Wishing,' &c.?

514. What other Verbs govern the Infinitive?

516. How is the Infinitive used in Exclamations? Quote examples.

517. How do Historical Writers often use this Mood?

518. What circumlocution is used for the Future Infinitive? When is this especially the case?

520. How do Participle express the notion of the Verb? In what way is it chiefly used?

521. What case do Active Participles govern?

522. In what Participles is the Latin Verb deficient? What class of Verbs alone form a Perfect Participle? How is the lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive sometimes supplied?

523. What does the Imperfect Participle represent? What is often used instead of it?

524. What does the Perfect Participle Active represent? In what Verbs only is it found? Name the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense.

526. What sense belongs to the Perfect Participle of some Deponents? Name the principal ones in which this is the case.

## Sect.

526. In what two ways is the want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs supplied?

527. What does the Future Participle Active denote? With what verb does it most frequently occur?

528. How is the Nenter of the Perfect Participle sometimes used?

529. How are Participles oftentimes elegantly used in Latin?

530. What is the Gerund? In what Cases is it used? What often takes the place of the Nominative?

532. What construction have the cases of Gerunds? How only is the Accusative of the Gerund used?

533. Can the Gerund, like the verb, govern its proper case?

534. What does the Gerundive Participle signify? Name its various modes of construction. In what case is the Agent or Doer to be put?

535. If the Verb governs the Accusative

## Sect.

with what will the Gerundive agree? Is such a construction as 'Poem timendum est' usual?

536. If the Verb governs any other Case than the Accusative, how will the Gerundive be used? What case will the Gerundive govern in such instances? What is often omitted?

537. For what is the Gerundive often used? When? What change then take place? When is the Gerund to be preferred to the Gerundive?

538. For what is the Dative of the Gerundive often used?

539. What are the two Supines in *um* and *u* properly?

543. After what Verbs is the Supine in *um* used? What does it then denote?

544. After what adjectives is the Supine in *u* used? How may it be translated?

Abeo, 1  
abnivo, 7  
aboleo, 8  
ac, 149  
accendo,  
accido, 7  
accipio,  
acer, 6  
aceribus,  
acles, 4  
adimo, 51  
adipiscor,  
aduivo, 4  
admodum  
adolescens  
adversari  
aedes, 42  
aeger, 50  
aegre, 117  
aegrutio,  
aegrotatio,  
aemulus, 1  
aequalla, 5  
aequalls, 5  
aequor, 14  
aeternus, 1  
aevum, 19  
affatim, 71  
affinis, 42  
agger, 15  
agit, 57  
agnomini, 2  
agnoscō, 15  
agrestis, 14  
ales, 50  
alli, 36  
alimenta, 11  
aliquand, 1  
alites, 50  
altus, 76  
amans, 87  
amarus, 100  
amator, 87  
ambitio, 131  
ambitus, 131  
amens, 100  
amido, 26  
amictus, 69  
similis, 81  
mitto, 3  
annis, 6  
unplus, 21

## INDEX OF SYNONYMS.

ve agree  
Poem.

ther Case  
will the  
that case  
in such  
omitted?  
ve often  
changes  
n is the  
to the

the Gerun-

um and

Supine in  
it then

Supine in  
be trans-

| A.BEO.             | CARO.                  | CUNTES.           | DIVIS.         |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| <b>A.</b>          |                        |                   |                |
| Abeo, 128          | amo, 90                | catena, 25        | culpa, 17, 1   |
| abnuo, 76          | amoenus, 6             | campona, 86       | curitus, 60    |
| aboleo, 8          | ancle, 72              | culcher, 27       | cuncti, 78     |
| ac, 149            | angor, 125             | celsus, 76        | cupiditas, 110 |
| accendo, 21        | angustus, 121          | ceruo, 7          | cupido, 110    |
| accido, 75         | anima, 8               | cortator, 107     | cupio, 15      |
| accipio, 12        | animus, 8              | ceteri, 36        | cura, 125      |
| acer, 6            | annales, 64            | cibus, 113        | curia, 16      |
| acerbus, 100       | antiquus, 32           | cito, 8           | curtus, 62     |
| aedes, 4           | aperte, 32             | civis, 134        | cutis, 67      |
| adimo, 51          | appello, 8             | civitas, 2        | cymba, 1       |
| adipiscor, 123     | arbitror, 6            | clarus, 27        |                |
| adiviso, 45        | arcutus, or artus, 124 | clementia, 100    |                |
| admodum, 128       | arditus, 76            | clipeus, 72       |                |
| adolescens, 120    | arditus, 73            | codex, 123        |                |
| adversarius, 21    | arrogantia, 59         | codicilli, 67     |                |
| aedes, 42          | asceli, 14             | coepi, 81         |                |
| aeger, 50          | asperior, 131          | cogitationem, 21  |                |
| aegre, 117         | astus, 116             | cognosco, 16      |                |
| aegrifudo, 125, 59 | atque, 149             | collis, 15        |                |
| segrotatio, 59     | authoritas, 117        | colo, 14          |                |
| segrotus, 50       | andacia, 34            | colonis, 131      |                |
| semnitus, 107      | aufero, 51             | columba, 55       |                |
| sequalla, 53       | aufugio, 14            | coma, 11          |                |
| sequalis, 53       | aura, 57               | comissatio, 80    |                |
| sequor, 14         | auxillior, 45          | comitia, 71       |                |
| aeternus, 10       | aveo, 15               | commoror, 55      |                |
| aevium, 19         | avis, 50               | communico, 93     |                |
| affatim, 73        |                        | concessum est, 46 |                |
| affilis, 43        |                        | cotellum, 40, 71  |                |
| agger, 15          |                        | concremo, 21      |                |
| agito, 57          |                        | confidencia, 14   |                |
| agnomen, 21        | bellua, 14             | congratulor, 149  |                |
| agnosco, 16        | bellum, 52, 10,        | conlivio, 8       |                |
| agrestia, 143      | benevolentia, 53       | conor, 113        |                |
| ales, 50           | bestia, 14             | consilium, 46     |                |
| all, 36            | bonus, 14              | constitutio, 143  |                |
| alimenta, 113      | brachium, 25           | conuetudo, 81     |                |
| aliquid, 15        | brevia, 62             | contemno, 131     |                |
| altes, 50          |                        | contentio, 90     |                |
| altus, 76          |                        | contingo, 90      |                |
| amans, 81          |                        | contul, 71        |                |
| amarus, 100        |                        | conventus, 71     |                |
| amator, 83         | Cactumen, 15           | convivium, 80     |                |
| ambitio, 131       | caeremonia, 84         | cathurnus, 62     |                |
| ambitus, 131       | caesaries, 11          | corium, 67        |                |
| amens, 100         | calamitas, 115         | corrumpo, 59      |                |
| amiclo, 26         | calliditas, 116        | crassus, 114      |                |
| amicetus, 69       | callis, 69             | creber, 32        |                |
| amicus, 83,        | capillitus, 11         | cremo, 21         |                |
| amitto, 74         | caput, 46              | creo, 71          |                |
| amula, 6           | cavvo, 97              | crinis, 11        |                |
| ampillus, 23       | caritas, 47            | crucifatus, 109   |                |
|                    | caro, 21               | crux, 47          |                |
|                    |                        | cubitus, 25       |                |
|                    |                        | diver, 14         |                |

## DIVITIA.

divitiae, 3  
divus, 19  
doceo, 10  
doctus, 36  
dolus, 116, 46  
dominatio, 5  
dorsum, 15  
duco, 21  
ducto, 21  
ductor, 29  
duelis, 6  
dux, 20

## E.

Edico, 93  
editus, 76  
edoco, 10  
educo, 29  
edico, 29  
effari, 93  
effero, 114  
effigies, 19  
effugio, 14  
eigenus, 11  
egro, 97  
egestas, 17  
egestas, 119  
egregius, 33, 64  
emilnens, 64  
emo, 40  
ensis, 23  
epistles, 50  
epulon, 80  
apulum, 80  
eripio, 51  
erro, 97  
erudio, 29, 10  
eruditus, 16  
esca, 113  
et, 149  
evenio, 75  
everriculum, 93  
e vestigio, 116  
exactio, 126  
excellens, 64  
excelsus, 76  
excipio, 11  
excors, 100  
exiguus, 62  
eximus, 33, 64  
eximo, 51  
eximatio, 81  
exitialis, 79  
exitiosus, 79  
expedio, 107  
experior, 107  
exemplo, 116  
extrico, 107

## F.

Facies, 37  
facinus, 18  
fallacia, 116, 46  
fallo, 6

## HABITUS.

fama, 33  
familus, 40  
famini, 42  
fari, 6  
fas est, 48  
fasti, 64  
fastidio, 131  
favor, 53  
felix, 21  
fera, 14  
ferre, 23  
fero, 24  
ferme, 23  
fero, 57  
festino, 139  
fideli, 8  
fideitas, 34  
fides, 78, 34  
fiducia, 34  
fidus, 8  
figura, 64  
firmus, 33  
flagitium, 1, 38  
flagito, 5  
flamma, 62  
flatus, 57  
fumen, 6  
fluvius, 6  
forma, 64  
fortunatus, 21  
fossa, 135  
fovea, 135  
frando, 6  
fraus, 116, 46  
frequens, 32  
fretum, 14  
frumentum, 31  
fruor, 62  
frustra, 5  
fugitivus, 107  
funda, 93

## G.

Gandeo, 59  
gazae, 3  
gemitus, 86  
genero, 71  
gestio, 59, 15  
gigno, 71  
giudius, 23  
grandaevus, 17  
grandis, 16  
grates agere, 88  
gratia, 137  
gratiam or gratias habere, 88  
gratiam referre, 88  
gratias agere, 88  
grator, 149  
gratulator, 148  
gravis, 7

## H.

Habito, 55  
habitus, 69

## INVIDIA.

historia, 64  
homo, 17  
honoratus, 40  
honestus, 40  
hospitalitas, 86  
hospidum, 86  
hostis, 21  
humanitas, 50  
humo, 134  
humus, 78

## I.

ico, 24  
ignavus, 45  
ignis, 62  
ignoro, 64  
illustris, 27  
imago, 19  
imbecculus, 33  
immanis, 16  
impedimenta, 88  
imperator, 20  
imperium, 53  
impertio, 93  
imperio, 123  
improbus, 109  
incendium, 62  
incendo, 21  
inchoo, 83  
incole, 135  
incipio, 83  
incolytus, 27  
incola, 134  
incolumis, 5  
indigo, 97  
indulgo, 8  
induo, 23  
industry, 64  
ineo, 143  
infans, 120  
infelicitas, 125  
infiammo, 21  
infortunium, 125  
ingens, 16  
ingredior, 141  
inimicilla, 123  
inimicus, 21  
innocentia, 50  
inopha, 139, 17  
iniquilinus, 134  
insanus, 100  
insecus, 45  
insignis, 64  
in (singulos) dics, 33  
insolentia, 59  
integer, 5  
integritas, 50  
inteligo, 13, 34  
interdum, 13  
interficio, 3  
interrogo, 137  
intolerantia, 59  
intro, 143  
introeo, 143  
invidea, 12

## MARE.

ira, 107  
iracundia, 107  
irascor, 45  
irritum facere, 5  
irritus, 5  
iter, 69  
iter facere, 28  
iterum, 120

## J.

Jucundus, 6  
jugum, 15  
juramentum, 122  
jus, 42  
jurandum, 122  
juvenis, 120  
juventa, 19  
juventas, 19  
juventus, 18

## L.

Labans, 33  
labor, 64  
laceritus, 25  
lacuna, 135  
lacus, 85  
laedo, 23, 128  
laetor, 59  
laqueus, 25  
legatus, 149  
letum, 8  
lex, 42  
liber, 123  
libertas, 113  
libet, 48  
licentia, 113  
licet, 48  
ligo, 116  
linquo, 75  
littera, 50  
littera, 67, 50  
litius, 33  
loca vasta, 55  
locuples, 118  
locus, 62  
longaevus, 17  
loquor, 6  
lucus, 120

## M.

Magnopere, 128  
maris, 23  
magnus, 16  
malus, 109  
mancipium, 40  
mancipo, 117  
maneo, 55  
manifeste, 93  
mansuetudo, 100  
manubiale, 109  
mare, 14

medeior, 1  
medium, 1  
memini, 1  
mendicta, 1  
meus, 8  
mercor, 40  
mero, 83  
meroet, 83  
merum, 3  
metuo, 2  
militia, 52  
misericordia, 1  
misereor, 1  
miseresco, 1  
misera, 123  
mencia, 3  
mostus, 111  
motio, 113  
molla, 57  
mons, 15  
monstrum, 6  
morbidus, 53  
morbis, 53  
mortigeror, 1  
mors, 8  
mox, 81  
multa, 17  
minutum, 128  
minumentum, 128  
munitio, 97  
murus, 3

## N.

Navis, 1  
navis oneraria, 1  
necto, 3  
necto, 116  
negligo, 131, 40  
nego, 76  
nemo, 69  
nemus, 120  
nequitquidem, 3  
neclo, 64  
necetus, 43  
nex, 8  
nexo, 116  
nihil, 100  
nimium, 100  
nitor, 113  
nobilis, 27  
nocens, 3  
nodo, 116  
nomen, 11  
nomino, 8  
nonparum, 13  
novus, 81  
nubo, 42  
nutius, 69  
numen, 20  
nundina, 40  
nundinor, 40

INDEX OF SYNONYMS.

131

| MENOR.            | PENETRIA.             | PROVINCIA.                    | SALUTARIS.    |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| mede, 48          | Obedio, 104, 29       | penitus, 113                  | prudens, 8    |
| medium, 67        | obeo, 23              | perceptor, or percunctor, 117 | prudentia, 55 |
| mēmīlī, 37        | obitus, 8             | percutio, 24                  | puer, 120     |
| mēndictas, 139    | oblitio, 8            | perdō, 74                     | pugio, 23     |
| meus, 8           | obsecro, 48           | perdere, 10                   | pugna, 4      |
| mercer, 40        | obsequio, 101         | perfinga, 107                 | puto, 6       |
| meteo, 83         | obsidio, 23           | perforhār, 28                 |               |
| meteo, 83         | obtempero, 104        | periclitor, 107               |               |
| metum, 13         | obtestor, 48          | periculum, 17                 |               |
| metuo, 2          | obtineo, 123          | peritus, 36                   |               |
| millitia, 52      | obvenio, 75           | permitto, 8, 57               |               |
| miserari, 10      | occasio, 20           | pernicious, 70                |               |
| miserere, 10      | occidio, 27, 3        | perpetua, 15                  |               |
| miseresco, 40     | odium, 123            | perquam, 128                  |               |
| miseria, 123      | offendo, 128          | peto, 5                       |               |
| mœnia, 3          | omnis, 78             | plenus, 11                    |               |
| mostus, 11        | onerardis, 7          | placet, 48                    |               |
| multor, 113       | onerosus, 7           | plaga, 91, 15                 |               |
| multis, 57        | opera, 64             | planetis, 86                  |               |
| mons, 15          | opes, 3               | plane, 21                     |               |
| monstrum, 83      | opinor, 6             | plango, 26                    |               |
| moribus, 40       | opitulari, 45         | plebs, 11                     |               |
| moribus, 59       | oppeto, 27            | plus, 23                      |               |
| morigeror, 104    | oppidum, 2            | poena, 109, 17                |               |
| motor, 27         | opportunitas, 20      | poeta, 11                     |               |
| mors, 8           | oppugno, 23           | pollio, 10                    |               |
| mox, 81           | opto, 15              | pollitus, 9                   |               |
| multa, 17         | ora, 33               | pontus, 14                    |               |
| multum, 128       | oratio, 11            | populus, 115                  |               |
| multumentum, 97   | orator, 1, 9          | populus, 11                   |               |
| multito, 97       | ordior, 33            | portentum, 83                 |               |
| murus, 3          | oro, 48               | portus, 117                   |               |
|                   | oscinis, 50           | posco, 5                      |               |
| N.                | ostentatio, 35        | possim, 10                    |               |
| Navis, 1          | P                     | postea, 62                    |               |
| navis oneraria, 7 | Pacificor, 72         | postremo, 147                 |               |
| neco, 3           | paco, 72              | postulo, 5                    |               |
| necto, 116        | paene, 23             | potatio, 5                    |               |
| negligo, 131, 40  | palam, 93             | potentia, 14                  |               |
| nego, 76          | palor, 97             | potestas, 14                  |               |
| nemo, 69          | palumbis, 53          | potio, 5                      |               |
| nemis, 120        | par, 53               | potius, 5                     |               |
| nequidquam, 3     | pareo, 104, 29        | praesada, 105                 |               |
| nesto, 64         | paria, 53             | prænomē, 11                   |               |
| neccis, 45        | paries, 3             | præstans, 63                  |               |
| nex, 8            | Dario, 71             | pravus, 109                   |               |
| nexo, 116         | Parma, 72             | precor, 48                    |               |
| nimis, 100        | Participo, 93         | precipio, 13                  |               |
| nimum, 100        | parvus, 16, 62        | primo, 1, 17                  |               |
| nitor, 113        | patior, 57            | primum, 117                   |               |
| nobilis, 27       | patris, 42            | principatus, 53               |               |
| nocens, 1         | parturientia, or pau- | priscus, 38                   |               |
| nodo, 116         | peries, 119, 17       | pristinus, 38                 |               |
| nomen, 21         | peccatum, 17          | procella, 57                  |               |
| nomino, 8         | peculiaris, 74        | procerus, 76                  |               |
| nonnūquām, 13     | pecus, 32             | prodigium, 83                 |               |
| novus, 81         | pellis, 67            | proelium, 4                   |               |
| nubo, 42          | pelta, 72             | profanus, 9                   |               |
| nullus, 60        | penuria, 17           | profidetur, 28                |               |
| numen, 29         | periles, 119, 17      | profugaz, 1, 7                |               |
| nundina, 40       | peccatum, 17          | proprietati, 91               |               |
| nundinor, 40      | peculiaris, 74        | prope, 21                     |               |
|                   | pecus, 32             | propinquu, 42                 |               |
|                   | pellis, 67            | proprius, 74                  |               |
|                   | pelta, 72             | provincia, 15                 |               |
|                   | penuria, 17           |                               |               |

## SALVUS.

salvus, 5  
sanctus, 114, 19  
cangula, 47  
anno, 45  
sapientia, 8  
sapientia, 44  
narcina, 88  
satia, 73  
sancto, 23  
scapha, 1  
secularis, 1, 18  
scientia, 55  
seclitor or sector, 137  
seroba, 135  
sentum, 72  
securus, 14  
seditiosus, 97  
segrego, 125  
sejungo, 125  
semita, 63  
semper, 71  
semipertitus, 10  
senatus, 16  
senecta, 35  
senex, 17  
senecta, seneculus, 35  
senium, 35  
sentientia, 17  
sentio, 34  
sepello, 114  
sepno, 123  
sermo, 11  
servus, 40  
sica, 25  
sicca, 73  
silva, 120  
similia, 53  
similia alieni, 12  
similia alieni, 12  
simulacrum, 19  
simile, 17  
similitas, 123  
singularia, 64  
singulis diebus, 30  
sino, 8  
soccus, 68  
socia, 9

## TEMETUM.

confusa, 3  
con, 76  
solidus, 33  
solitudo, 55  
sollertia, 116  
solicitudo, 123  
solum, 73  
sons, 3  
sospes, 5  
species, 64  
sperno, 114  
spiculum, 13  
spissus, 114  
spoliaria, 129  
sponte, 48  
stagnum, 85  
statio, 117  
status, 19  
status, 143  
stomachor, 45  
strages, 15  
stadium, 53  
suavis, 6  
subito, 116  
sublimis, 76  
subterfugio, 14  
subvenio, 45  
succendo, 21  
succenso, 45  
succurro, 45  
sueco, 76  
superflua, 59  
superero, 29  
superstitio, 78  
supplicium, 129  
supplico, 48  
surripio, 51  
suscipio, 13  
sustineo, 57  
suus, 74

## T.

Tandem, 147  
tellus, 78  
telum, 13  
temetum, 35

## VAGOR.

tempestas, 57, 19  
tempium, 42  
tempus, 19  
tener, 57  
tentio, 107  
tergits, 67  
terra, 78  
timeo, 2  
tiguum, 23  
tormentum, 120  
totus, 78  
trabs or trabes, 23  
tractus, 62  
trames, 69  
transfuga, 107  
tribuo, 97  
tributum, 126  
tristis, 11  
triduum, 31  
trucidio, 3  
tuco, 40  
tum, 64  
tumulus, 15  
tumultarius, 97  
tumultuosus, 97  
tumultus, 10  
turba, 10  
turbulentus, 97  
tyrannus, 3

## U.

Urbanus, 174  
ulicitor, 129  
uligo, 83  
ultro, 48  
ulna, 25  
univers, 78  
urba, 2  
usque, 73  
usurpo, 62  
utor, 62  
exorem duco, 42

## V.

Vagor, 97

## VULTUS.

valde, 125  
valeo, 30  
valetudo, 59  
validus, 33  
vasto, 146  
vastus, 16  
vates, 21  
ve 201<sup>a</sup>, 103  
vectigal, 126  
vehemens, 6  
velutus, 67  
vendito, 117  
venerum, 19  
veneror, 14  
ventus, 57  
vereor, 2  
vertex, 46  
vesamus, 100  
vestimentum, 93  
vestio, 25  
vestis, 69  
vetus, 17, 23  
via, 69  
vibro, 57  
victus, 31  
vide, 7  
vincio, 116  
vinco, 29  
vinculum, 25  
 vindico, 179  
vimum, 35  
viola, 128  
virus, 13  
viscera, 31  
vita, 31  
vitam dege:re, 12  
vir, 17  
vivo, 27  
vix, 117  
voco, 8  
volo, 15  
volacer, 50  
volumen, 133  
vulgaris, 11  
vulnus, 75  
vulnus, 33

abando: tu, a; un:  
abide, t:  
2; expecto:  
(Ex. 18), wi:  
ability, =  
se, J. := tale:  
able, be:  
pose; queo:  
3; valeo, ul:  
abode, do:  
domicilium,  
aborigin:  
om, c.  
abound, a:  
abound, a;  
abounds (with ab:  
above, su:  
acc, and ab:  
with acc, Cg:  
prep, with acc:  
of place, supér:  
mōjor, us.  
abroad, it:  
verb of motion:  
absence, at:  
his, her, absen:  
abundance, a:  
se, J.; plurim:  
abundance, abu:  
tim (Ex. 17), a:  
abundant, a:  
afatim (Ex. 17), a:  
gen.  
access, a:  
accomplish:  
J. record, of:  
sponte (prop, a:  
sponte, f.).

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## ABANDON.

### A

**abandon**, *to*, *omittit, omisit,* *deserit,* *et, ertum, i;* *rēlinquo, liqui-*

*lūctum, i.*

**abandoned**, *in life, sc̄ies-*

*tus, a, um; perditus, a, um;*

*abide, to, maneo, si sum,* *2; expecto, avi, atum, i; = to*

*abide by, sto, stēu, statum, i* *(Ex. 28), with abl.*

**ability**, = *power, pōtentia,* *ae, f.; talent, ingēnūm, i, n.*

**able**, *be to, possim, potui,* *posse; quo, quiri and il, ium,* *i; valeo, ui, ium, 2.*

**abode**, *dōminus, us and i, f.*

**aborigines**, *āborigines,* *am, c.*

**abound**, or **abound in**, *to*, *abundo, āvī, atum, i* (*con-*

*structed with abl/ative*).

**abounding in**, *abundans,* *tis (with abl).*

**about**, = *concerning, dē,* *prep, or (rarely) sūper, prep,* *with abl.* *In point of time, cir-*

*citer, adv or prep = around,* *circus, circum, prep = nearly,* *fere, ad.*

**above**, *sūper, prep, with* *acc. and abl.; sūpra, prep,* *with acc. Of number, ultra,* *prep with acc., also ado. Adv.,* *of place, sūperior, us. Of size,* *majus, us.*

**broad**, *lōris, adv. After* *verb of motion, foras, adv.*

**absence**, *absentia, ae, f.; in* *his, her, absence, absens, tis.*

**abundance**, *ābundantia,* *ae, f.; plurimus, a, um. In*

*abundance, abunde, adv; affi-*

*tiōnē (Ex. 17), adv.* *In abun-*

*dant, = in abundance,* *affatim (Ex. 36), adv. with*

*gen.*

**access**, *āditus, us, m.*

**accomplishment**, *arts, tis,* *f.*

**accord**, *of one's own,* *sponte (prop. abl. of obsolete*

*sponsa, f.).*

## ADRUMETUM.

**accord**, *to, = to give, tribuo,* *ui, ium, 3; concedo, cessi, ce-*

*sum, 3; = to agree, congreo, ui,* *3; convengo, venui, ventum, 4;*

*according to, secundum,*

*prep. with acc.*

**account**, *of, on, propter* *(with acc.), causā, ergo (with*

*gen.); on our, nostra, vicem,* *accuse, to, accuso, avi,*

*ātum, i (constr. with acc. of* *person and gen. of crime; or*

*instead of the latter, a neut.* *nōn, or abl. with de); falsely,*

*instinctu, avi, atum, i.*

**achieve**, *to, prōficio, recl-*

*fectum, i.*

**achievement**, *factus, ūris,* *m. in plur., res gestae, ex-*

*plots.*

**Achilles**, *Achilles, is, m.*

**acknowledge**, *to, agnosco,* *gnōxi, gnitum, i (to recognize);*

*factor, facio, i (to confess);*

*acquiri, to, aquiro, qui-*

*sivi, qui, i.*

*acquit, i, libero, avi, atum* *1; absolvō, vi, iatum, i.*

**across**, *trans, prep, with acc.* *act, factum, i, n.; act of*

*kindness (Ex. 42), beneficium,* *i, n.*

**act**, *to, facio, feci, factum,* *i; ago, ēgo, actum, i.*

**action**, *actio, ūris, f.*

**action**, *actio, ūris, f.*

**There is need of prompt action** *(Ex. 28), opus est mātūre factio.*

**add**, *to, adiicio, jecō, jec-*

*tum, i.*

**address**, *to, allōquor, allo-*

*cūtus sum, 3.*

**adjure**, *to, ḍro, ūvi, atum,* *1; obtestor, atus sum, i.*

**admirable**, *admirabilis, e.*

**admire**, *to, miror, admiror,* *atus sum, i; to admire greatly,*

*magni in admiratiōne habeo,* *2. (Ex. 42)*

**admonish**, *to, mōneō (ad-*

*ministro), ui, ium, 2.*

**admonition**, *admonitum,* *i, n., in plur., ea quae admonētur,*

*adorn*, *to, ornō (or exorno),* *avi, ium, i; colo, ui, ultum, 3.*

**Adrumetum**, *Adrūmetūm,* *i, m.*

## AGREEABLE.

**Adutatica**, *Adutātīca, ac, f.*

**advance**, *to, prōgrēdor*

*gressus, s, n.; to bring for-*

*ward, afero, attalī, atlātum,* *3; to advance battering-rams,*

*āgēre turres.*

**advantage**, *utilitas, ūris,* *f.*

*to a man's advantage, often* *dat, of person. (See Ex. 22).*

**advantageous**, *commodus,* *a, um; to be advantageous to*

*a man, alēciū, alītātī or ūsi*

*use, or expedite.*

**advice**, *consilium, i, n.*

**Aedui**, *Aedui, ūri, m.*

**Aegatian islands**, *Ae-*

*gātēs, ūri, insulae, ūri, f.*

**Aegean Sea**, *Aegaeum*

*mārē.*

**Aelius**, *Aelius, i, m.*

**Aemilius**, *Aemilius, i, m.*

**Aeneas**, *Aeneas, ae, m.*

**Aeschylus**, *Aeschylus, i, m.*

**Aesop**, *Aesopus, i, m.*

**Aethalia**, *Aethalia, ae, f.*

**affair**, *res, ūri, f. négotium,* *i, n.*

**affection**, *cārītas, ūris, f.*

*āmōr, ūris, m. In pl. affectus* *us,*

**affectionately**, *āmānter*

*adv: studiōs, adv; pī, adv*

**affections**, *affictus, ūs, m.*

**affirm**, *to, affirmo, ūvi,* *ātum, i.*

**afraid**, *to be, vērōr, Itus*

*z; timeo, ui, 2.*

**Afranius**, *Afranius, i, m.*

**Africa**, *Africa, ae, f.*

**after**, *post, post, prep, with acc.,*

*also adv.*

**afterwards**, *postea, adv.*

**again**, *iterum, adv.* *[ac-*

*against*, *contra, prep, with*

*age*, *actas, ūris, f.*

**age**, *of proper, mātūrus* *a, um.*

**aged**, *sēnēx, is (Ex. 29), m.*

**agitate**, *to, ūgiō, ūvi, atum,* *1; mōveō, mōvi, mōtum, i;*

**trēpido**, *ātū, atum, i.*

**agree**, *to, pāciscor, pactus*

*sum, i; together, convēno,*

*vēni, ventum, 4; congruo, ui,* *3; it is agreed, constat.*

**agreeable**, *jucundus, a, um*

**AGREEABLY TO.**

agreeably to, convenerter,  
*adv.* *wibdat.*

**Agricola,** Agricola, *ae, m.*  
agriculture, agricultura,  
*m.*

**Agrigentum,** Agrigentum,  
*l. n.* *Of Agrigentum* (*adj.*)  
Agrigentum, l. *m.*

**ah,** ah! *interj.*

**ahead,** ante, *adv.* (or prep.  
with acc.). To be ahead of,  
superior, avi, atum, *t.*

**aid,** auxilium, *l. n.* ops,  
ops (num. *obso.*); plur. opes,  
*am.*

**aid,** to, adjivo, avi, atum,  
*t.* (with acc.); auxilio, atus  
sum, *t.* (with dat.).

**aim** at, to, studeo, *l. 2*  
(with dat.); peto, *l. v.* and *l. itum, 3.*

**alacrity,** alacritas, atis, *f.*

**alarm,** terror, oris, *m.*;  
dolor, oris, *m.*

**alarm,** to, perlerreo (ex-  
tremo), *l. itum, 2;* commovere,  
moxi, motum, *z.*

**Alcibiades,** Alcibiades, *ls,*  
*m.*

**Alexander,** Alexander,  
*du, m.*

**Alexandria,** Alexandria,  
*se, f.*

**alive,** vivus, *a, um;* vivens,  
*ts.*

**all,** omnis, *e.*

**all** at, omnino, *adv.*

**alliance,** societas, atis, *f.*

**amicilla,** ae, *f.*; treaty of —  
fodus, eris, *n.*

**allow,** to, patior, passus  
*sum, 3;* permitto, lisi, itum, *3;*  
concedo, asi, sum, *3* (*Px. 43*);

**ally,** socius, *l. m.*

**almost,** prope, *adv.*

**alone,** solus, *a, um;* sinus,  
*a, um.*

**along** *per, prep.* (*gov. acc.*).  
*Along with, cum, prep.* (*gov.  
obj.*).

**aloof,** prœcul (followed by  
*s or al.*) *adv.*

**Alps,** Alpes, itum, *f.*

**already,** iam, *adv.*

**also,** etiam, et, *conj.*

**altar,** ara, *ae, f.*

**although,** eti, *conj.*; quum,  
*obj.*

**alwars,** semper, *adv.*

**ambassador,** legatus, *l. m.*

**Ambiorix,** Ambiorix, Igis,  
*m.*

**ambuscade,** insidiae, atum,  
*f.*

**amend,** to, emendo, avi,  
*atum, t.*

**amiable,** amabilis, *e.*

**APPLY.**

**amicable,** amabilis, *e.*

**amid** { inter, p. p. (*gov.*  
*among* { acc.); per, *prep.*  
(*gov. acc.*).

**amount,** vis (not used in  
gen.); acc. viu; abl. vi; plur.  
vires, *f.*

**Anpius,** Anpius, *l. m.*

**amply,** large, *adv.*; ampli-  
eundus (*Px. 32*), l*ocuples, éta.*

**Anaximenes,** Anaximenes,  
*ls, m.*

**ancestors,** magiores, um, *m.*

**ancestor,** paternus, a, *um.*

**anchises,** Anchises, *ae, m.*

**anchor,** ancora, ae, *f.*

**ancient,** antiquus, a, *um;*  
priscus, a, *um;* vetus, éris; *eris;*  
pristinus, a, *um.*

**Ancus Martius,** Ancus, *l.*  
Martius, *l. m.*

**and,** et, atque, se (*p. 149*);  
anger, ira, *ae, f.*

**angry,** iratus, a, *um.*

**angry,** to be, irascor, itus  
sum, *t;* successeo, ul, itum, *z.*

**Anicia,** Anicia, *ae, f.*

**animosity,** invidia, *ae, f.*

**animal,** animalia, *alii, n.*

**announcement,** munitus,  
*l. m. on this announcement,*  
*etc., his munitiae.*

**annoying,** molestus, a, *um.*

**anon,** to, vexo, avi, atum,  
*t;* iudeo, si, sum, *3;* perturbo,  
avi, atum.

**another,** aliis, a, *ad;* an-  
other of two, alter, era, erum.

**answer,** to, respondeo, di,  
sum, *z.*

**Antigonus,** Antigonus, *l.*

**Antioch,** Antiochia, *se, f.*

**Antiochus,** Antiochus, *l. m.*

**Antipater,** Antipater, *rl, m.*

**Antonius,** Antonius, *l. m.*

**anxious,** sollicitus, a, *um;*  
anxitus, a, *um.*

**any,** = any person (*indefi-  
nite*); quilibet, quisvis; any sin-  
gle person, quisquam, utilis.

**anything,** quidlibet, quid-  
vis.

**anywhere,** ubivis.

**Apelles,** Apelles, *ls, m.*

**Apennine,** Apenninus, *l.*  
*m.*

**Apollo,** Apollo, *l. m.*

**appear,** to, appareo, ul,  
Itum, *z;* = to seem, videor,  
Itum sum, *2.*

**appearance,** species, *l. f.*

**Appius,** Appius, *l. m.*

**apply,** to, incubuo, cubul,  
catibus, *3* (*in er sed rem, or red.*).

**ASIA.**

**appoint,** to, creo, *evl. Itum,*  
*t;* praeficio, feci, sectum, *z;*  
constituo, ul, itum, *z;* prac-  
pono, posui, postum, *z;* (of a  
dictator), dico, xi, etum, *z;*  
puno, posui, postum, *z.*

**approach,** to, accedo, cesi,  
cessum (*acc.*, or *acc.* with *dat.*);  
advenio, veni, ventum, *4;* ap-  
propinquuo, avi, atum, *t* (*dat.*,  
or *acc.* with *ad.*); advento, avi,  
atum, *t.*

**approve,** to, probo, avi,  
atum, *t.*

**approved,** spectatus, *a.*

**apt,** aplius, *a, um;* idoneus,  
*a, um.*

**Arcadia,** Arcadia, *ae, f.*

**Archimedes,** Archimedes,  
*ls, m.*

**argument,** disputatio, *onis,*  
*f.*

**Arivostus,** Arivostus, *l,*  
*m.*

**arise,** to, orior, ortus sum,  
*t and 4;* = to get up, surgo,  
surrexi, sunctum, *z.*

**Aristides,** Aristides, *ls, m.*

**Aristippus,** Aristippus, *l,*  
*m.*

**arm,** brachium, *l. n.*

**arm,** to, armo, avi, atum, *t.*

**armed,** armatus, *a, um.*

**armour,** arma, ornata, *n.*

**arms,** arma, ornata, *n.*

**army,** exercitus, *lis, m.,*  
*actes, cl. f.; agmen, lis, n.*

**around,** circum, circa, *prep.*  
(*gov. acc.*).

**arouse,** to, excito, avi,  
atum, *t.*

**arrangements,** to make,  
providere, vidi, sum, *3* (full. by  
de).

**arrival,** adventus, *ls, m.*

**arriveat** to, advenio, veni,  
ventum, *4.*

**arrogance,** arrogania, ne, *f.*

**arrow,** sagitta, ae, *f.;* te-  
tum, *l. n.*

**Arسaces,** Arسaces, *ls, m.*

**art,** ars, *lis, f.*

**Artemisia,** Artemisia, *ae, f.*

**as,** ut, *conj.*; qui after the  
word name; as much as, tantum  
... quantum, etc.

**Ascanius,** Ascanius, *l. m.*

**ascertain,** to, intelligo,  
loxi, lectum, *z;* certior fio,  
factus sum.

**ashamed,** to be, pedit,  
uit, *z;* with *acc.* of person and  
*gen.* of thing.

**Asia,** Asia, *ae, f.*

**ask,**  
stum, *n.*  
person, *s.*  
rugo, av-  
son, am-  
= to *n*  
contor,  
alvi, sit-  
atum, *t.*  
aspec-  
ass,  
l, m. a-  
assai,  
l; ingr-  
assem-

**asses,**  
assist-  
n. *To ge-*  
auxilio à  
assist-  
adjuvix,  
associ-  
assum-  
uptum, *z.*  
**Assyri-**  
an sube, *A-*  
astray,  
cum, *t.*  
**at ad,**  
**at a place,**  
price, *see*  
**at all,**  
at first  
last  
postremum  
at length  
then at len-  
at most  
14), used ac-  
used, *at*  
around, *circum,*  
around, *circum, circa, prep.*  
*(gov. acc.)*

**Athonia,**  
Athens,  
Atilius,  
Atridae

**attack,**  
attack, *by* in  
éderior, ortu  
attempt,  
attend,  
tl, sum, *t.*

**attention,**  
ego, égi, acte-  
attentive  
intens, a, *t.*

**Attica,**  
**Atticus,**  
attract,  
lectum, *z.*

**attribute**  
versum (*acc.*  
of person); *d.*

**Attus,** Au-  
audacior

| A&E.  | B&A.  | BEYOND.   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>ask, to,</b> p̄ito, lvi and II.<br>stum, 3 (acc. of thing; the person in abl. go by ab, de); rōgo, āvī, ātūm, 1 (acc. of person; and also of the thing); — to make inquiry of, per-<br>contor, ātūm, 1; quero,<br>ātūm, 3; interrogō, āvī,<br>ātūm, 1. | <b>audacity,</b> audacia, ae, f.<br><b>Augustus,</b> Augustus, i, m.<br><b>author,</b> auctor, ōrls, m.; scriptor, ōrls, m. (writer).   | <b>beat, to,</b> caedo, cīdī cas-<br>sum, 3.  |
| <b>ass,</b> ātūm, 1, m.; āsellus,<br>l, m., a little ass.   | <b>avarice,</b> āvaritia, ae, f.<br><b>avaricious,</b> āvārius, a, um;<br>avenge, to, ul̄escor, ultus<br>sum, 3; vindicō, āvī, ātūm, 1. | <b>beauty,</b> pulchritudo, inis, f.<br><b>because,</b> quia, conj.; quod,<br>prox. ; — of, proper, prep.<br>(gov. acc.).                               |
| <b>assail, to,</b> invādo, al, sum,<br>3; īfigro, ui, 3.  | <b>avert, to,</b> āvertō, ti, sum, 2.   | <b>become, to = be becoming,</b><br>ēdecō, ult, 2 (with acc. and<br>prox.); — to be made, fio, factus<br>sum, 3. — be appointed, creor,<br>ātus sum, 1. |
| <b>assemblage,</b> concursus, ūs,<br>m.   | <b>await, to,</b> tākeno, si, sum, 2.   | <b>before,</b> ante, adv.   |
| <b>assessment,</b> census, us, m.   | <b>away, far,</b> longe gentium<br>(Ex. 17).  | <b>beforehand,</b> ante, adn.   |
| <b>assistance,</b> subdūlum, 1,<br>n. — <i>To go to a man's assistance,</i><br>auxilio ālēciū prōficiēs.  | <b>away to, carry,</b> abduco,<br>xi, etum, 3.  | <b>beg, to,</b> p̄eto, iiii and ii.   |
| <b>assistant,</b> adjutor, ōrls, m.;<br>adjutrix, ūrls, f.  | <b>axe,</b> scērūs, ls, f.  | <b>beō, āvī, ātūm, 1.</b>   |
| <b>association,</b> sūclēta, ātūs, f.<br>assume, to, usūmo, npsi,<br>nptum, 3.  | <b>B</b>  | <b>beget, to,</b> p̄arō, p̄ēperi,<br>partum, 3.   |
| <b>Assyrian,</b> Assyrīus, a, um;<br>as sub., Assyrī, īrūm, m.  | <b>Babylon,</b> Bābylon, īrīs, f.;<br>the province of Babylon, Bāby-<br>lōnia, ae, f.   | <b>begin, to,</b> īnīplo, cēpi, cep-<br>tum, 3; īstituo, ul, ātūm, 1;<br>coopi and coptus sum; begin-<br>ning of June, īkālēndae Jūniæ.                 |
| <b>astray, to go,</b> abervo, āvī,<br>ātūm, 1.  | <b>Bacchus,</b> Bacchus, i, m.  | <b>behind, post,</b> prep. (gov.<br>acc.).  |
| <b>at, ad, prep. with acc. = near</b><br>(at a place, see Ex. 15; at a<br>price, see Ex. 21.)   | <b>back,</b> tergum, i, m.  | <b>behoves, it,</b> ēportet, ult,   |
| <b>at all,</b> omīnō, adv.  | <b>Bactrian,</b> Bactriānus, a,<br>um.  | 2, impers.: with acc. and inf.  |
| <b>at first,</b> primo, adv.  | <b>bad,</b> mālūs, a, um; prāvus,<br>a, um (p. 109).  | <b>believe, fides,</b> ūl, f.   |
| <b>at last,</b> tandem, adv., ad  | <b>baggage,</b> Impēdimenta,<br>ōtūm, n; without baggage,<br>expeditus, a, um.  | <b>believe to,</b> crōdo, dīm,  |
| <b>postrēnum (Ex. 29).</b>  | <b>ball,</b> vīcīnūm, i, n.   | ōtūm, 3 (with dat. of person).  |
| <b>at length,</b> dēnūm, adv.:  | <b>band,</b> mīmūs, ūl, f.  | <b>beloved,</b> as sube, dēlēlae,<br>ārum, f.; as acti, īmātūs, a, um;  |
| <b>then at length,</b> tūm dēnūm.   | <b>band together, to,</b> con-<br>juro, āvī, ātūm, 1.   | <b>below,</b> infra, prep. with acc<br>also adv.  |
| <b>at most,</b> summum (Ex.   | <b>banish,</b> to, expello, phili,  | <b>beneath,</b> infra, prep. with<br>acc., also adv.; subtē, prep.<br>(gov. acc. and adv.).   |
| <b>14), used after biddily.</b>   | <b>p̄sum, 3 (followed by abl.</b>   | <b>beneficence,</b> bēnēfīcentia,<br>ae, f.   |
| <b>at once,</b> exemplio, adv.:   | <b>alone, or with ex.,</b>  | <b>benefit,</b> bēnēfītum, i, n.  |
| <b>at once, a to.</b>   | <b>banish,</b> to, expelus, a, um.  | <b>benefit to,</b> jāvō, āvī, ātūm,<br>1; adjuvo, 1; bēnēfācio, fēci,<br>factum, 3.   |
| <b>Athenian,</b> Āthēnēnsis, is.  | <b>bank,</b> ripa, a, um.   | <b>benignity,</b> bēniglitas, ātūs, f.  |
| <b>Athens,</b> Āthēna, īrūm, f.   | <b>banquet,</b> convivium, i, n.:   | <b>beseach,</b> to, obīscor, ātūs<br>sum, 1.  |
| <b>Attilius,</b> Attilius, i, m.  | <b>ēpūlae,</b> īrūm, f. (p. 80).  | <b>besides,</b> prāctūres, adv.   |
| <b>Attidae,</b> Attidae, īrūm, m.   | <b>barbarian,</b> barbariānus, barbāri, īrūm,   | <b>besiege,</b> to, obsīdeo, edī,   |
| <b>attack,</b> īmpētus, os, m.  | <b>barbaric,</b> barbaricus, a, um.   | ēssum, 2; the besieged, obsēsi,   |
| <b>attack, to,</b> īmpētūs, ūl, m.  | <b>barbarous,</b> barbarus, a, um.  | ōrūm, m.  |
| <b>foli. by in with acc. (Ex. 14);</b>  | <b>bare,</b> nūdūs, a, um.  | <b>bespatter,</b> to, aspergo, si,  |
| <b>ātorus, ortus sum, 4;</b>  | <b>barren,</b> stérilis, e.   | sum, 3 (with dat. and acc., or<br>acc. and abt.).   |
| <b>attempt,</b> to, cōnor, ātūs, 1.   | <b>battering-ram,</b> īrēles, ītīs,<br>m.   | <b>best,</b> optimus, a, um; all the<br>best men, optimus quisque.  |
| <b>attend,</b> to, īmānūderō, to,   | <b>battle,</b> proelium, i, n., pug-<br>na, ae, f. (see p. 4).  | <b>bestow,</b> to, dōno, āvī,<br>ātūm, 1; tribuo, ui, ītūm, 3.  |
| ti, sum, 3.   | <b>be,</b> to, sum, ūl, esse.   | <b>betake oneself,</b> to, cō-<br>fango, ugi, ītūm, 3 (followed by<br>ad.).   |
| <b>attention, to give, often</b>  | <b>be-without,</b> to, cōrēo, ul,   | <b>better,</b> mēllor, uſ; ūllīs,<br>adv. comp. of satis.   |
| <b>ēgo, īrī, actum, 3 (Ex. 45).</b>   | <b>ītūm, 2 (with abt.).</b>   | <b>better, to be,</b> prāsto, sūtī,<br>sūtūm, 3.  |
| <b>attentive,</b> attentus, a, um;  | <b>beam,</b> trabs, trābīs, f.  | <b>between,</b> inter, prep. with<br>acc.   |
| <b>intensus, a, um.</b>   | <b>bear,</b> īrō, ūl, ītūm, 3, ūrī;   | <b>beyond,</b> ultra, prep. with<br>acc.; supra, prep. (gov. acc.).   |
| <b>Attica,</b> Attica, ae, f.   | <b>pitator,</b> passus sum, 3 (p. 57).  |   |
| <b>Atticus,</b> Atticus, i, m.  | <b>beast,</b> bestia, ae, f; bellua,  |   |
| <b>attract,</b> to, alicic, lexl,   | 16, f. (sec. p. 14).  |   |
| lectum, 3.  |   |   |
| <b>attribute,</b> to, verte, verti,   |   |   |
| versum (acc. of thing, and dat.<br>of person); do, dēdi, ītūm, 1.   |   |   |
| <b>Attus,</b> Attus, i, m.  |   |   |
| <b>audacious,</b> audax, ūrls.  |   |   |

## BID.

bid, to, *sibeo, fusi, jussi, sum, 3; impfro, sibi, stum, 1.*  
bill, *bellus, l. m.*  
bird, *avis, ls, c.*  
*birth, gēnūs, éris, n.; a man of high birth, nobilis gēnēre natus; a man of low birth, male gēnēre natus.*  
*birth, by, natus (abl. of obso, subs. natus).*  
*blight, trēdo, nis, f.*  
*blood, sanguis, nis, m.; eror, oris, m. (p. 47).*  
*boast, to, iacto, sibi, stum, 1; often followed by acc. of person; to make the same boast, idem gloriari.*

*Bocchus, Bocbus, l. m.*  
*body, corpus, oris, n.*  
*Bogotia, Boetia, ac, f.*  
*Boil, Boil, drūm, m.*  
*book, liber, ri, m.; codex, tels, m.*  
*born, to be, nascor, natus sum, 3.*  
*both, conj., et followed by another el., signifying "and"; -propter iterque, utraque, utrumque, both of two.*

*bounds of moderation, modus, l. m. in sing. (Ex. 9.)*

*boy, puer, éri, m.*  
*braas, aec, acris, n.*  
*brave, fortis, e.*  
*bravely, fortiter, adv.*  
*bread, panis, ls, m.*  
*break, to, frango, frēgi, fractum (Ex. 9).*  
*breast, pectus, oris, n.*  
*breeding, good, hūmilitas, atis, f.*  
*brevity, brēvitas, atis, f.*  
*bridges, pons, ls, m.*  
*briefly, brēviter, adv.*  
*bring, to, addico, xi, stum, 3; affero, attul, alitum, 3.*  
*bring about, to, facio (officio), feci, factum, 3; to be brought about, fieri.*

*bring back, to, rēfero, tul, stum, 3.*  
*bring forth, to, pñlio, pñper, partum, 3.*  
*bring to pass, to, efficio, feci, factum, 3.*  
*bring up, to (= rear), Klo, ai, littum or alitum, 3.*

*Britain, Britannia, ae, f.*  
*brother, frater, ris, m.*  
*Brundusium, Brundusium, l. n.*  
*brute beast, pēcua, pēcatis, f.*

*Brutus, Brutus, l. m.*

*build, to, construo, xi, stum, 3; aedifico, avi, stum, 1.*

## CARE, TO.

*building, aedificum, l. n.; aedes, is, f.*  
*burden, onus, éris, n.*  
*burden, to, ónero, sibi, atum, 1.*  
*burial, sepultura, ne, f.*  
*burn, to, trans, incendo, sum, 3; intrans, ardesco (ardeo), si, 2; flagro, ardum, ardeo, 1; defigro, avi, stum, 1, to be burn down.*  
*burst into, to, irrumpo, ruptu, ruptum, 3.*  
*bury, to, sepelio, ivi, ultum, 4; humo, avi, stum, 1 (p. 14).*  
*bushel, modius, li, m.*  
*business, négotium, l. n.; res, el, f.*  
*but, sed, conj.; autem, conj.*  
*butcher, to, trucidō, avi, stum, 1.*  
*buy, to, émo, émi, emptum, sum, 3; mercor, atus sum, 1.*  
*by, a or ab, prep. (gov. abl.).*  
*= near, iuxta, a. to.*  
*by and by, diu, adv.*  
*by means of, per, prep. (gov. acc.).*  
*by no means, haudquāquam, adv.*

## C

*Caes, Cacre, ls, n.*

*Cæsar, Cæsar, oris, m.*

*Caius, Cains, l. m.*

*calamity, calamitas, atis, f.*

*call, to, appello, avi, stum, 1.*

*call together, to, convoco, avi, stum, 1.*

*call to mind, to, recordor, sum, 1.*

*call to witness, to, testor, sum, 1.*

*Calvisius, Calvius, l. m.*

*camp, castra, drūm, n. pl.*

*Campanians, Campani, drūm, m.*

*can, possum, potui, posse;*

*quicunque, quivi, 4.*

*Canis, Canina, l. m.*

*Caninius, Caninus, l. m.*

*Cannae, Arum, arum, f.*

*Canarium, Canarium, l. n.*

*capable, capax, atis; of*

*enduring, patiens, is.*

*capital ("ubs"), caput, Itis, n.*

*capital (off), capiti, l. n.*

*capitol, capitolum, l. n.*

*captive, captiva, a, uni.*

*Capua, Capua, se, f.*

*carcass, cadaver, éris, n.*

*care, cura, se, f.*

*care, to, = to take care of,*

*curo, avi, stum, 1. = to have*

## CHANGE.

*concern for, consilio, ui, ultum, 3 (with dat.); to care for, facio, or pendo, with acc. and gen. (Ex. 21).*

*carefully, stolidose, adv.*

*carry, to, ferro, tul, ultum, 3; gero, gessi, gestum, 3; dico, xi, ultum, 3 (Ex. 13).*

*carry away, to, abdico, duxi, ductum, 3.*

*carry on, to, gero, gessi, gestum, 3.*

*carry out, to, exsequor, cutus sum, 3. = to finish, perficio, scil, ectum, 3.*

*Carthage, Carthago, Iulis, f.*

*Carthaginian (abs.), Cartaginis, ls, m.; Poenius, l.*

*Carthaginian (adj.), Punicus, a, uni; Carthaginensis, e.*

*case, causa, ae, f.*

*Cassius, Cassius, l. m.*

*Cassivelaunus, Cassivelaunus, l. m.*

*cast away, to, abjicio, jecit, jecum, 3.*

*cast forth, to, prœjicio, jecit, jecum, 3.*

*Castor, Castor, éris, m.*

*catch at, to, capto (freq. of capio), avi, ultum, 1.*

*Catiline, Catilina, ae, m.*

*Cato, Cato, ouis, m.*

*castle, pecus, oris and hulis, n. (not used in nom. and voc. sing.).*

*Catulus, Catilus, l. m.*

*Caturiges, Caturiges, uni, m.*

*cause, causa, ae, f.*

*cause, to, facio, feci, fecum, 3.*

*cavaliere, equites, um, m.*

*cease, to, desto, steti, stitum, 3.*

*centre, medius, a, um; i;*

*the centre, in medio, or medius parte.*

*Centrones, Centrones, uni, m.*

*century (a division of troops), centuria, ae, f.: (an age), saeculum, l. n.*

*Ceres, Ceres, éris, f.*

*certain, certus, a, uni; for*

*certain, pro certo; a certain (person), quidam, quaedam, quoddam.*

*certainly, prœficio, adv.*

*Chabrias, Chabrias, ae, m.*

*chain, vinculum or vinciatum, l. n.*

*chance, përfectum, l. n.*

*change, mutatio, ouis, f.,*

*political change, res móvae.*

*change, to, muto, &c./*

*clitum, l; converto, l, sum, 3.*

## CHARACTER.

character, persōna, ae, f.  
characteristic, prōprīus,  
a, um.  
charge, = an attack, im-  
pētus, us, m. = an accusation,  
crimen, Ius, n.  
charge, to (of troops), im-  
pētum facio, faci, factum, i;  
foll. by in and acc.  
**Charidēmus, Chārdēmūs,**  
l, m.  
chariot, vēhēcūlum, l, n.  
Charles, Carōlūs, i, m.  
check, to, tēnēo, ui, tum,  
2; rēfīneō, ui, entum, 2; rē-  
primo, essi, essum, j.  
cheerfully, laetū; laetus, us,  
um (adj. agreeing with sub-  
ject).  
cheese, cāsēus, l, m.  
cherish, to, cōlo, ui, cul-  
tum, j.  
chief, princeps, clīps (*subs.*);  
summus, a, um.  
child, infans, tia, c. *Child-*  
*ren*, liber, orūm, m.  
choose, to, dēfligo, legi, lect-  
um, j.  
Christ, Christus, i, m.  
Christian, Christianus, a,  
um.  
Cicerō, Cīcēro, orūs, m.  
Cilicia, Cīlīcia, ae, f.  
Cimbri, Cīmbri, orūm, m.  
Cimon, Cīmon, orūs, m.  
circitous route, circu-  
itus, us, m.  
citadel, arx, cīs, f.  
citizen, cīvīs, ls, c.  
city, urbs, ls, f.  
civil, cīvīlis, e.  
clad, see *to CLOTH*.  
class, gēnūs, orīs, n.  
clearness, perspicilitas,  
atīs, f.  
clemency, bonitas, atīs, f.  
climb over, to, supērādo,  
2, sum, j.  
clime, coelum, l, n.  
close, = end, extrēmūs, a,  
um, close of the day, extrēmūs  
diel (see St. Gr. 934); finis,  
ls, m.  
clothe, to, amictō, iei, ic-  
tum, 4; induo, ui, atum, j.  
cloud, nubes, ls, f.  
coast, orā, ae, f.; littus,  
orūs, n. (p. 33).  
**Codrus, Codrus, i, m.**  
Coelius, Coelius, l, m.  
Coeparius, Coeparius, l, m.  
coffer, arca, ae, f.  
coin, to, signo, ävi, atum,  
4; coined, signatus.  
cold, glīdus, a, um; frig-  
dis, a, um.  
colleague, collega, ae, m.

## COMPASSIONATE.

collect, compāro, ävi, ä-  
tum, i.  
colonist, cōlōnus, i, m.  
colour, color, orīs, m.  
combat, certāmen, Ius, m.  
come, to, vēniō, veni, ven-  
tum, 4; pērvēniō, vēni, ven-  
tum, 4.  
come off, to, discēdo, essi,  
essum, j (as conqueror), sūpērīus  
discēdo, cessi, cēssum, j.  
come out, to, exēdo, essi,  
essum, j (followed by ab, or  
ab, with prep. de, e, ex).  
come out to meet, to, ob-  
viam eo, ivi and ii, atum, 4.  
come to pass, to, fū, factus  
sum, j.  
come upon, to, invādo,  
vāsi, vāsum, j.  
come up to, to, accēdo,  
essi, essum, j.  
chief, princeps, clīps (*subs.*);  
summus, a, um.  
child, infans, tia, c. *Child-*  
*ren*, liber, orūm, m.  
choose, to, dēfligo, legi, lect-  
um, j.  
Christ, Christus, i, m.  
Christian, Christianus, a,  
um.  
Cicerō, Cīcēro, orūs, m.  
Cilicia, Cīlīcia, ae, f.  
Cimbri, Cīmbri, orūm, m.  
Cimon, Cīmon, orūs, m.  
circitous route, circu-  
itus, us, m.  
citadel, arx, cīs, f.  
citizen, cīvīs, ls, c.  
city, urbs, ls, f.  
civil, cīvīlis, e.  
clad, see *to CLOTH*.  
class, gēnūs, orīs, n.  
clearness, perspicilitas,  
atīs, f.  
clemency, bonitas, atīs, f.  
climb over, to, supērādo,  
2, sum, j.  
clime, coelum, l, n.  
close, = end, extrēmūs, a,  
um, close of the day, extrēmūs  
diel (see St. Gr. 934); finis,  
ls, m.  
clothe, to, amictō, iei, ic-  
tum, 4; induo, ui, atum, j.  
cloud, nubes, ls, f.  
coast, orā, ae, f.; littus,  
orūs, n. (p. 33).  
**Codrus, Codrus, i, m.**  
Coelius, Coelius, l, m.  
Coeparius, Coeparius, l, m.  
coffer, arca, ae, f.  
coin, to, signo, ävi, atum,  
4; coined, signatus.  
cold, glīdus, a, um; frig-  
dis, a, um.  
colleague, collega, ae, m.

## COMPASSIONATE.

CONSIDERATION.

reor, Itus sum (with gen.), 2;  
mis̄eror, älus sum (with acc.), 2;  
compel, to, cōgo, cōgī,  
cōactum, j.  
complain, to, queror, que-  
tus sum, 3.  
complaint, querela, ae, f.  
To make no complaint, nihil  
queri.  
compose, to, compōno,  
posui, itum, 2; fingo, fīxi,  
fīctum, j; = to appear, sēdo,  
ävi, atum, i.  
comprehend, to, = to com-  
prise, contineo, ui, cētum, 2;  
comprehendo, di, sum, j.  
compulsion, by (= being  
compelled), cōactus, a, um.  
compute, to, nūmēro, ävi,  
atum, i.  
conceal, to, cōaldo, dīli, dī-  
tum; to conceal the moon, lūnam  
abitare; cēlo, ävi, atum, i (with  
double acc.).  
concealed, to be, = līc hid,  
lāteo, n, Itum, 2.  
concerning, de, prep. with  
ab.  
concerns, it, intērēst, fuit  
(impers. with gen.). It — me,  
you, mēa tū, interest.  
concern, to, mōvēo, mōvi,  
mōtum, 2.  
condemn, to, condēmo.  
damno, ävi, atum.  
condition, conditio, orīs, f.  
conduct, to, = to carry  
on, gōr, gess, gestum, j; = to  
lead, dico, xi, cētum, j.  
confess, to, fātor, fassus  
sum, j; confiteor, fessus sum, 2.  
confine, to, clāudo, si, sum  
j; incōndo, si, sum, j.  
confusion, perlūbitatio,  
orīs, f.  
congratulate, to, grātīlo.  
atus sum, 1; grātō, atus  
sum, 1.  
conquer, to, vīco, vīd,  
victum, j; supērō, ävi, atum, i.  
conqueror, supērīor, orīs.  
consciousness, conscientia  
se, f.  
consecrate, to, consecro,  
ävi, atum, i; dēdico, ävi,  
atum, i.  
consider, to, dīco, dīxi,  
dīcūm, j; pīto, ävi, atum,  
i; arbitror, atus, i (p. 6); = to  
contemplate, considēro, ävi, ä-  
tum, i.  
considerable (quantity),  
äquāntum (with gen.).  
consideration, = rega, a,  
respectus, us, m. = reputa-  
tion, fūma, ae, f. = extatatio-  
nūs, f.

| CONSIDER.  | CUBIO.   | DERP.   |
|--|--|---|
| <b>Considius</b> , <i>Considius</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i><br>consign, to, trādō, <i>idi</i> ,<br><i>sum</i> , <i>j.</i>  | country, = <i>lands</i> , <i>agri</i> ,<br><i>ōrum</i> , <i>m.</i> ; opp. to <i>town</i> , <i>rus</i> ,<br><i>rūris</i> , <i>n.</i> ; native country, <i>pātria</i> , <i>se, f.</i> ( <i>p. 42</i> ), <i>country of</i><br><i>the Veneti</i> ( <i>lx. 15</i> ), <i>Vēneti</i> ,<br><i>ōrum</i> , <i>m.</i> | custom, <i>consuētudo</i> , <i>līta</i><br><i>f.</i> ; mos, <i>mōrīs</i> , <i>m.</i>  |
| consist, to, <i>consistere</i> , <i>stīti</i> ,<br><i>situm</i> , <i>j.</i>  | courage, <i>virtus</i> , <i>utis</i> , <i>f.</i>   | customary, <i>ūstītūs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>un</i><br><i>cut off</i> , to, <i>intercidō</i>  |
| consolation, <i>sōlātūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i><br>consonant, <i>consōnāns</i> , <i>ta, f.</i><br>conspiracy, <i>conjūrātīo</i> ,<br><i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i> ; <i>insidiae</i> , <i>ārum</i> , <i>f.</i> | course, <i>cursor</i> , <i>ūs</i> , <i>m.</i> ; Iter,<br><i>Iūheris</i> , <i>n.</i>  | <i>si</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>j.</i>  |
| constant, <i>asīstōns</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .<br>construct, to, <i>to moat</i> , <i>for</i><br><i>sam dīco</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>clūm</i> , <i>j.</i>   | courteously, <i>cōmīter</i> , <i>adv.</i> ;<br><i>urbanīe</i> , <i>adīv.</i>   | <b>Cyrus</b> , <i>Cyrus</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>   |
| consult, to, <i>consilīo</i> , <i>ni</i> ,<br><i>ūtum</i> , <i>j.</i> (with acc. : with dat.<br>to consider a man's interests).  | covetous, <i>ēpīdīus</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ;<br>craft, i.e. a skilled trade,<br><i>ars</i> , <i>īs</i> , <i>f.</i>   | <b>D</b>  |
| consultation, <i>consilītūs</i> ,<br><i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i> ; to hold a consultation,<br><i>consilio</i> .  | cram, to, <i>rēpleo</i> , <i>ōvi</i> , <i>ētum</i> ,<br><i>z</i> ; <i>implo</i> , <i>ēvi</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>rēfē</i><br><i>clō</i> , <i>z</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>z</i> .  | <b>Daedal</b> , <i>Daedalus</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i><br>daily, <i>ūlīe</i> , <i>adv.</i> ; <i>lū</i><br><i>dies</i> , <i>Adīj</i> , <i>z</i> , <i>ūs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ;<br><i>quōdītānūs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>z</i> . |
| consultor, <i>consilītor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>m.</i>   | <b>Damasippus</b> , <i>Damāsippus</i> ,<br><i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>   |   |
| consume, to, <i>consumī</i> ,<br><i>mpīs</i> , <i>mpītūm</i> , <i>j.</i>   | <b>Damocles</b> , <i>Dāmōclēs</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>m.</i><br><b>Damocetas</b> , <i>Dāmōtētās</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>m.</i>   |   |
| contain, to, <i>contīneo</i> , <i>ui</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>cāpīo</i> , <i>cāpī</i> , <i>ētum</i> ,<br><i>um</i> , <i>z</i> .  | dancer, <i>sāltātor</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>m.</i> ;<br><i>sāltatrix</i> , <i>ids</i> , <i>f.</i>   |   |
| content, <i>contentus</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i><br>(with abl.)   | danger, <i>pērcīlūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i><br>discrimin, <i>īnīs</i> , <i>f.</i>  |   |
| contention, <i>contentīo</i> ,<br><i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>  | dangerous, <i>pērfīlosūs</i> , <i>a.</i> ,<br><i>um</i> ; asper, <i>ēra</i> , <i>ērūm</i> ( <i>Ex. 31</i> )  |   |
| contest, to maintain a, <i>a</i> ,<br><i>certō</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i>  | <b>Danube</b> , <i>Dānbūs</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>  |   |
| continual, <i>perpētūs</i> , <i>a.</i> ,<br><i>um</i> .  | dappled, <i>vārīus</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ;<br><i>vārītātēs</i> , <i>ids</i> , <i>f.</i> ( <i>Ex. 31</i> ).   |   |
| contrary to, <i>contrārīus</i> , <i>a</i> ,<br><i>um</i> ; contra, <i>prep.</i> ( <i>gov.</i> <i>acc.</i> ).   | dare, to, <i>audeo</i> , <i>ūs sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  |   |
| control, to, <i>impērīo</i> , <i>āvi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i>  | <b>Darius</b> , <i>Dārīus</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>  |   |
| convene, to, <i>indīco</i> , <i>xi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>  | dark, <i>āter</i> , <i>ātra</i> , <i>ātrum</i> ;<br><i>tēnēbrōs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .  |   |
| convenient, <i>opportīnūs</i> , <i>a</i> ,<br><i>um</i> ; convenient, <i>īs</i> ; commo<br>dus, <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .  | daughter, <i>filīa</i> , <i>as</i> , <i>f.</i>   |   |
| conversation, <i>sermo</i> , <i>ōnis</i> ,<br><i>w.</i> ; <i>colloquīo</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>   | dauntless, <i>firmūs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .<br>day, <i>dīes</i> , <i>ētī</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> ; <i>in</i><br><i>pl.</i> only <i>m.</i>   |   |
| convey, to, <i>trāfīcio</i> , <i>īcēd</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>   | day-break, <i>prīma īnx</i> ,<br><i>ītēs</i> , <i>f.</i>   |   |
| convict, to, <i>argō</i> , <i>ui</i> , <i>ētum</i> ,<br><i>z</i> ; <i>convīco</i> , <i>vīcī</i> , <i>vīctūm</i> , <i>j.</i>  | day, by, <i>interdīl</i> , <i>adv.</i>   |   |
| cook, to, <i>cōquō</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>   | dear, <i>carīs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>amicūs</i> ,<br><i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .  |   |
| cover, to, <i>ēgō</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>  | death, <i>mōrīs</i> , <i>tīs</i> , <i>f.</i> ; ( <i>poet.</i> )<br><i>lētūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> ; violent, <i>nex</i> , <i>nēclēs</i> ,<br><i>f.</i> ( <i>p. 8</i> ).  |   |
| <b>Corinth</b> , <i>Corīntūs</i> , <i>f.</i>   | <b>Decemvirī</b> , <i>Dēcēmvīrī</i> ,<br><i>ōrum</i> , <i>m.</i>   |   |
| corn, <i>frumentūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> ; tri<br>tīcūm, <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> (wheat).  | decide, to, <i>dēcērno</i> , <i>āvi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i>   |   |
| corner, <i>angulus</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>m.</i>   | decide, to, <i>dēcērno</i> , <i>āvi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i>   |   |
| correct, to, <i>corrīgo</i> , <i>rexi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>   | declare, to, <i>dēclarō</i> , <i>āvi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i> ; <i>rēnūlō</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ētum</i> ,<br>— a person, a consul, or other<br><i>magistrate</i> .  |   |
| <b>Corsica</b> , <i>Corsīca</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>  | decline, <i>dērectō</i> , <i>āvi</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>r.</i>  |   |
| cothurnus, <i>cōthurnūs</i> ,<br><i>m.</i>   | decree, <i>consultūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i>   |   |
| <b>Cotta</b> , <i>Cotta</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>m.</i>  | decree, to, <i>dēcērno</i> , <i>ōrēvī</i> ,<br><i>ētum</i> , <i>j.</i>   |   |
| council, <i>concīo</i> (shortened<br>from <i>conventio</i> , <i>con ventio</i> ),<br><i>ōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>   | deed, <i>factūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> ; <i>gestūm</i> ,<br><i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i> ; <i>lēchnūs</i> , <i>ōris</i> , <i>n.</i> ( <i>a bold</i><br><i>during</i> —).   |   |
| counsel, <i>consiliūm</i> , <i>i.</i> , <i>n.</i><br>( <i>p. 49</i> ).   | deep, <i>dīcō</i> , <i>āvi</i> , <i>ētum</i> , <i>z</i> ,<br>deep, <i>ātūs</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>profund</i><br><i>us</i> , <i>a.</i> , <i>um</i> .   |   |

## DEFEAT.

defeat, cīdes, is, f.; adversa pugna, ne, f.  
defence, praesidium, i, n.; defensio, onis, f.  
defend, to, defendo, di, sum, 3; tuor, itus sum (p. 40).  
defender, defensor, oris, m.; vindicta, icis, m.  
degree, gradus, us, m.  
Deiaces, !deiaces, is, m.  
delay, mora, ne, f.  
delay, to, cunctio, atus, i; moror, atus sum, i.  
deliberate, to, consilio, ul, ultum, 3.  
deliberation, (often) perf. part, neut. of consil. See Ex. 28.  
delight, to, dilecto, avi, sum, i; Juv., Juv., Jutum, i.  
deliver, to, dedit, datum, 3; datum, i; reddo, didi, ditum, 3;  
a speech, habebo, ul, itum, 2.  
demand, to, posco (diposco), poposcit, poscutum, 3; filigito, avi, itum, 1; postulo, avi, atum, 1.

**Demosthenes**, Dēmosthēnes, is, m.  
deny, to, nego, avi, atum, i.  
depart, to, decedo, cess, cesum, i (from life, vita, or e vita, concedo).  
departure, dēcessus, ña, m.  
depraved, pravus, a, um.  
deprive, to, privo, avi, atum, i (with abl.).  
desert, solitudo, ins, f.  
desert, to, desero, ui, er-  
tum, 3.  
deserter, transfiga, ae, c.  
deserve, to, merito, meritus sum, 2; or merito, ui, itum, 2.  
deserved, meritus, a, um, justus, a, um.  
deservedly, merito, ade.  
design, consilium, i, n.  
designedly, prudens, th (pro video).  
desirable, cipendus, a, um, desire, cipiditas, nis, f.  
desire, to = to abn, ai, suadeo, ul, 2 (with dat); ciplo, avi and li, itum, 3; desidero, avi, itum, 1.  
desist, to, desisto, stiti, sti-  
tum, i.  
despatch, to = send, mitti, misi, missum, 3; dimitto, is, itum, 3.  
despise, to, sperno, sprœvi, spretum, 3; asperno, itis sum, i.  
destine, to, destino, avi, itum, i.  
destitute of, expers, tis,

## DISORDER.

destroy, to, dirmo, ul, atum, 3; deleo, avi, itum, 2.  
destruction, exitium, i, n.  
destructive, pernicioſus, a, um.  
detox, to, dētorreo, ul, itum, 2.  
determine, to, statuo, vi, itum, 3.  
determination, prop̄positum, i, n.; summum, l, n.  
detestable, detestabilis, e.  
devastate, to, vasto, avi, itum, 1.  
**Diana**, Dīana, ne, f.  
dictator, dicitator, oris, m.  
die, to, morior, mortui-  
sum, i: for other words, see Synonyme, p. 27.  
difference, distantia, ac, f.  
different, diversus, a, um; aliis, a, um.  
difficult, difficilis, e.  
difficulty, difficultas, atis, f.; labo, oris, m.; with difficulty (Ex. 51) vix, neque, avi.  
dig out, to, effido, fodii, fossum, 4.  
dignity, hōnor, oris, m.; dignitas, atis, f.  
diligence, diligentia, ne, f.  
diminish, to, minuo, ui, itum, 3.  
dine, to, coeno, avi and atum sum, itum, 1.  
**Dion**, Dion, onis, m.  
Dionysius, Diōnyshs, i, m.  
dip, to, immo, ui, itum, 3; tingio, or tingo, xi, nictum.  
direct, to, régo (dirigo), rex, rectum, 3.  
direction, = quarter, rēgio, onis, f.; route, Iter, itineris, v.  
disagreeable, molestus, a, um; ingrātious, a, um.  
disaster, cīdes, is, f.; in-  
commodum, i, n.  
discern, to, cerno (no perf. this sense), i; video, vidit, visum, 2.  
discharge, to, fungor, functus sum, i (gov. abl.).  
discipline, disciplina, ne, f.  
discourse, sermo, onis, m.  
discover, to, disereo, ui, ertum, 3.  
discover, to, invendo, vēni,  
ventum, 4; repéro, pēri, per-  
tum, 4.  
disease, morbus, i, m.  
disgraceful, turpis, e; foetida, a, um.  
dishevelled, solitus, a, um.  
dishonesty, frus, dis, f.  
dislike, to, ave, vor, atus, i.  
disorder, = disease, mor-  
bus, i, m.

## DRINK.

disparage, to, dētrahō, traxi, tractum, 3 (with de at d.).  
disperse, to, dispergo, si, sum, i; dispergo, jecit, jectum, i.  
displeasing, ingratis, a, um.  
dispose, to, dispōne, posui,  
positum, i.  
disposed, to, prēpensus, a, um, ad (with acc.).  
disposition, ingēnūm, i, n.  
disuere, to (lx. 61), tolle,  
sustul, substitutum, i.  
dissemble, to, dissimilō,  
avi, atum, i.  
distance, distanta, ac, f.  
distance, at a, prōcul, adv.  
distant, distans, ixs.  
distant to be, absur, fol, esse.  
distinguish, to, discerne,  
crevi, crētum, i; distinguo, nxi,  
netum, i.  
distinguished, erēgitus, a,  
um; singularis, e; clarus, a,  
um; illustris, e (p. 27).  
district, plaga, ne, f.; régio,  
onis, f.  
disturb, to, turbō, avi,  
atum, i; permovere, movi,  
motum, 2.  
disturbance, motus, us, m.;  
perturbation, onis, f.  
disturbed, permotus, a, um.  
ditch, fossa, ne, f.  
divide, to, distribuo, ui,  
atum, 3.  
divinity, nūmen, inis, e.  
division, dividio, onis, f.;  
distributo, onis, f.; in-three-  
divisions, tripartitio, avi.  
do, to, facio, facti, factum, 3.  
doctor, medicus, i, m.  
dog, canis, is (gen. plur.  
um), e.  
**Delabella**, Dolabellā, a, m.  
dominion, imperium, i, n.  
dear-post, postis, is, m.  
door, porta, ne, f.  
doubt, dubitatio, onis, f.;  
without doubt, certe, adv.  
doubt, to, dubito, avi,  
atum, i.  
doubtful, dubius, a, um.  
dower, dos, dōtis, f.  
down, de, prep. (gov. abl.).  
downfall, ruina, ne, f.  
downwards, prōmūs, a, um.  
drag, to, traho, xi, etum, 3.  
dread, torrido, inis, f.  
dream, somnium, ii, n.;  
sonnum, i, m. (lx. 18).  
dress, habitus, is, m.; cultura,  
sum, i, m. (p. 69); ornatus, is, m.  
drink, potio, onis, f.; potus,  
qa, m. (p. 5).

## DRINK.

drink to, bibo, bibi, bibi-  
tom, i.; puto, avi, åtum, i.  
drive to, äko, ägi, acum, i.  
drive away to, depello,  
püll, pulsum, i.  
drive out to, pello, pë-  
püll, pulsum, i.  
drop, gutta, ae, f.; stilla,  
no, f.  
due, débitus, a, um.  
dumb, mutus, a, um.  
Dummörix, Dummörix, Igli,  
n.  
duty, officium, i, n.  
dwell, to, habito, avi, åtum  
i; incolo, ui, ultum, i.

## E

Each, úterque, utraque,  
utrumque.  
eager, cùpidus, a, um.  
eagerly, cùpide, adv.  
eagerness, stidium, i, n.  
eagle, aquila, ae, f.  
early, maturus, a, um; adv.  
earnestly, vénementer,  
a, lo; inquisitely, a, do.  
earnestness, stidium, i, n.  
ardor, oris, m.; contentio,  
ónis, f.  
earth, terra, ae, f.; tellus,  
arts, f.; sólum, i, n.  
easily, facile, a, b.  
east, öriens, tis, m.; east-  
wind, Eurus, i, m.  
easy, facilis, e.  
educate, to, éduco, avi,  
åtum, i; éducio, ivlandi, ultum,  
4 (p. 29).  
effect, to, efficio, feci, fec-  
tum, i.  
effort, conatus, us, m.; nis-  
us, us, m.  
egg, óvum, i, n.  
Egypt, Aegyptus, i, f.  
Egyptian, Aegyptius, a, um.  
eight, octo (index).  
either... or, aut... aut,  
roni; vel... vel, conj.  
elapse, to, prueteream, ii,  
ultum, 4; procedo, cessi, ces-  
sum, i.  
elect, electus, a, um; désig-  
nat, us, u, ultum (Ex. 17).  
elect, to, éligo, exi, ectum, i.  
elephant, elephantes, i, m.  
elocation, dictio, ónus, f.;  
loquentia, ae, f.  
eloquent-master, elo-  
quentiae magister.  
eloquence, eloquentia, ae,  
f.; facundia, ae, f.  
eloquent, disertus, a, um;  
loquentis, the.  
else (adv.), alter

## EQUAL.

elude, to, effugio, fugi, fu-  
gitum, i; eludo, al, sum, i;  
fallo, fefelli, falsum, i (p. 18).  
eminent, gravis, e.  
eminent, to be, eminco,  
ui, z.  
emperor, impérator, ls, m.;  
princeps, cipis, m.  
empty, vacuus, a, um; vâ-  
nus, a, um, idle, vñtless.  
enact, to, édico, xi, etum,  
i; decerno, crêvi, crêtum, i.  
encamp, to, consido, édi,  
essum, i.  
encourage, to, bortor, åtus  
sum, i; confidmo, avi, åtum, i.  
end, exitus, iis, m.  
end, to, finio, ivi, Run, 4;  
conficio, feci, fectum, i.  
endless, perpétuus, a, um.  
endow, to, dôto, avi,  
åtum, i.  
endowed, praeditus, a, um  
(with abl.).  
enduo, to, instruo, xi, etum,  
i; orno, avi, åtum, i.  
endure, to, pâtor, passus  
sum, i.  
enduring (adj.), perpétuus,  
a, um.  
enemy, hostis, ls, m.; ini-  
micus, i, m. (p. 21).  
engage, to, congrédor, essus  
sum (followed by cim), engage  
in battle, commiso, misi, mis-  
sum, i (with proclum); cä-  
pesso pugnam (Ex. 27).  
engagement, proelium, i,  
i; pugna, ac, f.  
enjoin, to, injungo, xi, etum,  
i (with dat. of person).  
enjoy, to, fruor, fruitus and  
fructus sum, i (with abl.).  
enjoyment, voluptas, åtis,  
f.; delectatio, ónis, f.; gaudi-  
um, i, n.  
enough, satis, adv.  
entangled, to get, luhac-  
reo, hæci, hæcum, i.  
enter, to, intro, avi, åtum, i.  
enter on, to, ineo, ii,  
ultum, 4.  
enterprise, inceptum, i, n.;  
cónata (neut. pl.) (Ex. 62).  
entire, totius, a, um; intègr,  
g, a, grum; universus, a, um.  
entirely, omnino, adv.;  
proviso, adv.  
entrust, to, crêdo, dñli,  
dñtum, i; committo (permitto),  
mis, missum, i.  
envoy, órator, oris, m.  
Ephesian, Ephesius, a, um.  
Epictetus, Epictetus, i, m.  
equal, æqualis, e; aqua-  
ria, a, um; par, pâris (p. 53).

## EXCEPT, TO.

equip, to, instruo, xi, etum  
i; orno, avi, åtum, i; armo,  
avi, åtum, i.  
equites, équites, um, m.  
equity, æquitas, åtis, f.,  
aequum, i, n.  
erect, érectus, a, um; sub-  
limis, o.  
erect, to, érigo, rex, rect, re-  
ctum, i.  
Eretzia, Èrætria, ae, f.  
escape, exitus, iis, m.  
escapes me, praetertim (im-  
pers.) with acc. (*It escapes me,*  
*me fugit, me fallit.*)  
escape, to, résfugio, fugi,  
fugitum, i.  
especially, praesertim,  
adv.; præcipue, adv.; with  
superl., èritis, a, um (Ex. 14).  
establish, to, instituo  
(stâmo), ul, åtum, i; confir-  
mo, avi, åtum; fisco, avi,  
åtum, i.  
esteem, to, colo, ui,  
ultum, i; hâbeo, ui, Run, 2;  
dico, xi, etum, i; existimo,  
avi, åtum, i.  
estimate, to, aestimo, avi,  
åtum, i; hâbeo, ui, Run, 2;  
dico, xi, etum, i; existimo,  
avi, åtum, i.  
Etruria, Etruria, ae, f.  
Eurótas, Euróts, ae, m.  
Euphrates, Euphrates, ls,  
m.  
even, ètiam, conj.; vel,  
conj.  
evening, vesper, èris and i,  
m.  
ever, unquam, adv. for ever,  
in aeternum; semper (alway),  
adv.  
every, omnis, e; quisque,  
quæque, quodque and quidque.  
everybody, omnis, e; unus-  
quisque.  
everything, omnia, hum,  
n. pl.  
evident, manifestus, a, um;  
clarus, a, um.  
evident, to be, appareo,  
ui, 2; in aptero esse (p. 114).  
evil (subs.), malum, i, n.;  
(adj.) malus, a, um.  
exactly, often ipsa in agree-  
ment with noun.  
exceed, to, excedo, cessi,  
cessum, i; supero, avi, åtum, i.  
excellence, præstantia, ae,  
f.; virtus, iis, f.  
excellent, excellens, iis,  
except, praeter, prep. (gov.  
acc.).  
except, to, excipo, épl,  
ceptui.



**FOOT.**  
 foot, pes, pdis, m.  
 footpath, trāmēs, Itis; se-  
 mita, ae, f. (p. 69).  
 for, nam, namque, conj.;  
 ūnūl, conj.; pro, prep. with abl.;  
 forbid, to, vēto, ul, Itum;  
 i; interdicto, xl, ctum, 3 (with  
 dat. and abl.).  
**force**, vīs, vim, vīl (not used  
 in gen. sing.), f.; plur. vīres,  
 vim, 3.

forceps, cōpīe, īrum, f.  
 force, to, cōcī, cōcī, cō-  
 actum, 3; vīm adīthōe, 2.  
 force, to be in, vālo, ul,  
 Itum, 2.

forced (of a march), magnus,  
 2, um.  
 foreign, īlēnus, a, um;  
 pīgninus, a, um.

foreigner, extermus, a, um;  
 foremost, princeps, ipsi;  
 primus, a, um.

foresee, to, praevideo, vidi,  
 vīsum, 2; prop̄sito, exi, ectum,  
 3; prōvideo, vīl, vīsum, 2.  
 foreseeing, pīvidus, a, um;

foresight, prādēta, ae, f.  
 forest, silva, sc, f.; salutis,  
 da, m. (p. 120).

forget, to, oblīviscor, Itus  
 sum, 3.

forgetful, īmūnēmor, òris;  
 oblitus, a, um.

forgetful, oblitus, a, um,  
 (oblīviscor), īmūnēmor, òris.

form, forma, ac, f.; figura,  
 ae, f.; spēcī, ëi, f. (p. 64).

form, to, fingo, lñx, factum,  
 3. *In form a judgment, Jūdicio,*

avī, Itum, 1;—*a plan, consa-*

*lum capio.*

former, pīstimus, a, um.  
 former (of time), òlim, ade.

formerly, quondam, abd.;  
 òlim, ade.

formidable, formidolōsus,  
 a, um.

forsooth, sāne, adv.

fort, castrum, l, n.; arx,  
 cit, f.; castellum, l, n.

forth from, ex, ex, prep.,  
 (gov. abl.).

fortification, mūnitio,  
 ònis, f.; mūnīmentum, l, n.

fortify, to, cōmūnīo (mū-  
 nū), lvi, Itum, 4.

fortitude, fortitudo, ònis, f.

fortress, castellum, l, n.

fortune, fortuna, ae, f.

fortune, good, felicitas,  
 ònis, f.

forty, quadriginta, indec.

forum, fōrum, l, n.

found, to, condō, didi,  
 dīsum, 3.

**GATE.**  
 foundation, fundāmentum,  
 l, n. *From the foundation of*

*the city, ab urbe conditā.*

four, quātuor (quattuor); quāl-  
 em (distributive).

fourth, quartus, a, um.

France, Gallia, ae, f.

fraud, frāns, dis, f.; dōlūs,  
 l, m.; fallāca, ac, f. (p. 116).

free, liber, a, um; sōlītus,  
 a, um; he was free to, etc., ei-

lēuit, foll. by in fin.

free, te, liberō, avī, Itum,  
 1 (with acc. and abl., also with

prep. or a, ab, sometimes with  
 ex); mandūto, misi, missum,

3 (to free a slave); solvo, f.

free, liber, a, um; sōlītus,  
 a, um; 3; vindico, avī, Itum, 1

(in libertatem).

free from, to be, vāco, avī,  
 Itum, 1 (with abd.).

free-born, īngēnus, a, um.

freedom, libertas, a, um.

freedom (of the city), cīvitas, òlis, f.

freely, libere, adv.; solūtē,  
 adi.

frequently, saepē, adv.;

friend, amīcus, l, m.; fili-  
 milius, e.

friendly, amīcitus, a, um. *In*

*a manner, amīcī, amīanter;*

friendship, amīctitia, ac, f.;

benevolentia, ae, f.

frightful, horrendus, a, um;

horribilis, c.

fro (to and fro), hue, illuc,  
 adi.

from, a, ab, abs, prep. (gov.  
 abd.); e, ex (out of), prep.

(gov. abd.).

frugality, parsimōnia, ae,

f, frugalitas, atis, f.

fugitive, fugiens, tis.

full, plenus, a, um; (of the

Senate), frēquentis, tis.

Fulvius Flaccus, Fulvius,

l, Flaccus, l, m.

function, officium, l, n.;

mūnum, òris, n.

further, ultra, adv.

future, futūrus, a, um;

future, ill, = hereafter,

posthac.

## G

Gabinius, Gābinius, l, m.

Gades (Cádiz), Gādes, l, m., f.

gain, lucrū, l, m.; mōlū-

mentum, l, n.; fractus, òs, m.

gain, to, dīpiscor, dīceptus,

3.

Gallio, Gallicus, a, um.

gamester, aleator, òris, m.

gape, to, dībisco, dībuptus,

3.

**GO THROUGH.**  
 garb, vestis, ls, f.; veal-  
 mentum, l, n.

garden, hortus, l, m.

garrison, praesidium, l, n.

gate, porta, ae, f.; Jānuia,

ae, f.; tōres, lūm, f.

gather, to, cōgēro, gessi,

gestum, 3; accimilatio, ãvī, Itum,

1; colligo, lēgi, lectum, 3; curpo

(dēcerpo), ps̄, ptum, 3 (to

pluck).

gather together, to, con-

juizo, xl, nectum, 3; congrēgo

ãvī, Itum, 1.

Gaul (the country), Gallia,

ae, f.

Gaul, a native of, Gallus,

l, m.

Gellius, Gellius, l, m.

gem, gemma, ae, f.

general, dux, òcis, c.

generally, plēriusque, adv.

generalship, impēriū, l,

n. (command); scēnū rē mili-

itāris (skill in war). *Under*

*his generalship, etc., eo dicē,*

gentle, molīta, e.

Gergovia, Gergovia, ae, f.

German, a, Germānus, l, m.

get, to, acqūro, līvī, lī-

tum, 3; cōpīo, cōptum, 3;

assēquor, cūtus sum, 3.

gift, dōnum, l, n.; mīnus,

ēris, n.

gird, to, cīno, nxi, nectum, 3;

accīno, nxi, nectum, 3. (Ex. 14.)

give, to, do, dīdi, dītum,

1; dōno, avī, Itum, 1; trīfō,

nl, Itum, 3 (of what is due);

cēdo, cessi, cēsum, 3 (to yield

up).

give up, to, concēdo, ess,

cessum, 3.

glad, laetus, a, um.

gladly, laetē, adv.; oftener

at, laetus, sea St. L. G. 343.

gloom, aēgritudo, mīs, f.;

tristitia, ac, f.;

glory, glōria, ac, f.

go, to, vālo, ul, sum, 3; eo,

lītum, 4; prōfīscor, factus

sum, 3.

go astray, to, aberro, avī,

Itum, 1.

go away, to, ēbeo, ll, Itum,

4; discēdo, cessi, cēsum, 3.

go down, to, descendō, di,

sum, 3. (Of the sun), ruo, rui,

rūlum, 3.

go from, to, dēcēdo, cess,

cessum, 3.

go further, to, prōcedō,

cessi, cēsum, 3.

go over, to, ēbeo, ll, Itum,

4 (p. 16).

go through, to, permeo,

avī, Itum, 1.

## GOAT.

**goat**, cāper, prī, m.; hircus, l. m.; cāpula, ac, f. (*she-goat*).  
**God**, Deus, l. m., and *J.*; plur. Dii rather than Del.  
**gold**, aurum, l. n.  
**Gongylus**, Gongylus, l. m.  
**good**, bonus, a, um; comp. melior; sup. optimus.  
**good breeding**, hūmānitas, atis, f.  
**good fortune**, felicitas, atis, f.  
**goodness**, bónitas, atis, f.  
**good-will**, studium, l. n.  
**Graeciōlēi**, Graeciōlē, órum, m.  
**grand**, grandis, e; magnus, a, um. *To speak grandly*, magnū loqui (*poet.*).  
**grapes**, óva, ae, f.; rācēmus, l. m. (*a bunch*).  
**grappler**, corvus, l. m. (*See p. 70.*)  
**gratify**, to, dēlecto, ávi, átum, i; plāceo, ul, Itum, 2.  
**gratifying**, grātūs, a, um.  
**great**, ingens, tis.  
**greater number** (*of part*), the, plērūmique, adv. (*with gen.*)  
**greatest**, summus, a, um.  
**greatly**, multum, atre; magnōpēre, ade; valde, ade; to auctiōne greatly, magnu in hōnore hābēo.  
**greatness**, magnitudo, Itis, f.; amplitudo, Itis, f.  
**Greece**, Græcia, ae, f.  
**greedy**, ávarus, a, um; ávidus, a, um.  
**Greek**, Græcus, a, um.  
**grief**, dolor, óris, m.  
**grieve**, to, dolo, ul, Itum, 2.  
**groan**, gēmo, ul, Itum, 3.  
**groan**, gēmitus, Itis, m.  
**ground**, solum, l. n.; terra, ae, f.  
**guard**, to, dēfendo, di, sum, 3; tuor, Itus sum, 2; custōdo, ivi, Itum, 4.  
**guardian**, custos, bōls, m.  
**guide**, duxtor, óris, m.; dux, diuis, c.  
**guide**, to, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
**guilt**, culpa, ae, f.; scēnius, óris, n.  
**guiltless**, innocens, tis; insens, tis; imoxius, a, um.  
**guilty**, nōcens, tis; noxius, a, um.

**H**

**Hail**, grandis, Itis, f.  
**hair**, crīsis, ls, m.; cāpillus, l. m.; cōma, ae, f. (*p. 11.*)  
**half**, dimidium, l. n.  
**Halicarnassus**, Hālicar-

## HELP.

nassus, l. f.; of —, Hālicar-  
nassensis, c.  
**hand**, manus, Itis, f. On the other hand, contra, ade; on the right (or left), dext̄ia (laevia) manū.  
**hand**, to, trādo, Idi, Itum, 3; in manus do.  
**handsome**, formōsus, a, um; pulcherr, ra, rum.  
**Hannibal**, Hannibal, illis, m.  
**happen**, to, contigo, tig, 3.  
**happy**, beatus, a, um; felix, Itis (*p. 21.*)  
**harangue**, órāto, ónis, f.; concio, ónis, f.  
**harbour**, portus, Itis, m. (*dat.* and *all.* plu., Itus and Itibus.)  
**hard**, durus, a, um.  
**harp**, lȳra, ae, f.; testifido, Itis, f.  
**harshly**, sēvērē, adv.; dūriter, adv.; acerbe, otr.  
**hasten**, to, festino, ávi, átum, i; próprio, ávi, átum, 3; contendo, di, tūm, 3; accēso, ávi, Itum, 1.  
**hate**, to, óff (defective); abominor, atus, i; detestor, atus, 1.  
**hated**, invīsus, a, um.  
**hateful**, ódiosus, a, um; detestabilis, e.  
**hatred**, ódium, l. n.; detestatio, ónis, f.  
**have**, to, hābeo, ul, Itum, 2; teno, ul, Itum, 2; often sum, with dat. of person.  
**he**, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud, pronom.  
**head**, cāput, Itis, n.; vertex, Itis, m. (*p. 46.*)  
**heat**, to, mēdere, 2; sāno, avī, atum, i (*p. 45.*)  
**health**, sālus, Itis, f.; vālestudo, Itis, f.; sūltas, atis, f.  
**health**, to be in good, valeo, ul, Itum, 2.  
**healthy**, sānus, a, um; salubris, e.  
**hear**, to, audio, ivi, Itum, 4; accipio, cēpl, ceptum, i.  
**heart**, cor, dis, n.; pectus, óris, n.  
**heat**, calor, óris, m.; aestus, Itis, m.; ardor, óris, m.  
**heaven**, cōstum, l. n.  
**heavy**, gravis, e.  
**Helen**, Hēlēna, ae, f.  
**help**, auxiliū, l. n.; òpī (gen.); acc. opīm; abl. òpīe, f.  
**help**, to, adjuvo, ávi, Itum, 1 (with acc.); auxilior, atus, i (*dat.*); subvenio, veni, ventum, 4 (with dat.).

## HORSE.

**Helvetian**, Hēlvētius, a. um; Hēlvētius, a, um.  
**Helveti**, Hēlvēti, órum, m.  
**Hephaestion**, Hēphāestion, ónis, m.  
**Hercules**, Hērcles, ls, m.  
**Hercynian**, Hērcyniān, a, um.  
**Herdonea**, Hērdōneā, ac, f.  
**here**, hic, ade.  
**hero**, hēros, óls, m.; (*often*) vir, viri, m.  
**hesitate**, to, dūbito, ávi, atum, i; with inf. (when it signifies to hesitate), it is followed by num and subj. 3; cunctator, átus, 1.  
**hesitation**, dūbitatio, ónis, f.; cunctatio, ónis, f.  
**hide**, to, celo, ávi, átum, i; abde, didi, dūtum, 3; condō, didi, dūtum, 3; abscondo, di and didi, dūtum, 3.  
**hideous**, déformis, e; horridus, a, um.  
**high**, altus, a, um; at a higher rate, plāris (*lx. 21.*)  
**highest**—eminent, summus, a, um; = greatest, maximus, a, um, m.  
**highly**, to esteem highly, magno in hōnore hābēo.  
**high-souled**, magnāimius, a, um.  
**hill**, collis, ls, m.  
**himself**, herself, etc., ipse, a, um (agreeing with substantive), sed.  
**hinder** (*adj.*), postérior, us.  
**hinder**, to, impēdo, ivi, Itum, 4; obsto, Iti, titum, 1; prohibeo, ul, Itum, 2 (*Ex. 28.*)  
**his-own**, suus, a, um.  
**Histaeus**, Histaeus, l. m.  
**history**, histōria, ae, f.; annales, lūm, m.  
**hither**, huc, ade.  
**Ho**, echo! interj.  
**hold**, to, tēnō, ul, Itum, 2; hābeo, ul, Itum, 2.  
**holy**, sanctus, a, um; sacer, crā, crūn (*p. 9.*)  
**home**, domus, Itis, f.; at home, domi; from home, dōmo.  
**Homer**, Hōmerus, l. m.  
**honour**, hōnor, óris, m.; good faith, fidē, Iti, f.; = reverence, amplitudo, Itis, f.; = virtue, honestas, atis, f.  
**honourable**, dēcōrūs, a, um; amplius, a, um.  
**hope**, spes, ói, f.  
**hope**, to, spero, ávi, Itum, 1.  
**horn**, cornu, ls; plur. cornua, n.  
**horse**, equus, l. m.; = eqūs, equites, um, m.

## HORSEBACK.

horseback, *on*, *ex equo*.  
 horsemanship, *equitudo*,  
*de dum, per* of *equito*, *i.*  
 hospitality, *hospitium*, *i.*  
*n.*; *hospititas*, *atis, f.*  
 hostage, *obesa*, *ids, m.* and  
*f.*  
 hostile, *hostilis*, *a, um;*  
*iniquus, a, um* (*p. 18*).  
 Hostilius, *Hostilius*, *i, m.*  
 hour, *hora*, *ae, f.*  
 house, *edes*, *tum, f.*; *dō-*  
*mus, ds, f.*  
 how, *quemadmodum*, *conj.*  
 however, *tamen, conj.*  
 howl, *to*, *cōflo, cōfli, jactum,*  
*3; prōficio, jactum, 3.*  
 hurry, *to*, *hurry-about*,  
*to*, *trēpido, āvi, ānum, i.*  
 husband, *māritus, i, m.*  
*vir, vīri, m.* (*see p. 17*); *conjux,*  
*ūgīs, m. also wife, f.*  
 Hydaspes, *Hydaspes, is, m.*  
 Hyastaspes, *Hyastaspes, is, m.*

## I

I, *ego, met.*  
 iambic verse, *iambus, i.*  
*m.*  
 icy, *frigidus, a, um; gēli-*  
*dus, a, un.*  
 if, *si.*  
 ignorant, *ignarus, a, um;*  
*insciens, tis.*  
 ignorant of, *to be to*,  
*= ignore, ignoro, āvi, ānum, i.*  
*(with acc.).*  
 ill, *ātī,* = bad, *mālus, a,*  
*un.*; sick, *acer, gra, grum.*  
 illustrious, *clarus* (*prac-*  
*stans*), *a, uni.*  
 image, *imago, Inis, f.*  
*stūdiūlārum, i, ..; effigies, ēi,*  
*f. (p. 19).*  
 immense, *immensus, a, uni.*  
 immortal, *immortalis, e,*  
 impede, *to*, *impeditio, īvi,*  
*ītum, 4; prohibeo, n, ītum, 2,*  
*impedito, n, ītum, 2;*  
*impedio, dī, 2.*  
 impiety, *impīetia, ēīs, f.*  
 impious, *impīus, a, uni.*  
 implement, *instrumentum,*  
*i, n.*  
 importance, *of*, *gravis, e;*  
*gravior, us.*

## INJURE

important, *gravis, e.*  
 importune, *to*, *lācesco, īvi,*  
*ītum, 4.*  
 impose on, *to*, *impōso,*  
*posui, possum, i; (with dat. and*  
*acc., or dat., only).*  
 impression, *opīcio, ūnis, f.*  
 impulse, *impulsus, us, m.*  
 in, *in prep.*: with abl. sig-  
*nifies in only; with acc. into,*  
*against, etc.*  
 in the mean time, *inter-*  
*īm, adv.*  
 inasmuch, *quoniam, conj.,*  
*quoniam, conj.*  
 incentive, *irritamentum,*  
*i, n.*  
 incessantly, *assiduē, adv.*;  
*perpetuo, adv.*  
 incorruptibility, *integ-*  
*ritas, ēīs, f.; immōcta, ae, f.*  
 incredible, *incredibilis, e,*  
*indeed, quidēm, adv. (en-*  
*cīt).*  
 India, *India, ae, f.*  
 indignation, *indignatio,*  
*īnis, f.*  
 indolence, *ēīconia, ae, f.*  
*desidia, ac, f.; inertia, ae, f.*  
 indolent, *sōcros, dis; seg-*  
*nis, e; ignavus, a, um* (*p. 45*);  
 indulgently, *bēnigūe, adv.*  
 blande, *adv.*  
 Indus, *Indus, i, m.*  
 industry, *diligētia, ae, f.*  
 infant, *infans, tis, c.*  
 infatuated, *dēmēs, tis,*  
 infer, *to*, *colligo, lēgi, lec-*  
*tum, 3; coēficio, si, sum, 3.*  
 inferior, *inferior, ūris,*  
 infinite, *infinitus, a, um.*  
 inflame, *to*, *inflammo, āvi,*  
*ānum, i; exctio, āvi, ānum;*  
*accendo, si, ānum, 3.*  
 inflict, *to*, *(often) afficio,*  
*ēci, īctum, 3; to inflict punish-*  
*ment, poena ītumē.*  
 influence, *auctoritas, ēīs,*  
*f. (p. 17).*  
 influence, *to*, *sukdeo, si,*  
*sum, 2; mōveo, mōvi, motum,*  
*2.*  
 inform, *to*, *ālīquem certi-*  
*ōrem ūcio, ūci, factum, 3.*  
 ingennit, *calliditas, ēīs,*  
*f.; solerteria, ae, f.*  
 inhabitant, *īnōla, ae, c.*  
 inhabit, *to*, *īnōlo, ul,*  
*ūlum, 3; hābito, āvi, ānum, i.*  
 inhabited, *īnōlū, ūfēma, tis*  
*(Ex. 47).*  
 inhuman, *crūdēlis, e; im-*  
*mānta, e; īnhumānus, a, uni.*  
 injure, *to*, *īnōdo, si, sum,*  
*3; mōceo, ul, Z.*

## INVITE

injurious, *īnōrīsens, a,*  
*ūnīcīcōsens, a, um.*  
 injury, *īnjūria, ae, f.; noxa,*  
*ae, f.*  
 innocence, *īnnōcentia, ae,*  
*f.; īntēritas, ēīs, f.*  
 innocent, *īnnōcēns, tis; īn-*  
*nōcēns, a, um.*  
 innumerable, *īnnōmērā-*  
*bills, e.*  
 in order that, *ut cōny*  
*with subj.*  
 in public, *publīce, adv.*  
 inquire, *to*, *quāero, quē-*  
*āvi, ītum, 3; percontor, ītum-*  
*sum, i.*  
 insignificant, *īnīcīvī, e;*  
*parvus, s, um.*  
 insolence, *īnīlēntia, ae, f.*  
 insolently, *īnīlēntē, adv.*  
 instigation, *īnstigātō, ūnis,*  
*f.; at his friend's īstigātō,*  
*hortante īmico.*  
 instruct, *to*, *ēīfīco, āvi,*  
*ānum, i.*  
 intelligent, *īntēllītūs, a, um;*  
*perspicax, acta.*  
 intemperance, *īntēmpō-*  
*rātia, ae, f.*  
 intend, *to*, *cōgīlo, āvi,*  
*ānum, i; ītūtio, ul, ītum, 3*  
*(often expressed by fut. parti-*  
*cle act.).*  
 intense, *ītēnuus, a, um;*  
*vēlēnuus, tis.*  
 intention, *ītēpōlūm, i, n.*  
 interest, = advantage, com-  
*mōdūm, i, n. = payment for*  
*usufruct, ūnis, ūris, n.*  
 interior, *īntēriōr, ūris.*  
 interpreter, *īntēprētēs, ēīs,*  
*m. and f.*  
 intervene, *to*, *īntērēdo,*  
*cessi, cēssum, 3; ītērvēnō,*  
*vēni, vēntum, 4.*  
 interview, *ītēlōqūlūm, i, n.*  
 intestine, *īntēstīnūs, a,*  
*um.*  
 into, *in prep. (with acc.).*  
 intoxicated, *ēībrīs, a, um.*  
 introduce, *to*, *ādhibeo, ul,*  
*ānum, 2.*  
 invade, *to*, *īnvāde, si, um,*  
*3; ītrāppo, ūp, ūptum, 3 (with*  
*in and acc.); īncurro, ri, sum,*  
*3 (with in and acc.).*  
 in various ways, *vārie,*  
*adv.*  
 invest, *to*, = to besiege, ob-  
*ādeo, ūdī, ūssum, 2; = to put*  
*out money, collocō, āvi, ānum,*  
*i; — with authority, pētētā.*  
 item do, *dēdī, ītum, 1.*  
 investigate, *to*, *ēīplōrō,*  
*āvi, ītum, 1.*  
 invite, *to*, *īnvīto, āvi,*  
*ānum, i; vēō, āvi, ītum, 1.*

Iphī-  
 Ireland,  
 iron,  
 iron(ron),  
 island,  
 issue,  
 issū,  
 Edīcō,  
 forth,  
 dīlor, cē-  
 Italia,  
 Itha-  
 Itaha

Jew,  
 iocō,  
 aūs, tis  
 join,  
 to join  
 tēre mi-  
 jour-  
 via, ac, f.  
 Journ-  
 tū sum-  
 joy, s  
 ae, f.  
 joyfu-  
 judge,  
 judge;  
 i; exist-  
 judge  
 Jugū  
 June,  
 Juno,  
 Jupiter,  
 just,  
 justi-  
 Justly  
 adū,  
 Juver-  
 f.

Kaler-  
 keep,  
 1.  
 keep  
 item, 2.  
 keen,  
 kill, t  
 interimo, f  
 kind,  
 kind (d  
 kind f  
 ae, f.  
 kind  
 f.; cē-  
 bēnd

## IPHICRATES.

Iphicrātes, Iphicrātes, is, n.  
Ireland, Hibernia, ae, f.  
iron, ferrum, i, n.  
iron (of iron, or made of iron), ferrens, a, um.  
island, insula, ae, f.  
issue, exitus, is, m.; eventus, is, m.; fluis, is, m.  
issue, to, = to (a command), edico, xi, etum, 3; = to go forth, exeo, ii, itum, 4; egredior, cesus, 3.  
Italy, Italia, ae, f.  
Ithaca, Ithaca, ae, f.  
Ithacan, Ithacus, a, um.

## J

Jew, Jūdaeus, i, m.  
jocosity, Jōcōsē, adv.; jocans, tia (see St. G. 34).  
join, to, jungo, i, etum, 3; to join battle, proelium coniunctre misi, missum, 3.  
journey, iter, itineris, n.; via, ae, f.  
journey, to, proficisci, feceris sum, 3.  
joy, gaudium, i, n.; heilitia, ac, f.  
joyfully, libens, is.  
judge, iudex, is, m.  
judge, to, iudico, āvi, ātum, 1; existimo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
judgment, iudicium, i, n.  
Jugurtha, Jugurtha, ae, m.  
June, Jūnius, i, m.  
Juno, Jūno, onis, f.  
Jupiter, Jūpiter, Jōvius, m.  
just, aequus, a, um.  
justice, justitia, ae, f.  
justly, justè, adv.; mērito, adu.  
Juventas, Juventas, aīs, f.

## K

Kalends, kalendae, ārum, f.  
keep, to, servo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
keep off, to, arco, ui, itum, 2.  
keen, acer, cris, cre.  
kill, to, neco, āvi, ātum, 1; interimo, emi, emptum, 3; interficio, feci, fecutum, 3 (p. 3).  
kind, bēnignus, a, um.  
kind (subs.), genua, ēris, n.  
kind feeling, bēnvolētia, ae, f.  
kindness, bēnignitas, ātis, f.; clementia, ae, f.; a kindness, bēnificium, i, n.

## LAUGHTER.

king, rex, rēgis, m.  
kingdom, regnum, i, n.  
knee, genū, is; plur. genua, uum, n.  
knight, ēquæ, itis, m.  
know, to, = to be aware of, scio, iv, itum, 4; = to become acquainted with; cognoscō, īvi, itum, 3; = to understand, intellegō, ext, ectum, 3.  
know, not to, nescio, ivi, itum, 4.  
known, nōius, a, um.

## L

Labienus, Labienus, i, m.  
labour, to, lābōro, āvi, ātum, 1; litor, mens and nixus sum, 3.  
laborious, opērōsus, a, um.  
Lacedaemon, Lacedaemon, onis, f.; Sparta, ae, f.  
Lacedaemonians, Lācēdāmoni, onim, m.  
lade, to, ānēro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
laden, ānūstus, a, um.  
Laelius, Laelius, i, m.  
Laenias, Laenias, ātis, m.  
Laevinius, Laevinius, i, m.  
Lagus, Lāgus, i, m.  
lake, lacus, is, m.  
lamentation, lāmentum, i, n. (usually plur.); plorātus, is, m.  
lamentation, to make, lāmentor, ātus sum, 1.

Lamia, Lamia, ae, n.  
Lampsacus, Lampsacus, i, f.; *of Lampsacus*, lampsācēus, a, um.  
land, ager, gr̄i, m.; patria, ae, f. (*native land*); terra, ae, f. (*a country*).  
land, to, (*intrans.*) ēgrēfūlōr, gressus sum, 3 (with abl.); (*trans.*) expōno, pōsul, positum, 3.  
large, magnus, a, um; largus, a, um; grandis, e.  
Lartius, Lartius, i, m.  
last, ultimus, a, um; = immediately preceding, proximus, a, um.  
lastly, dēfinie, adv.; postrēmo, adv.; ad extrēmum (used adverbially).  
late, ēcrus, a, um; = recent, recens, i's.  
Latin, Latinus, a, um.  
latter, postērior, us; the former—the latter, illē—hic.  
laugh, to, rideo, si, sum, 2; to laugh at, irrideo, 2; ðērido, 2.  
laughter, risus, is, m.; = derision, irrisus, is, m.

## LIBERALITY.

law, lex, lēgis, f.; ius, īrīs  
n. (p. 42).  
lawful, justus, a, um; īgititius, a, um. *It is lawful*.  
lascivit, uit, 2 (with dat. of person and *inſi.*).  
laz, to, = to plac, pōno  
posui, pōsum, 3; lōco, āvi  
ātum, i.  
lay before, to, prōpone  
posui, pōsum, 3.  
lay aside, to, dēpono, pōsuī,  
itum, 3; sépono, pōsuī, itum,  
3; = to strip of, exuo, uit,  
ātum, 3.  
lead to, dico, xi, etum, 3.  
lead forth or out, to,  
ēdico, xi, etum, 3.  
lead over, to, transdico,  
xi, etum, 3.  
lead round, to, circumdico,  
xi, etum, 3.  
leader, dux, dūs, c.; duces,  
or, īris, m.  
leap, to, sallo, si or ut, sal-  
tum, 4.  
leap down, to, dēsallo, al-  
lui, or Ivi, salutum, 4.  
learn, to, disco, didic̄, 3.  
learned, doctus, a, um.  
leave, or leave behind,  
to, lēquo, more freq. relinquo,  
lētum, 3.  
left, = remaining, rēlinquus,  
a, um; of the hands, lacus,  
a, um.  
legion, lēgō, onis, f.  
leisure, ōtium, i, n.  
leisurely (adv.), ōtōsē, adv.;  
lenē, adv.; aut, tentus, a, um.  
Lemnos, Lemnos, i, f.  
length (of time), diātrimitas,  
ētis, f.; longituitas, ātis, f.  
length at, tandem, adv.;  
diānum, adv.  
lengthen, to, prōducō, xi,  
etum, 3; extendo, di, tum, 3.  
lenient, cīmenus, tis; lēnia,  
e; mitis, c.  
less (adj.), minor, os. *At a*  
*less price*, mīnoris.  
less (adv.), minus, adv.  
lesson, praeceptum, i, n.  
exemplum, i, n.; dōcēmentum,  
i, n.  
let, to, permitto, nisi, mis-  
sum, i; suo, ivi, itum, 3; con-  
cedo, cess, cessum, 3.  
let go, to, ēmitto, nisi,  
missum, 3.  
letter, littōra, ae, f. (*of al-*  
*phabet*); littōra, arum, or  
epistōla, ae, f. (*an epistle*).  
levy, dēlectus, is, m.  
liberal, libēralis, e.  
liberality, libēralitas, alię

| LIBERTY.   | MANIFEST.  | MERRIT.   |
|--|--|---|
| Liberty, libertas, <i>ātis, f.</i>   | Inſimus, or <i>īmūs</i> ; of birth, mālūs, <i>a, um</i> ; a man of low birth, mālo gēnērē nātūs.   | mankind, homines, <i>ām, c.</i>   |
| library, bibliotheca, <i>ac, f.</i>  | lowest (man), inſimus, <i>a, um.</i>   | Manlius, Manlius, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| lasciviousness, libido, <i>īlīdōs, f.</i>  | lowly, hūmīla, <i>e.</i>   | manner, mōdūs, <i>ī, m.; in the manner of, ritu, with gen.</i>  |
| Lascivious, <i>īlīcīvīs, ae, f.</i>  | Lucani, Lūcāni, īrūm, <i>m.</i>  | many, multi, <i>ac, a.</i>  |
| Licinius Calvus, Licinius, <i>īlīcīnius, īlīvūs, ī, m.</i>                           | Lucania, Lūcāniā, <i>ae, f.</i>  | Marcellus, Marcellus, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| lictor, lictor, <i>īlīktōr, īlīktōr, ī, m.</i>                                       | Lucerīa, Lūcēriā, <i>ae, f.</i>  | march, Iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>  |
| lieutenant, legatus, <i>īlītēnānt, īlīgātōs, ī, m.</i>                               | Lucilius, Lucilius, <i>ī, m.</i>   | march, to (intrans.), prōfīdīscor, factus sum, <i>ī; Incrōdo, cessi, cessum, <i>ī; (trans.) dūco, xī, etūm, <i>ī.</i></i></i> |
| life, vīta, <i>ae, f.</i> ; actua, <i>ālīs, f.</i>                                   | Lucius Catilina, Lūcius, <i>ī, Catilīna, ac, m.</i>  | march, to be on, in ag-   |
| lifeless, mortuus, <i>a, um;</i>   | luckless, infelix, Iēs, ir- fauſtus, <i>a, um.</i>   | mine, itinēre, <i>ac, esse.</i>   |
| exultūs, <i>c (and us, a, um);</i>   | Luppia or Lippe (river), Luppia, <i>ac.</i>  | Marcius, Marcilīus, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| light ( <i>adjs.</i> ), lux, lūcīs, <i>f.</i>  | lust, libido, <i>īlībīdō, īlībīdō, ī, m.</i>   | Marcomanni, Marcomānī, <i>ī, m.</i>   |
| lightning, fulgor, ūrlīs, <i>n.</i>  | Lycurgus, Lycurgus, <i>ī, m.</i>   | Mardonius, Mardonīus, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| like, similis, <i>e (with gen. or dat.).</i>   | Lysander, Lysander, <i>īlīsāndēr, ī, m.</i>  | Marius, Mārius, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| limb, membrum, <i>īlīmbrūm, ī, m.</i>  | magistrate, māgistrātūs, <i>īs, m.</i>   | mark, nota, <i>ac, f.; signum, <i>t, n.</i></i>   |
| line, līnea, <i>ac, f.</i> ; (of battle) Actes, <i>īlītēs, ī, f.</i>                 | magnificent, māgnificēns, <i>īpērbūs, ī, m.</i>  | marry, to, (of the man) dūco, <i>xī, etūm, <i>ī; (of the woman) nōbo, pī, ptūm, <i>ī (with dat.).</i></i></i>                 |
| line, to, substēno, strāvi, strāvūm, <i>ī.</i>                                       | M  | Marseilles, Massilia, <i>ac, f.</i>   |
| Lingōnes, Lingōnes, <i>īm, m.</i>  | Macedonian ( <i>suis.</i> ), Mā- cōdīo, <i>īlīcōdīo, ī, m. (adj.)</i> , Mā- dōnīcīo, <i>a, um.</i> | marvellous, mārvelōs, <i>a, um;</i>   |
| lion, leo, ūlīs, <i>m.</i>   | Mageaus, Magneus, <i>ī, m.</i>   | mīfābilis, <i>e; unrisfīcīs, <i>a, um;</i></i>  |
| Liscus, Liscus, <i>ī, m.</i>   | māgistrātō, māgistrātūs, <i>īs, m.</i>   | massacre, caedes, <i>īs, f.</i>   |
| Litavicus, Litavicus, <i>ī, m.</i>   | māgnificēnt, māgnificēns, <i>īpērbūs, ī, m.</i>  | master, (who teaches) mā- gister, <i>īlīgīster, ī, m.; (who owns) dō- minus, <i>ī, m.</i></i>                                 |
| little, parvus, <i>a, um; to care little, parv pendere.</i>                          | maintain, māintānē, <i>īlīntānē, ī, m.</i>   | matron, matrōna, <i>ac, f.</i>  |
| live, to, vivo, <i>xī, etūm, <i>ī;</i></i>   | sustineo, ul, <i>īlīstīnē, ī, m.</i>   | matter, res, <i>ēlī, f.</i>   |
| dēgo, gl, <i>ī.</i>  | sum, <i>īlīsum, ī, m.</i>  | Mausolus, Mausōlus, <i>ī, m.</i>  |
| living-creature, ānimans, <i>ānīmās, m. and n.</i>                                   | majority, plūrēm, <i>īlītūm, ī, m.</i>   | may, <i>I, livē, iūt, and tuum est (followed by dat. of person).</i>  |
| Livius, Livius, <i>ī, m.</i>   | make, to, fālō, fēlī, fac- tūm, <i>ī; effīcio, feci, factūm, <i>ī;</i></i>                         | mean, <i>ūtūpī, ul, velle</i>   |
| lo, en! ecce! interj.  | fālō, fēlī, feci, factūm, <i>ī;</i>  | means of, by, per, prep., ( <i>govs. acc.</i> )   |
| load, to, ūnēro, īvī, <i>ālūm, <i>ī,</i></i>   | fabrico, ūvt, <i>ālūm, <i>ī;</i></i>   | meantime, intērim, <i>ādē;</i>  |
| Loire, Ligēris, <i>īs, m.</i>  | make for, to, pētō, īvī and <i>īlī, ītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  | intēres, <i>ādū.</i>  |
| long ( <i>adj.</i> ), longinquus, <i>a, um;</i> diuturnus (the latter of time only). | make laws, to (Ex. 22), instituo, <i>īlītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>   | measure, mensūra, <i>ac, f.</i>   |
| long ( <i>adv.</i> ), diu, compar., diutius.   | make off, to, ūbēo, <i>īlī, ītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  | measure ( <i>of corn</i> ), mōdūs, <i>ī, m.; a plan, consilium, <i>ī, n.</i></i>  |
| long, for, to, ardeo, <i>īlī, ītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>                                    | make a stand, to, occi- sistō, <i>īlītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  | ratiō, ūnīs, <i>f.</i>  |
| long, to, ūveo, <i>ī.</i>  | make war upon, to, bel- lum inferō, thūlī, lātūm ferre, <i>ī.</i>                                  | measure, to, mātōr, men- sus sum, <i>ī; īmēlōr, ī; mēto, īvī, ītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>   |
| longing, a, desiderium, <i>ī, n.</i>   | male, ūbēt, and adj. māe, māris, <i>m.; adj. masculūs, <i>a, um;</i></i>                           | mechanician, mēchānicus, <i>ī, m.; artīfēx, īlīcē, īlīcē, ī, m.; māchīnātor, ūrīs, <i>m.</i></i>                              |
| look, to, conspicio, exi- ectum, <i>ī.</i>   | man, hōmo, <i>īlīs, c; vir, virī, <i>m. (p. 17); man by man, virītūm, <i>ādū.</i></i></i>          | Media, Mēdiā, <i>ac, f.</i>   |
| look down upon, to, despicio, spexi spectum, <i>ī.</i>                               | make a stand, to, occi- sistō, <i>īlītūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  | Megara, Mēgārā, <i>ōrūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  |
| look for, to, quero, qua- sevi, quæstūm, <i>f.</i>                                   | make war upon, to, bel- lum inferō, thūlī, lātūm ferre, <i>ī.</i>                                  | megarian, Mēgārensis, <i>ā.</i>   |
| lose, to, ūmīto, mīstī, mī- sum, <i>ī; perdo, didi, ditum, <i>ī (p. 74).</i></i>     | male, ūbēt, and adj. māe, māris, <i>m.; adj. masculūs, <i>a, um;</i></i>                           | Mēmōrīa, mēmōrīa, <i>ac, f.</i>   |
| loss, damnum, <i>ī, n.</i> ; jactū- ra, <i>ātīs, f.</i>                              | man, hōmo, <i>īlīs, c; vir, virī, <i>m. (p. 17); man by man, virītūm, <i>ādū.</i></i></i>          | memory, mēmōrīa, <i>ac, f.</i>  |
| lot, sors, ūlī, <i>f.</i> ; fortūna, ūlīs, <i>f. (p. 47).</i>                        | manage, to, administrō, īvī, <i>ālūm, <i>ī.</i></i>  | merchant, mercator, ūrīs, <i>m.</i>   |
| love, āmor, ūrīs, <i>m.</i> ; cārlīta, ūlīs, <i>f. (p. 47).</i>                      | management, administrā- tō, ūlīs, <i>ālūm.</i>   | mere, mērūs, <i>a, um; ipse, ī, um (Ex. 43).</i>  |
| love, to, ūmo, īvī, <i>ālūm, <i>ī;</i></i>   | manifest, mānifestus, <i>ā- um;</i>  | merely, tantum, <i>ātē.</i>   |
| love, ūmōemus, <i>a, um.</i>   | open, ūpērtus, <i>a, um.</i>   | merit, virtūs, ūtīs, <i>f.</i> mērītūm, <i>ī, n.</i>  |
| low, inſtrō, <i>a, um (inſtrō,</i>   |  |   |

merior, *ātē.*  
mes, *ātē.*  
met, *ātē.*  
Met, *ātē.*  
mid, *ātē.*  
midy, *ātē.*  
vires, *ātē.*  
all one mile, *ātē.*  
mīum, *ātē.*  
Mile, *ātē.*  
milit, *ātē.*  
ac, *ātē.*  
milk, *ātē.*  
Milt, *ātē.*  
mind, *ātē.*  
Mine, *ātē.*  
Minā, *ātē.*  
mīra, *ātē.*  
misbe- uit, *ātē.*  
mis- eum; *ātē.*  
misfo- atis, *ātē.*  
missi- *ātē.*  
Mith, *ātē.*  
la, *ātē.*  
moat, *ātē.*  
modestus, *ātē.*  
moderā- *ātē.*  
moder- se, *f.* *ātē.*  
moder- of moder- *ātē.*  
(moder- (moder- *ātē.*  
(bāshful) *ātē.*  
modes, *ātē.*  
modest, *ātē.*  
modes, *ātē.*  
money, *ātē.*  
num- *ātē.*  
month, *ātē.*  
moon, *ātē.*  
moral, *ātē.*  
mōre, *ātē.*  
more, *ātē.*  
pl. plūrēm, *ātē.*  
more, *ātē.*  
mort- al, *ātē.*  
most, *ātē.*  
most, *ātē.*  
most, *ātē.*  
aque, aqua, *ātē.*  
mother, *ātē.*  
mount, *ātē.*  
mount, *ātē.*  
l, *m.*

## MERIT.

**merit**, to, mērō, uī, lūm; nōrō, lūs sum, 2.  
messenger, mun̄tis, l, m.  
metal, metālum, l, n.  
**Metellus**, Metellus, l, m.  
**Micipsa**, Micipsa, ae, m.  
midst, in, mēdīlū, a, um.  
midway, mēdīlū, a, um.  
might, vis, vīm, vi; pl.  
vires, f.; rōbur, ūris, n.; with  
all one's might, summā vīor ūpe.  
mile, mīlē, pīsus or pas-  
sum.

**Miletus**, Mīlītūs, l, f.  
military, militāris, e.  
military-service, militāta,  
a.

milk, lac, lactic, n.  
**Miltiades**, Mīltīdēs, ls, m.  
mind, mens, tis, f.; au-  
mus, l, m. (p. 8).  
mindful, mīndūr, ūris.  
**Minerva**, Minerva, ac, f.  
**Minicius**, Mīnīcius, l, m.  
miracle, mīrāklūm, l, n.  
misbecomes, it, dedēct,  
uit, 2 (imper. verb, with acc.  
and inf.).

miserable, miser, ūra,  
ērum; miserabīlēs, e.  
misfortune, cālāmitas,  
atis, f.; malitia, l, n.  
missile, tēlūm, l, n.

**Mithridates**, Mīthrīdātēs,  
ls, m.

moat, fossa, ac, f.  
moderate, mīdēcīs, a, um;  
mēdēsūs, a, um; mēdēcīs, e.  
moderately, mōdētē, adv.;  
modératē, a.

moderation, tēpērātiā,  
se, f.; mōdētēs, se, f.; bounds  
of moderation, mōdūs, l, m.  
modest, mōdēstus, a, um  
(moderate); vērēcūdēs, a, um  
(butiful).

modestly, vērēcūdēs, adv.;  
modēstē, adv.

modesty, pīdōr, ūris, m.  
money, pēcūnia, ac, f.;  
numm̄s, l, m.

month, mensis, ls, m.  
moon, lūna, ac, f.  
moral, sanctus, l, um; mo-  
ras, mōrēs, um, m.

more (adv.), plus, pluris;  
pl. plurē, a.

more, amplius, adv.  
mortal, mortalis, e.

most, plurimus, a, um; al-  
te most, ad summum.  
most persons, plērique,  
aque, aquē.

mother, māter, ūris, f.

mountain, mons, tis, m.

mountaineer, monlānn̄s,  
l, m.

PR. I.—IV.

## NEARNESS.

mourn, to, lāgēo, xl,  
mourn for, to, ūtūm, 2;  
doleo, uī, lūm, 2; plango, nxi,  
netum, 3.

mournful, moestus, a, um;  
mourning, luctus, ūs, m.  
mouth, os, ūrls, n.; fauces,  
lūm, f. (plur.).

move, to, mōveo, mōvi,  
mōtūm, 2; commōveo, mōvi,  
mōtūm, 2.

much, multūm, adv. (with  
gen.); too much, nimis, a.

murder, caedes, ls, f.; hō-  
mīcidium, i, n.

murderer, hōmīcida, ae, c.;  
sicārius, l, m.; interactor,  
oris, m.

multitude, multiplādo, ūlīs,  
f.; the multitude, vulgus, l,  
m. and n.

music, Mūsē, ūrum, f.  
musician, mūsīcius, l, m.

must (v.), nēcessē est.  
myrtle, myrtus, l, f.

myself, ēgo; ipse, lūs,

agreeing with ēgo expressed or  
understood.

## N

Naked, nūdūs, a, um;  
name, nōmēn, ūlīs, n.; in  
the name of, prob. with acc.  
(Ex. 13).

named, cul nōmēn ērat.  
narration, narrātiō, ūlīs,  
f.; in narration, in narrando  
(Ex. 62).

narrow, angustus, a, um;  
arcutus, a, um.

nation, gens, tis, f.  
natural, nātūralis, e.

naturally, nātūraliter, or  
ab. of natura.

nature, nātūra, ac, f.; =  
disposition, indōles, ls, f.; in-  
gēnum, l, n.

naught, nihil: see "No-  
thing."

naval, nāvālis, e.  
**Neapolis**, Nēāpolīs, ls, f.

near (adv.), prōphīquins, a,  
um; comp. propīor, sup. proxim.  
us.

near (adv.), prop̄e, juxta,  
near (p̄p̄t), prop̄e ad  
(with acc.).

nearly, paene, adv.; prop̄e,  
adv.; fermē adv.

nearness, prōphīqūtās,  
act, f.

## NOVELTY.

necessarily, nēcessē, nē-  
cessārio, a.

necessary, to be, ūpus esse  
(see p. 54, 9 308). (followed by  
dat. of person and abl. of thing).

necessity, nēcessitas, atis, f.;  
need, ēgēsia, ūlis, f.; in-  
dīpīa, ac, f. (p. 139).

need, to, ēgeo (indīgo), uī  
2 (followed by gen.).

needy, ēgēns, tis,  
nefarious, nēfāndus,  
um; nēfārius, a, um.

neglect, to, nēglīgo, exi,  
ectum, 3; ūmittō, ūta, mu-  
sum, 3.

negligence, nēglīgentia,  
ac, f.

negligent, nēglīgens, tis,  
neighbouring, vicinus, l,  
um; prōphīquins, a, um; fint-  
imus, a, um; proximus, a, um.

neither (pron.), neuter, .  
ra, rum.

neither (conj.), nec, nēque.  
Nēocles, Nēōclēs, ls, m.

nerve, =vīgor, nervi, ūrum  
m., vīgor, ūris, m.

nest, nīdūs, l, m.

net, ūtē, ls, n. (p. 9).

never, nūnquam, adv.  
Nevertheless, nīhīlōnius,  
adv.; tāmen, adv.

new, nōvūs, a, um; ūtēns,  
tis (p. 8).

night, nox, ūris, f.

night, by, noctū; used ad-  
verbially.

night-watches, excūbiae,  
ſūrum, f.

Nīnus, Nīnūs, l, m.

no or no-one (pron.), nūl-  
lus, a, um; or nōmo (for the  
gen., nullus is used).

noble, nōbīlis, e; clārus, a,  
um; splēndīdus, a, um; noble  
thing, dēcōrum, p. 2.

nobody, nēmo, ūlis, c. (the  
gen. and abl. rarely used).

none, see "No," above.  
nor, nec.

note, to, nōtō, ūvi, ūtūm,  
i; antīnādērto, ūtē, ūtē, 3.

noted, ūtēns, e; nōtūs, a,  
um.

nothing, nihil (ūlī) or nī-  
lūm, l, n.

not, non, adv.; hand, adv.  
After verbs of forbidding, de-  
noting a purpose, &c., ne, with  
subj.; not a whit, nihil admī-  
dūm.

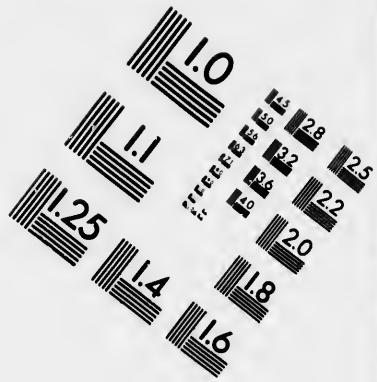
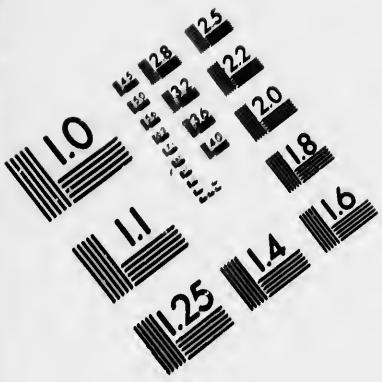
nourish, to, nūtrīo, ūvi,  
lūm, 4; ūlo, uī, ūtē, ūtē, 3.

novel, nōvūs, a, um; ūtē-

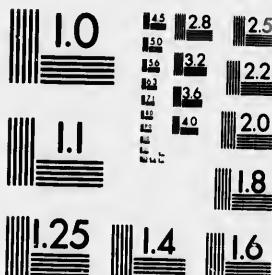
itus, a, um.

novelty, nōvītas, ūtē, ūtē, f.

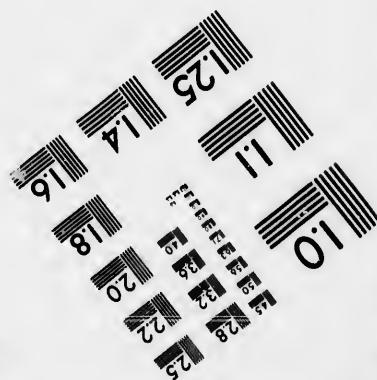
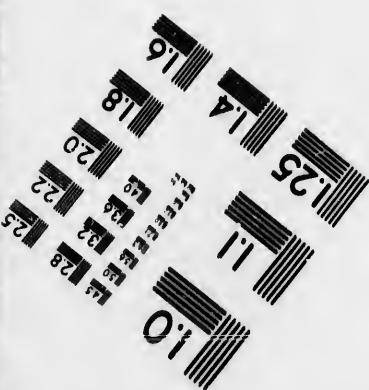




## IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



6"



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14550  
(716) 872-4503



## NOW.

**now**, nunc, *adv.*; *jam*, *adv.*  
**nowhere**, nusquam, *adv.*  
**Numantia**, Nūmantia, *ae, f.*  
numerous, crēber, *ra*, *rum*.  
number, nūmērūs, *i*, *m.*  
**Numidia**, Nūmidia, *ae, f.*

## O

**O**, O! *interj.*  
**oath**, jūrāmentum, *i*, *n.*  
juābrandum, jūrlābrandum, *i*, *n.* (p. 120). **Military oath**, sacrāmentum, *i*, *n.*  
**obedient**, obediens, entis.  
**obey**, to, obēdo, Ivi, Itum, 4; pāreō, ul, Ium, 2; obēs-  
quor, cūlūs sum, 3 (p. 104).  
**object**, prōpositum, *i*, *n.*  
**obligation**, obligatio, ūni,  
*f.*; ūnūs, ūris, *n.*  
**obscure**, obscūrus, *a*, *um* (*of doubtful  
meaning*).  
**obtain**, to, adūpīseor, adēp-  
tus sum, 3; cōsequor, cātus  
sum, 3.  
**obtain-possession-of**, to,  
pōtior, pōtius sum, 4 (with  
*abl.* sometimes *gen.*).  
**occasion**, occasiō, ūni, *f.*:  
tempū, ūri, *n.* (Ex. 23).  
**occupy**, to, occīpo, ūvi, *atūm*, *i*; tēno, ul, tum, 2.  
**occur**, to, accidō, idl, *3*; ūnēto, vēni, ventum, 4 (p. 75);  
fici, feci, factum, 3 (Ex. 41, 1).  
**ocēan**, ūcēanūs, *i*, *m.* *adī:*  
*of or belonging to*, adēquēr,  
*a*, *um*.  
**Octavia**, Octāvia, *ae, f.*  
*of*, = *concerning*, *de*, *prep.*  
(gov. *abl.*), = *out of*, *ex*, *prep.*  
(gov. *abl.*).  
**off**, abhīne, *adv.*  
**offense**, culpa, *ae, f.*; dē-  
lictum, *i*, *n.* (p. 17).  
**offend**, to, = *to make un-*  
*gry*, offendō, *di*, *sum*, 3 (gov.  
*acc.*) = *to injure*, laedo, *si*,  
*sum*; = *to do wrong*, erro,  
ūvi *atūm*, *i*; peccō, ūvi,  
*atūm*, *i*.  
**offer**, to, offēro, obtūll,  
oblāstum, *3*.  
**often**, saepē, *adv.*; = *as*  
*often as*, quātēsēnque, *adv.*  
**oil**, ūleum, *i*, *n.*; ūlivum,  
*i*, *n.*  
**old**, vētūs, ūris, ūp, vētēr-  
mūs. *Also very old*, pērvetūs.  
**old** (*man*), sēnēx, ūnlīs, *m.*  
**old age**, sēnēcta, *ae, f.*  
(usually in poetry).  
**old, very**, pērvetus, ūris, *n.*  
**older**, ūlēor, ūris.

## OVERTAKE.

**Olympiad**, ūlympias, ūdis,  
*f.*  
**on**, ūpēr, *prep.* (gov. *acc.*  
and *abl.*).  
**on account of**, propter,  
*prep.* with *acc.*  
**once**, ūsēl, *adv.*; ūlim,  
*adv.*; quondam, *adv.*  
**once at**, extēpito, *adv.*  
**on foot**, pēdibus.  
**one**, ūnūs, *a*, *um*; quidam,  
quadēdam, quoddam = *a certain*  
*one*, alter, ūra, ūrum = *one of*  
*two*.  
**only**, ūlūm, *adv.*; tantum,  
*adv.*; tantūmōdo, *adv.*  
**open**, ūpērīs, *a*, *um*.  
**open, to**, ūpērī, ul, ertum,  
4; pādo, ul, ūsum and ūsum, 3.  
**openly**, ūpērtē, *adv.*; pālām,  
*adv.*; most openly (Ex. 4).  
**openness**, ūpērtēsime, *adv.*  
**opinion**, sentēntia, *ae, f.*; ūpīno, ūnlīs, *f.*  
**opportunity**, ūcīsīlo, ūnlīs,  
*f.*  
**oppose**, to, ūbōstī, ūlī, ūlī,  
ſtūlū, *3* (with *dat.*); ūppōno,  
pōsū, pōstūm, *3*; ūbōctī, ūclī,  
ſtētū, *3*.  
**oppress**, to, ūpprōmo, ūressi,  
p̄ssūm, *3*; ūxō, ūvi, ūlī, *1*.  
**oppressive**, ūlīnūs, *a*, *um*.  
**or**, aut, vel, *conj.*  
**orator**, ūtātor, ūris, *m.*; ūtētor, ūris, *m.* (p. 149).  
**orchard**, pōmārīum, *i*, *n.*  
**order**, ūrēs, ūlī, *f.*; ūrōd,  
Inls, *m.*; in—that, ut with *sub-*  
*order*, to, = *to command*,  
jubēo, ūsī, ūsum, 2 (with *acc.*  
and *inf.*); ūpērō, ūvi, ūlūm,  
*i* (with *dat.*): = *to arrange*,  
ordinō, ūvi, ūlūm, *i*; ūpōmō,  
pōsū, pōstūm, *3*.  
**ornament**, ornāmentum, *i*,  
*n.*; dēcūs, ūris, *n.*  
**Orōdes**, ūrōdēs, ūsī, *m.*  
**other**, alius, *a*, *ud.* *Of two*,  
alter, ūra, ūrum, *n.*  
**ought**, dēbēo, ul, Itum, 2;  
dōpōtē, ult, 2 (*impers.*).  
**our**, nōster, ūr, ūrum,  
**out**, ūr or ex, *prep.* (gov.  
*abl.*).  
**outshine**, to, ūrēlūcco,  
xl, 2; ūrēntē, ul, 2.  
**outstretch**, to, ūrēntēdo,  
dl, tum, *3*.  
**over** = *beyond*, trans, *prep.*  
(with *acc.*).  
**overcome**, to, ūvīco, ūclī,  
victūm, *3*; ūpērō, ūvi, ūlūm,  
*i*; ūfrāgo, ūglī, ūctūm, *3*.  
**overtake**, to, ūsēqūr, ūlūm,  
*3*; ūcēquor, ūlūm, *3*.

## PECCULAR.

**overthrow**, to, ūdīctō, ūctī,  
ectūm, *3*.  
**own (one's)**, ūprīpus, *a*, *um*.

## P

**Pain**, dōlor, ūris, *m.*  
**pain**, to, ūdōlōr ūffīcio, ūctī,  
fectūm, *3*.  
**paint**, to, ūplāgo, ūxi,  
ctūm, *3*.  
**painter**, ūptōr, ūris, *m.*  
**palisade**, ūlāmū, *i*, *n.*  
**Pan**, ūpan, ūnis, *acc.* ūpana, *m.*  
**Panopion**, ūpanōpīon, ūnlīs,  
*m.*  
**papyrus**, ūpāpīrus, *i*, *m.*  
and ūpāpīrum, ūlī, *n.*  
**pardon**, to, ūignōs, ūvi, ūlī,  
ōtūm, *3* (with *dat.* of pers.);  
acc. of neut. pron. only); con-  
dōmō, ūvi, ūlūm, *i*.  
**pareat**, ūpārēs, ūsī, *m.*  
and ūpārēt, ūpārēs, ūsī, *m.*  
**Parmenio**, ūpārmēnīo, ūnlīs,  
*m.*  
**part**, ūrās, ūsī, *f.*; ūrōtī,  
ūnlī, *f.*  
**part, to**, = *to separate*, ūcē-  
pārō, ūvi, ūlūm, *i*; ūlētūgō, ūxi,  
ctētūm, *3*; = *to go away*, ūdī-  
cēdō, ūcēsī, ūcessūm, *3*; ūgrēdōr,  
gressus ūsum, *3*.  
**partaker**, ūpātēkēs, ūpls, *c.*  
**Partisan**, ūpārthīs, *i*, *m.*  
**particularly**, ūmagūpēr,  
*adv.*  
**party**, ūrātēs, ūlūm, *f.*  
**factio**, ūlīs, *f.*  
**pass**, to, ūprētērō, II, Itum,  
4; ūtransē, II, Itum, 4; *to pass*  
*away*, ūlābor, ūlapsū ūsum, *3*; ūfū-  
tūgī, ūfūgītū, ūsum, *4*; *to pass by*  
(*trans.*), ūprētērō, II, Itum, 4;  
prētervōlō, ūvi, ūlūm, *i*.  
**passage**, ūvā, ūo, ūf., ūtrans-  
itus, ūsī, *m.*; ūrāctēs, ūsī, *m.*; ūa-  
narrow passage, ūfaucēs, ūlūm, *f.*  
**past**, ūprētērūs, ūsī, *m.*  
**præterita**, ūrētūs, ūsī, *n.* *the past*,  
**patrician**, ūpatrīciās, ūsī, *m.*  
**sub**, ūpatrīciās, ūpatrīciā, ūsī,  
*m.*  
**patron**, ūpatrōnīs, ūsī, *m.*  
**Paulus Aemilius**, ūpālūs, ūlīs,  
*i*, ūAemilius, ūlī, *m.*  
**Pausanias**, ūpāsānīas, ūsī,  
*m.*  
**pay**, ūmerces, ūdīs, *f.*; ūlē-  
pēdīum, ūsī, *m.*  
**pay**, to, ūsolō (exsōlō), ūvi,  
ūlūm, *i*.  
**peace**, ūpāx, ūpācīs, *f.*; ūtran-  
quillīs, ūlīs, *f.*  
**peculiar**, ūprīprius, ūsī, *m.*  
**peculiaritā**, ūpīcīlārīa, ūsī,

| PEDIUS.  | POSSESS, TO. | PREVAIL. |
|--|--------------|----------|
| Pedius, Pediūs, <i>i. m.</i>   |              |          |
| Pelopidas, Pelopidas, <i>se. m.</i>                                  |              |          |
| Peloponnesian, Pelopon-  |              |          |
| nnes, <i>-iacus, a. um.</i>  |              |          |
| people, populus, <i>i. m., the</i>                                   |              |          |
| common people, plebs, <i>pl. f.</i>                                  |              |          |
| plebes, <i>e. f.</i> ; homines, <i>um, m.</i>                        |              |          |
| perceive, to, cernere, <i>(no</i>                                    |              |          |
| <i>perf. or sup. in this sense)</i> , <i>j.</i>                      |              |          |
| percepio, cepit, ceptum, <i>j.</i>                                   |              |          |
| perchance, fortasse, <i>adv.</i>                                     |              |          |
| forte, <i>adv.</i> ; forsitan, <i>adv.</i>                           |              |          |
| perfect, perfectus, <i>a. um;</i>                                    |              |          |
| absolutus, <i>a. um.</i>   |              |          |
| perfect, <i>to</i> , perficio, feci,                                 |              |          |
| fecit, <i>3; absolv. vi, atum, j.</i>                                |              |          |
| perform, to, facio, feci,  |              |          |
| factum, <i>j; conficio, feci, factum,</i> <i>3; itum, j; fungor,</i> |              |          |
| funcit sum, <i>3 (with abl.)</i>                                     |              |          |
| perhaps. See PERCHANCE.  |              |          |
| Pericles, Pericles, <i>is. m.</i>                                    |              |          |
| peril, periculum, <i>i. n.</i>                                       |              |          |
| crime, <i>in. n.</i>   |              |          |
| perish, to, pereo, <i>ii. Itum, 4;</i>                               |              |          |
| perire, <i>moriō, tuus sum, j.</i>                                   |              |          |
| permission, vēnīre, <i>ae. f.</i>                                    |              |          |
| Pero, Pero, <i>Ons, f.</i>   |              |          |
| Perses, Perseus, <i>cl. m.</i>                                       |              |          |
| Persia, Persis, <i>Idis, f.</i>                                      |              |          |
| Persian, <i>adj.</i> Persicus, <i>a.</i>                             |              |          |
| um; sub: the Persians, Persae,                                       |              |          |
| Arum.  |              |          |
| person, persona, <i>ae, f.;</i>                                      |              |          |
| some person, aliquis.  |              |          |
| perspicuous, illustris, <i>e.</i>                                    |              |          |
| persuade, to, persuadeo,   |              |          |
| st. sum, <i>2 (with dat.)</i>  |              |          |
| pestilential, pestifer, <i>ēra,</i>                                  |              |          |
| ērum; gravis, <i>e.</i> ; pestilens, <i>ts.</i>                      |              |          |
| Petreins, Petreūs, <i>i. m.</i>                                      |              |          |
| Phæthon, Phæthon, <i>tia, m.</i>                                     |              |          |
| Pharos, Pharos, <i>i. f.</i>   |              |          |
| Phalerum, Phalerum, <i>i. m.</i>                                     |              |          |
| Philip, Philippos, <i>i. m.</i>                                      |              |          |
| philosopher, philosphus,   |              |          |
| <i>i. m.</i>   |              |          |
| philosophy, philosphia,  |              |          |
| <i>ae. f.</i>  |              |          |
| Phocion, Phocion, <i>Ons, m.</i>                                     |              |          |
| Phocbus, Phocbus, <i>i. m.</i>                                       |              |          |
| Phoenician, <i>sub.</i> Phoenix,                                     |              |          |
| Iets, <i>m.</i> ; adj. Phoeniclus, <i>a, um;</i>                     |              |          |
| picture, pictura, <i>ae, f.;</i>                                     |              |          |
| tābula, <i>ae, f.</i>  |              |          |
| piety, pīetas, <i>itis, f.</i>                                       |              |          |
| pine, pinna, <i>ui and i, f.</i>                                     |              |          |
| pino away, <i>to</i> , tibesco, <i>j.</i>                            |              |          |
| pipe (musical), fistula, <i>ae, f.</i>                               |              |          |
| ubia, <i>ae, f.</i> ; Arundo, <i>l. l. s. f.</i>                     |              |          |
| Pisistratus, Pisistratus, <i>i.</i>                                  |              |          |
| Piso, Piso, <i>Ons, m.</i>   |              |          |
| pitch, to, <i>i. e. to form (a</i>                                   |              |          |
| <i>camp)</i> , facio, feci, factum, <i>j.</i>                        |              |          |
| pity, to, miseret, ult, <i>2 (with</i>                               |              |          |
| <i>acc. of subject and gen. of ob-</i>                               |              |          |
| <i>ject); misereor, eritus sum, <i>j.</i></i>                        |              |          |
| <i>(with gen.); misereor, atus sum, <i>i (with acc.)</i></i>         |              |          |
| place, locus, <i>i. m. (plur.</i>                                    |              |          |
| <i>loci and loci).</i>   |              |          |
| place, <i>to</i> , pono, posui, situm,                               |              |          |
| <i>j; colloco, avi, atum, i; statuo,</i>                             |              |          |
| <i>ui, fitum, j.</i>   |              |          |
| place on, to, impone, pos-   |              |          |
| sul, positum, <i>j.</i>  |              |          |
| plan, rātio, <i>Ons, f.</i> ; con-                                   |              |          |
| silium, <i>4, n.</i> ; prōpositum, <i>i. n.</i>                      |              |          |
| plan, <i>to</i> , prōpono, posui,                                    |              |          |
| itum, <i>j.</i>  |              |          |
| plant, <i>to</i> , sēre ( <i>crevo</i> ),                            |              |          |
| sevi, atum, <i>j.</i>  |              |          |
| Plato, Platō, <i>Ons, m.</i>   |              |          |
| plead, to, oro, avi, atum,   |              |          |
| <i>i; ago, exi, actum, j.</i>  |              |          |
| pleasant, jucundus, <i>a, um;</i>                                    |              |          |
| gratus, <i>a, um; dulcis, <i>e. (p. 6).</i></i>                      |              |          |
| please, to, placeo, ui, itum,  |              |          |
| <i>(wild plant); objecto, avi,</i>                                   |              |          |
| <i>libet, libuit, and libitum est,</i>                               |              |          |
| pleasing. See PLEASANT.  |              |          |
| pleasure, luctuositas, <i>Atis, f.</i>                               |              |          |
| plies, plecta, plēbēs, plēbes,                                       |              |          |
| <i>cl. f.</i>  |              |          |
| plot, consilium, <i>i. n.</i> ; con-                                 |              |          |
| jūratō, <i>Ons, f.</i> ; insidiae, <i>ārum,</i>                      |              |          |
| <i>pl. f.</i>  |              |          |
| plough, ārātrum, <i>i. n.</i>  |              |          |
| vomer and vāmis, <i>ēris, m.</i>                                     |              |          |
| (plough-share).  |              |          |
| plunder, praeda, <i>ae, f.</i>                                       |              |          |
| plunder, to, rāpio, <i>ui,</i>                                       |              |          |
| <i>tum, 3; diripo, ui, epitum, j.</i>                                |              |          |
| Po, Pādus, <i>i. m.</i>  |              |          |
| poet, poēta, <i>ac, m. and f.</i>                                    |              |          |
| poison, vēnīs, <i>ērum, i. n.</i>                                    |              |          |
| virus, <i>i. n.</i>  |              |          |
| point, pīcō, <i>Ons, m.</i>  |              |          |
| cuspis, <i>ids, f.</i>   |              |          |
| point out, to, indicō, avi, atum,                                    |              |          |
| <i>i; ostendo, di, tum, 3; mon-</i>                                  |              |          |
| <i>stro, avi, atum, 1.</i>   |              |          |
| political, politicus, <i>a, um;</i>                                  |              |          |
| political change, nōvāe res,   |              |          |
| Pollio, Pollio, <i>Ons, m.</i>                                       |              |          |
| Pollux, Pollux, <i>Ons, m.</i>                                       |              |          |
| Pompey, Pompeius, <i>i. m.</i>                                       |              |          |
| Pontifex, Pontifex, <i>pon-</i>                                      |              |          |
| <i>tex, icti, m.</i>   |              |          |
| populous, cōfūler, bris,   |              |          |
| bre; frēquens, <i>ts.</i>  |              |          |
| Porcius, Porcius, <i>ii. m.</i>                                      |              |          |
| port, portus, <i>is, m.</i>  |              |          |
| portion, pars, <i>itis, f.</i> ; portio,                             |              |          |
| <i>Ons, f. = dover, dos, <i>ots, f.</i></i>                          |              |          |
| portrait, imago, <i>inis, f.</i>                                     |              |          |
| position, status, <i>itis, m.</i>                                    |              |          |
| situs, <i>itis, m.</i> ; locus, <i>i. m.</i> and                     |              |          |
| <i>in pl. also n.</i>  |              |          |
| possess, to, possideo, <i>edi,</i>                                   |              |          |
| <i>essum, 2; habeo, ui, Itum, 2.</i>                                 |              |          |
| <i>3; compito, essi, essum, j.</i>                                   |              |          |
| press hard on, to, prēmo,  |              |          |
| <i>j. See PRĒMOS.</i>  |              |          |
| brotend, to, simūlo, <i>avi,</i>                                     |              |          |
| <i>ārum, i; dissimile, <i>avi, ārum,</i></i>                         |              |          |
| <i>i (p. 17).</i>  |              |          |
| prevail, to, vīleo, <i>ui, Itum,</i>                                 |              |          |
| <i>2; vincō, vici, victum, j.</i>                                    |              |          |

| PREVENT.  | FYTIIUS.  | REAR. |
|---|---|-------|
| prevent, to, <i>prōhībeo</i> , <i>ui</i> ,<br>litter, <i>z</i> ; impedito, <i>ili</i> , litter, <i>4</i> ,<br><i>previously</i> , ante, <i>ante</i> ,<br><i>adv</i> ; prius, <i>adv</i> .   | prove, to, <i>i.e.</i> to turn out<br>to be, often, sum, ful, esse (with<br>double dat).  |       |
| Priam, <i>Priamus</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>m.</i>  | provide, to, <i>prōvideo</i> , <i>vidi</i> ,<br>visum, <i>z</i> ; <i>priuīdo</i> , <i>ili</i> , litter, <i>2</i> ,<br><i>(to supply)</i> ; pāro, <i>avi</i> , litter, <i>z</i> ,<br><i>(to get)</i> ; prōcōrō, <i>avi</i> , litter, <i>1</i> ,<br><i>province</i> , <i>prōvīcīa</i> , <i>ac</i> , <i>f.</i> |       |
| privately, <i>prīvātūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ;<br><i>private</i> , <i>prīvātūs</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ; at a<br><i>high price</i> , <i>magaz</i> .  | provision, to, <i>makō</i> , <i>prō-<br/>video</i> , <i>vidi</i> , <i>visum</i> , <i>z</i> .  |       |
| privately, <i>prīvātūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ;<br><i>secret</i> , <i>arcānūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ; <i>se-<br/>crūtūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .   | provisions, <i>victūs</i> , <i>as</i> , <i>ms</i> ;<br>plūns, <i>as</i> , <i>andī</i> , <i>c</i> , <i>and</i> <i>Oris</i> , <i>z</i> ;<br><i>res frumentaria</i> , <i>f</i> , <i>(of an army)</i> .   |       |
| proceed, to, <i>prēcedō</i> , <i>cessal</i> ,<br><i>cessum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to go up</i> , <i>pervenīo</i> ,<br><i>ēni</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>4</i> , followed by <i>in</i><br>with <i>acc</i> , <i>pergo</i> , <i>perrexī</i> , <i>per-<br/>rectum</i> , <i>z</i> . | provokē, to, <i>lācēso</i> , <i>ivi</i> ,<br><i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  |       |
| proclaim, to, <i>édico</i> , <i>z</i> , <i>Edicō</i> ,<br><i>Edicū</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>3</i> .   | prov (Ex. 34), <i>corvus</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>m.</i>   |       |
| proclamation, <i>édicūm</i> , <i>1</i> ,<br><i>n</i> ; <i>to issuē a proclamation</i> ,<br><i>Edicō</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>3</i> .  | prudence, <i>prōdūtēa</i> , <i>ac</i> , <i>f.</i>   |       |
| procure, to, <i>pāro</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> ,<br><i>1</i> ; <i>acquiro</i> , <i>sivi</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  | prudent, <i>brūdēns</i> , <i>ts</i> ; <i>prō-<br/>vidus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .  |       |
| prodigy, <i>monstrum</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> .  | Ptolemy, <i>Ptolēmaīs</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>m.</i>  |       |
| produce, to, <i>pārō</i> , <i>pepārī</i> ,<br>partum, <i>z</i> ; <i>gigno</i> , <i>gēnū</i> , <i>gēnī-<br/>tūm</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to be produced</i> , <i>nascor</i> ,<br><i>natus sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  | public, <i>publīcūs</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>in publīcū</i> , <i>pub-<br/>licē</i> , <i>adv</i> .   |       |
| produce, to, <i>pārō</i> , <i>pepārī</i> ,<br>partum, <i>z</i> ; <i>gigno</i> , <i>gēnū</i> , <i>gēnī-<br/>tūm</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to be produced</i> , <i>nascor</i> ,<br><i>natus sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  | publish, to, <i>vulgō</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> ,<br><i>1</i> ; <i>(to issue a book)</i> , <i>édo</i> ,<br><i>didi</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to publish-a-<br/>decree</i> , <i>édico</i> , <i>dixi</i> , <i>dictum</i> , <i>z</i> .   |       |
| Punic, <i>Pūnicūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .  | Punic, <i>Pūnicūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .  |       |
| punish, to, <i>pāmō</i> , <i>ivi</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>4</i> ;<br><i>anmādērto</i> , <i>l</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>3</i> , <i>fol-<br/>lowed by in with acc</i> .  | Punish, <i>poena</i> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>  |       |
| punishment, <i>poenūm</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ( <i>poen</i> ,<br><i>poenūm</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ).   | supplication, <i>l</i> , <i>n</i> ( <i>poen</i> , <i>109</i> ).   |       |
| purchase, to, <i>émo</i> , <i>emī</i> ,<br><i>emptiūm</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>mercor</i> , <i>fitus sum</i> .   | purchase, to, <i>équier</i> , <i>cūtūs</i>  |       |
| purpose, to, <i>sequor</i> , <i>cūtūs</i><br><i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>sector</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>sum</i> .   | purpose, to, <i>prōpositūm</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ,<br><i>consilium</i> , <i>l</i> , <i>n</i> .  |       |
| pure, <i>pūrūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> : <i>mērūs</i> ,<br><i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ( <i>unmixtū</i> ); <i>castus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i><br>( <i>chaste</i> ).   | pure, <i>pūrūs</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> : <i>mērūs</i> ,<br><i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ( <i>unmixtū</i> ); <i>castus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i><br>( <i>chaste</i> ).   |       |
| purify, to, <i>purgō</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> ,<br><i>1</i> ; <i>abluo</i> , <i>ul</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>z</i> .   | purify, to, <i>purgō</i> , <i>avi</i> , <i>atum</i> ,<br><i>1</i> ; <i>abluo</i> , <i>ul</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>z</i> .   |       |
| pursue, to, <i>sequor</i> , <i>cūtūs</i><br><i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> .   | pursue, to, <i>sequor</i> , <i>cūtūs</i>  |       |
| pursuer, <i>persuē</i> , part of <i>sc-</i><br><i>quor</i> . See "PERSUĒ, TO."  | pursuer, <i>persuē</i> , part of <i>sc-</i><br><i>quor</i> . See "PERSUĒ, TO."  |       |
| pursuit, <i>stidūm</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ( <i>fa-<br/>vorite pursuit</i> ).   | pursuit, <i>stidūm</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>n</i> ( <i>fa-<br/>vorite pursuit</i> ).   |       |
| push, to, <i>trūdo</i> , <i>si</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>3</i> ;<br><i>impelō</i> , <i>ili</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> .  | push, to, <i>trūdo</i> , <i>si</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>3</i> ;  |       |
| put, to, <i>pōno</i> , <i>plūpū</i> , <i>lūm</i> , <i>3</i> .   | put, to, <i>pōno</i> , <i>plūpū</i> , <i>lūm</i> , <i>3</i> .   |       |
| put-to-death, to, <i>nēco</i> , <i>avi</i> ,<br><i>atum</i> , <i>1</i> .  | put-to-death, to, <i>nēco</i> , <i>avi</i> ,<br><i>atum</i> , <i>1</i> .  |       |
| put off, to, <i>of clothes</i> , <i>exuo</i> ,<br><i>nl</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to postpone</i> ;<br><i>differo</i> , <i>distēlū</i> , <i>distātūm</i> , <i>3</i> .  | put off, to, <i>of clothes</i> , <i>exuo</i> ,<br><i>nl</i> , <i>sum</i> , <i>z</i> ; <i>to postpone</i> ;  |       |
| put on, to, <i>(of clothes)</i> , <i>in-<br/>duo</i> , <i>ul</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>z</i> .   | put on, to, <i>(of clothes)</i> , <i>in-<br/>duo</i> , <i>ul</i> , <i>atum</i> , <i>z</i> .   |       |
| put upon, to, <i>impōne</i> , <i>pō-<br/>sūl</i> , <i>positūm</i> , <i>z</i> .  | put upon, to, <i>impōne</i> , <i>pō-<br/>sūl</i> , <i>positūm</i> , <i>z</i> .  |       |
| Pythagoras, <i>Pythāgoras</i> ,<br><i>ac</i> , <i>m.</i>  | Pythagoras, <i>Pythāgoras</i> ,<br><i>ac</i> , <i>m.</i>  |       |
| Pyrhus, <i>Pyrhus</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>m.</i>  | Pyrhus, <i>Pyrhus</i> , <i>1</i> , <i>m.</i>  |       |
| Pythius, <i>Pythius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> ;  | Pythius, <i>Pythius</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> .  |       |

## REASON.

reason, ratio, ónia, f.;  
reasons, tis, f. (*the faculty of*  
*reason*).

recall, to, rēvoco, Ávi,  
ánum, i.; rēducō, xi, cūm, i.  
receive, to, accipio, cēpi,  
cēpimus, s, cāpio, cēpī, cāpimus, i.

reckon, to, acsimo, ávi,  
ánum, i.; dico, xi, cūm, i.;  
comptō, ávi, ánum, i.; nā-  
mero, Ávi, ánum, i.

recognise, to, agnoscō, nōvi,  
ánum, i.

recollection, mēmoria, e,

record, mōnūmentum, i., n.

record, to, narrō, Ávi, ánum,

i.; mēmōri, Ávi, ánum, i.

recover, to, rēcipio, Ávi,

ánum, i.; recipio, cēpī, cēpimus,

i.; to recover from a disease,

cōvalēso, i., 2.

refer, to, rēfro, rēfūli,

réfutum, i.

refinement, hōmānitā,

áts, f.; cultus, ts, m.

reflection, cōsideratio,

ónis, f.; cōsideratio, ónis, f.

refuse, to, abnuo, ul, ánum,

i.; rēfuso, Ávi, ánum, i.

regard, to, respicio, spex,

spectum, i.; = to love, diligō,

lexi, lectum, i.; = to think,

existimō, Ávi, ánum, i.; pūte,

Ávi, ánum, i.

region, rōgio, ónis, f.; trac-

tus, ts, m.

regre, dēsidērūm, i., n.;

dolor, óris, i.; ascr̄itūlō, ónis, f.

reign, to, regno, Ávi, ánum,

i.

rejoice, to, gaudeo, gāvissi-

sum, 2; factor, ácum, i. (p.

59).

relate, to, narrō, Ávi, ánum,

i.; refer, tali, ánum, i.

relationship, propinquitas,

áts, f.; affinitas, áts, f.

(p. 42).

relative, cognati, órum;

propinqu, órum.

relianç, frētus, a, um (with

abl.); fidens, tis; confidens, tis;

religion, religio, ónis, f.

religious, religiosa, a, um,

adj. recusans (Ex. 17, 8).

rely, to, nōtor (submitter),

nōtus and nōxus sum, i.

relying on, fētus, a, um

(followed by abl.); subnūxus, a, um.

remain, to, commoror, átus

sum.

remaining, rēlinqua, a, um;

younger, rēlinqua, a, um,

## RESOLVE.

remarkable, singulāris, e;  
insignis, e.

remember, to, mēmori, i.,

perf. with sense of present;

rēcordor, átus sum, i.; rēmisi-

or, i.

remind, to, mēmo, ul,

ítum, 2; cōmōndus, ui, i.

remote, longinquus, e, um;

rēmōtus, a, um.

remove, to, trans. móve-

(rēmōven), óvi, ánum, 2; in-

trans, migrō, Ávi, ánum, i. (p.

28).

render, to, reddo, didi, di-

tum, 3; tribuo, ui, ánum, 3;

fato (rēferto), tall, átum, 3.

renew, to, restitu, ul,

ánum, 3; rēnovo, Ávi, ánum, i.

renown, tēma, ae, f.; laue,

dis, f.; glōria, ae, f.

repair, to, rēficio, fac, fec-

tim, i.

repeat, to: Phr.: to repeat

one's sin, his peccare (Ex.

10).

repent, to, poenitent, ult,

impres, 2 (with acc. of subject,

and gen. of object).

reply, to, respondō, di,

sum, 2.

report, sub, rōmōr, óris,

m.; fāma, ae, f.

report, to, referto, tall, átum,

3; numbo, Ávi, ánum, i.

réfido, didi, ditum, i.

rere, quies, cēs, f.

republic, républika, rēpu-

blicata, f.

repulse, rēpūlīsa, ae, f.

repulso, to, rēpello, pūli,

pūlsum, 3; pūpulso, Ávi,

ánum, i.

reputation, existimatio,

ónis, f.

request, rōgātus, ts, m.; or

your request, te rōgātus or tuo

rōgātus (Ex. 37).

request, to, rōgo, Ávi,

ánum, i.; pēto, ivi, ánum, 3

(p. 5).

require, to, exigō, Ávi, ac-

tum, 3; posco, pōpōscō, posci-

tum, 3; = to need, égeo, ui, i.

(with gen. or abl.).

resentment, dōlor, óris, m.

reserve, to, réservo, Ávi,

ánum, i.

resist, to, rēsistō, stīl, stī-

tum, i.; rēpugno, Ávi, ánum,

(with dat.).

resolution, =firmness, con-

stantia, ae, f.; = a determina-

tion, sententia, ae, f.; cōstītūm,

i, n.

resolve, to, dēcerno, crēvi,

ortum, i.

## RIGHT.

resources, fācilitātes, um,

f.; opes, um, f.

respect, vēnērātio, ónis, f.;

vēnēritas, ae, f.

response, responsū, i., n.

rost, quies, cēs, f.; rēquie,

slī, f.

rest, the, cēstī, Grum; rē-

quiqui, órum (p. 16).

rest, to, quisco, Ávi, ánum,

; = to leave, on, ulti, niens

and nixus, i.; to rest one's hopes

on, spes pōsita in (with abl.)

habere.

restore, to, rēpāro, avī,

ánum, i.; restitu, ui, ánum, i.

restrain, to, cōfineo (rē-

lineo), ui, cōnum, 2; cohībeo,

ui, ánum, 2; cōseco, ui, ánum, 2.

retain, to, rētineo (tēneo),

ui, tētum, 2; cōtineo, ui,

tētum, 2.

retire, to, cēdo, vel, ssum, i.

as rēcipio, cēpi, cēpimus, i.

(Ex. 40).

retreat, (the act), rēceptus,

Gr. m.; (the place), rēceptacū-

lūm, i, n.

retreat, to, rēcipio, cēpī,

cēpimus, i (with acc. of person).

retribution: Phr.: to in-

dict retribution, vīnōctio, Ávi,

ánum, i.

return, to, rēden, II, ánum,

4; revertor, rēsum, i. (p. 67);

refire, rēcipio, épī, épūtum

(with acc. of person).

revel, to, to fēst, cōmū-

sor, átus, i.; = to exult, exsulto,

Ávi, ánum, i.

revenue, vectigal, ális, n.

reverence, vēnērātio, ónis,

f.; rēvērēntia, ae, f.

reverence, to, vērōr, itus

sum, 2; colo, ui, cōtum, 3.

review, to, rēpōto, ivi and

II, ánum, 3; to take a short

review of the past, paucā supra

rēpētere.

reward, praeium, i, n.

merces, ális, f. (hīce).

Rhine, Rhēna, i, m.

Rhodes, Rhēdus or -os, i, f.

Rhodes, of, or belonging

to, Rhēdus, a, um.

Rhone, Rhēdānus, i, m.

rich, dives, árum, f.

ride through, to, pō-

quito, Ávi, ánum, i.

ridiculous, ridichius, a,

um; absurdus, a, um.

right (adv.), rectus, a, um;

probus, a, um; right hand,

dexter, tēta, tērum.

## RIGHT.

right (*subs.*), jus, iūris, *n.*  
rightly, recte, *adv.*; bēnē,  
*adv.*  
rigidly, intentē, *adv.*  
ring, annulus, *t. m.*  
rise, to, surgo, surrexi, sur-  
rectum, *f.*  
rival, rīvalis, *is, m.*; acemū-  
lus, *is, m.* (p. 107).  
river, fluvius, *t. m.*; flumen,  
tuis, *n.* (p. 6).  
road, via, *ac. f.*; Iter, Itinē-  
ris, *n.* (p. 6).  
robe, vestis, *is, f.*  
rock, rūpes, *is, m.*; saxum,  
*l. n.*  
rod, virga, *sc. f.*  
Roman, Rōmānus, *a. um.*  
Rome, Rōma, *ae. f.*; of  
Rome may often be translated  
by the *adv.* as: *as the young men*  
*of Rome*, Rōmāni juventus.  
Romulus, Rōmūlus, *t. m.*  
room, = space, locūs, *t. m.*  
(*in pl.*) *m.* and *n.*; = chamber,  
conclavē, *is, n.*  
round, circum, circa, *prep.*  
(gov. acc.)  
route, to, fūgo, *āvi, ātūm.*  
1; prōdigio, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.*  
route, via, *ac. f.*; Iter,  
itineris, *n.*  
rower, remex, Igi, *m.*; the  
whole crew of rowers, remi-  
glum, *i. n.*  
royal, rēgīus, *a. um.*; ré-  
gīlis, *e.*  
rugged, asper, *ēra, crūm.*  
durus, *a. um.*; praerupus, *a.*  
um.  
ruin, ruīna, *ae. f.*; extītum,  
*t. n.*  
ruinous, extītūs, *a. um.*  
extītalis, *e.*  
rule, to, rēgo, *xi, cītūm.* *t.*  
impero, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.* (with  
dat.); dōmīnor, *ātūm. sun.*  
run, to, curro, eheurū, cur-  
sum, *x.*  
run to and fro, to, con-  
cuso, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.*  
rush, to, ruo, *āvi, ātūm.* and  
ruītum, *f.* (Ex. 15); me prō-  
ficio, feci, *cītūm.* *t.*  
rustic, rusticus, *a. um.*  
wrestles, e (p. 4).

## S

Sacred, sacer, era, crūm;  
sanctus, *a. um.* (p. 9).  
sacrifice, sacrificium, *t. n.*;  
sacra, orūm, *n.*  
sad, tristis, *e.*  
sadness, tristitia, *ae. f.*  
sīc, oris, *m.*; luctus, *ās, m.*

## SEMIRAMIS.

safety, salus, *ātūs, f.*; in  
safety, incolamis, *e;* salvus,  
*a. um.*  
sagacious, acutus, *a. um.*  
sagax, *ātūs.*  
Saguntine, Saguntinus, *a.*  
*um.*  
Saguntum, Saguntum, *t. n.*  
and Saguntus, *t. f.*  
sail, to, nāvigo, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.*  
To sail by, praeceptor, vectus  
sum, *t.*  
sailor, nauta, *ac. m.*; nāvi-  
ta, *ac. m.*  
sake: Phr.: for the sake  
of, gratia, causā, with gen.  
same, idem, eidem, idem.  
same number, tūtūdem,  
*adv.*  
sane=except, praeter, prep.  
with acc.  
sane, to, servo, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.*  
saying, dictum, *t. n.*; as  
the saying is, ut aliquid.  
say, to, dico, xi, cītūm, *t.*  
= repeat, fero, *āvi, ātūm.*  
scanty, parcus, *a. um.*; ex-  
gūs, *a. um.*  
Scipio, Scipio, *ānīs, m.*  
scorch, to, torreo, *ui, tos-*  
*tūm, 2; īro, uss, ustum.* *t.*  
scripture, scriptura, *ae. f.*  
Scriptures, the, Scripta,  
ōrum, *n.*  
scrupule (religious), religio,  
*ōmis, f.*  
Scythian, Scythes, *ac. m.*  
sea, māre, *is, n.*; aquor,  
ōrūs, *n.*  
sea, or belonging to, to  
māritūm, *a. um.*  
sea-coast, ḍōrā mārlītā, *f.*  
seat, subsellium, *t. n.*  
seat, to, consido, *ādi, ea-*  
sum, *t.*  
second, secundus, *a. nm.*  
second time, itērum, *adv.*  
secret, arcana, *a. um.*; oc-  
cultus, *a. um.*; secretū, *a. um.*  
see, to, video, vidi, *ātūm.* *t.*  
seek, to, quero, quæsivi,  
situm, *f.*; peto, *āvi, ātūm.* *t.*  
seek for, to, expōto, *āvi,*  
*ātūm, 4.*  
seem, to, videor, *ātūm. sum,*  
*2.*  
seer, vītes, *is, m.* and *f.*  
seize, to, rāpō (arripō),  
ui, pītum, *f.*; occupo, *āvi, ātūm,*  
*t.*; cīpīo, cīpī, captūm, *f.*  
seldom, rārō, *ātūs.*  
self, ipse, *a. um.*  
sell, to, vendō, dīlū, *ātūm;*  
vēnūndo, dīlū, *ātūm.* *t.*  
Semīramis, Semīramis,  
*ātūs, f.*

## SHADE.

Sempronius, Semprōnius,  
*ātūs, f.*  
senate, sénātus, *ās, m.*; se-  
nate House, cīrīa, *ae. f.*  
senator, sénātor, oris, *m.*  
send, to, mittō, misi, mis-  
sum, *f.*; as ambassador, lēgo,  
āvi, ātūm, *t.*  
send ahead, to, pūemittō,  
īst, issūm.  
send down, to, dēmittō,  
misi, misum, *t.*  
send for, to, arcessō, *āvi,*  
ītūm, *t.*  
send forth, to, ēmittō,  
misi, misum, *t.*  
separate, to, segregō, *āvi,*  
*ātūm.* *t.*  
sepulchre, sepulcrum, *t. n.*  
serious, grāvīs, *e;* sérius  
*a. um.*  
seriously, grāvīter, *adv.*  
serio, *adv.*  
serpent, drāco, *ānīs, m.*  
servant, minister, tri, *m.:*  
(female) lāmūla, *f.*; ancilla, *ac.*  
*f.* (p. 45).  
serve, to, servio, *āvi and t.*  
ītūm, *4.* = to be of service,  
prōsum, fūl, prōdēsse.  
service: Phr.: to be of ser-  
vice to, prōdeesse, with dat.; on  
(military) service, militiae.  
serviceable, utilis, *e;* idō-  
neus, *a. um.*  
Servius, Servius, *ātūm.*  
set, to, = to place, pōno,  
pōsūl, ītūm, *3;* as the sun,  
occido, cīdī, cīsum, *t.*  
set fire, to, incendo, *di,*  
ītūm, *3;* accendo, di, sum, *3* (p.  
21).  
set out, to, prōfīcīcor, fec-  
tus sum, *t.*  
settle, to, trans, consilio,  
ul, ītūm, *3;* intrācōs, *consido,*  
ēdi, ītūm, *3.*  
settlement, sēdē, *is, f.*  
seven, septem, *num. adj.*  
index.  
seventh, septimus, *a. um.*  
sever, to, sépāro, *āvi, ātūm,*  
*t.*; sépīngō, nāx, *ātūm, 3;* to cut  
off, abscondō, idī, ītūm, *f.*  
several, complūres, *a. īl;*  
quōd, indec.  
severe, grāvīs, *e;* sēvōrus  
*a. um;* durus, *a. um;* acer,  
cris, cre.  
severely, sēvērē, *adv.*  
scrītō, *adv.*  
Severus, Sēvērus, *t. m.*  
sex, sexus, *is, m.;* sēcūs  
neut. indec.  
shade, umbra, *ae. f.*  
shade, to, umbro, *āvi,*  
*ātūm, t.*

## SHAKR, TO.

shake, *to*, *trans.*, *agitare*, *shaker*, *shaker*, *shaker*, *shaker*, *shaker*.

shape, *forma*, *as*, *f.*; *figura*, *shape*, *shape*.

shatter, *to*, *quālō*, *quassā*, *quassum*, *3*; *frango*, *fragi*, *fractum*, *3*. *Of enemies*, *prōfligio*, *shattered*, *shattered*.

shattered, *quassus*, *a*, *um*; shattered ship, *quassata nave*: fractus, *a*, *um*; afflictus, *a*, *um*.

shear, *to*, *tendere*, *tōtondi*, *tōtonsum*, *2*.

shed, *to*, (*as stage do their horns*) *exuo*, *ul*, *stūm*, *3*.

sheep, *ovis*, *is*, *f.*; *bildens*, *itis*, *f.*

shepherd, *pastor*, *ōris*, *m.*

shepherd, *of or belonging to*, *pastorālis*, *a*.

shield, *sclētum*, *1*, *n.*; *clipeus*, *1*, *m.* (p. 73).

shift, *to*, *=to move*, *trans.* *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, *2*.

ship, *navigium*, *1*, *n.*; *nūvīs*, *is*, *f.*; *puppis*, *is*, *f.* (poet.), *(p. 1)*.

ship-captain, *nāvarchus*, *1*, *m.*

short, *brévis*, *a*; *parvus*, *a*, *um*; (*reant*) *exiguus*, *a*, *um*.

shortly, *= by and by*, *mox*, *adv.*; *= briefly*, *bréviter*, *adv.*

shoulder, *humerus*, *1*, *m.*

shoot, *to*, *clamo*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

shoot out together, *to*, *conciamo*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

shouting, *ostentor*, *ōris*, *m.*

show, *to*, *ostendo*, *di*, *stūm*, *3*; *monstro*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*; *indico*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

shrine, *ādītum*, *1*, *n.*; *delubrum*, *1*, *n.*

shudder at, *to*, *horreo*, *ul*, *2*; *horresco*, *ul*, *2*.

shot, *shut-up*, *to*, *intercludo*, *si*, *stūm*, *3*.

shut-in, *to*, *claudio*, *si*, *stūm*, *3*.

Sichaeus, *Sichaeus*, *1*, *m.*

Sicilian, *Sicilius*, *a*, *um*.

Sicily, *Sicilia*, *se*, *f.*

sick, *aeget*, *grā*, *grum*; *aegrōtus*, *a*, *um*.

side, *Mīta*, *ōris*, *n.*; *= party*, *par*, *ts*, *f.* (often *pl.*).

Sidonian, *Sidonius*, *a*, *um*.

siglo, *obediō*, *ōris*, *f.*

signal, *signum*, *1*, *n.*

signify, *to* (Ex. 18), *sōno*, *stūm*, *1*; *= to announce*, *edico*, *xi*, *stūm*, *3*.

silence, *silentum*, *1*, *n.*; *De habitu* of silence, *taciturnitas*, *tit*, *f.* *In silence*, *tacitus*, *a*, *um*.

## SOFTEN, TO.

silver, *argentum*, *1*, *n.*; *of silver*, *argenteus*, *a*, *um*.

similar, *similis*, *e*.

Simonides, *Simónides*, *1*, *m.*

sin, *to*, *peccō*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

sin, *peccatum*, *1*, *n.*

since, *post*, *prep.* (gov. acc.), *postea*, *adv.*

sinew, *nervus*, *1*, *m.*; *in fig. sense plur.*

sing, *to*, *cōno*, *cōcīni*, *cōcum*, *3*; *canto*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

single, *unus*, *a*, *um*; *sinūl*, *se*, *a*, *adjs.*

singly, *singulatim*, *adv.*; *singulūl*, *ae*, *a*, *adj.*

sink, *to*, *trans*, *submergo*, *si*, *sum*, *3*; *intrans*, *sido* (sub-*sido*), *idi*, *3*.

sister, *soror*, *ōris*, *f.*

Sisyphus, *Sisyphus*, *1*, *m.*

Sisyphus, *of or belonging to*, *Sisyphus*, *a*, *um*.

situated, *positus*, *a*, *um*; *afitus*, *a*, *um*.

six, *sex*, *num. adj.* *indec.*

sixteen, *sexdecim*, *indec.*

sixteenth, *sexagesimus*, *indec.*

sixty, *sexaginta*, *indec.*

size, *magnitudo*, *īts*, *f.*

skillful, *skilled*, *pōrtius*, *a*, *um*; *sciens*, *ts* (p. 16); *both with gen.*

skin, *cūtis*, *is*, *f.*; *pellis*, *is*, *f.* (*cōrūm*, *1*, *n.* (p. 67)).

sky, *cōcūm*, *1*, *n.*

slighter, *to*, *caedo*, *cēci*, *cēciūm*, *3*; *trucidō*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1* (*p. 2*).

slave, *servus*, *1*, *m.*; *mancipiūm*, *1*, *n.* (p. 40).

slave, *to be a*, *servito*, *īts* and *ītūm*, *1* (*with dat.*).

slavery, *servitūs*, *ōris*, *f.*

slay, *to*, *intērimo*, *ēmi*, *emptiūm*, *1*; *jūgūto*, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

slēo, *āvi*, *stūm*, *1*.

sleep, *sonnus*, *1*, *m.*; *slōpōr*, *ōris*, *f.*

sleep, *to*, *dormio*, *īvi*, *Itūm*, *4*.

small, *parvus*, *a*, *um*.

small, *very*, *parvulus*, *a*, *um*.

smoke, *fumus*, *1*, *m.*

snare, *insidiae*, *ārum*, *f.*

snatch, *to*, *rāpiō*, *ul*, *raptiūm*, *3*; *to snatch from*, *ērōpō*, *ul*, *reptūm*, *1*.

so, *īcī*, *īta*, *ītam*, *adv.*

so many, *ītū*, *indec.*

Socrates, *Socrātēs*, *is*, *m.*

soften, *to*, *mollio*, *īvi*, *Itūm*, *4*; *lēlio*, *īvi*, *Itūm*, *4*.

## STEND, TO.

softly, *lēlter*, *adv.*; *molli*, *ter*, *adv.*

soil, *ēdūm*, *1*, *n.*

soldier, *miles*, *īts*, *m.* and *f.*

Solon, *Solon*, *ōnis*, *m.*

some, *nonnulli*, *ae*, *a*; *ān*, *quot*, *indec.*; *some one*, *quidam*, *quædam*; *ālquī*, *qua*, *quod or quid*.

somehow, *quādammodo*, *adv.*

sometimes, *ālquando*, *adv.*; *intordum*, *adv.*; *nonunquam*, *adv.* (*p. 15*).

somewhat (*ss adv.*), *ālqu*, *ālquantum*.

son, *filius*, *1*, *m.*; *vōc. filii*;

nātus, *1*, *w.*

song, *carmen*, *Inis*, *n.*; *cantus*, *us*, *n.*

soon, *mox*, *adv.*; *cito*, *adv.*

soothsayer, *hāruspex*, *īts*, *m.*; *auspex*, *Iēcis*, *m.*

Sophocles, *Sophocles*, *is*, *m.*

sorrow, *trōgō*, *ōris*, *m.*; *incus*, *us*, *n.*

sorrowing, *moestus*, *a*, *um*.

sorrowfully (*Ex. 37*), *dōcī*, *īts*, *ia*.

sort, *gēnus*, *ēris*, *n.*

soul, *animus*, *1*, *m.* (p. 8).

sovereign, *rex*, *rēgīs*, *n.*

sovereignty, *regnum*, *1*, *n.*

sovereign-power, *impēriū*, *ii*, *n.*

sow, *to*, *sēro*, *sēvī*, *stūm*, *3*.

space, *spātium*, *1*, *n.*; *locus*, *1*, *m.*; *space of two, three days*, *bīduum*, *trīduum*, *1*, *n.*

Spain, *Hispania*, *se*, *f.*

Spaniard, *Hispanus*, *1*, *m.*

Spanish, *Hispani*, *a*, *um*.

spare, *to*, *parco*, *pēpcē*, *parcītūm* and *parsum*, *3* (*with dat.*).

Sparta, *Sparta*, *se*, *f.*; *LA-*

*cedāmen*, *ōris*, *f.*

Spartan, *Spartānus*, *a*, *um*.

Iaco, *ōnis*, *m.*

speak, *to*, *lēquor*, *lēcūtūs*, *sum*; *fari*, *fatus* (p. 6).

spear, *basta*, *se*, *f.*; *hastile*, *is*, *n.*; *cuspis*, *īdis*, *f.* (*poīnī*).

species, *gēnūs*, *ēris*, *n.*

speech, *ōrātīo*, *ōnla*, *f.*

= *a saying*, *vox*, *vōcīs*, *f.*

speedy, *cēfērītēr*, *ātīs*, *f.*

speedily, *cēfērītēr*, *adv.*

spend, *to*, *impēndo*, *di*, *sum*, *3*; *consumo*, *mīpsi*, *impēsum*, *3*; *(of time) Ago*, *ēgt*, *actum*, *3*.

| SPIDER.  | SUPERBUS.   | TACKLING.  |
|--|---|--|
| spider, áranea, se, f.; árá-<br>neola, ae, f.  | straw, flocc, manci, hújus aesti-<br>mare.  | superior, superl, us; mä-<br>lier, ns.   |
| spirit, spirits, ánimis, i.,<br>(p. 8.)  | stream, rivus, i, m.  | superior, to be, väle, si,   |
| spoils, spolia, órum, n.;<br>exuviae, érum, f.   | strength, vires, ium, pl. f.;<br>robur, óris, n.  | item, 2.   |
| spoil, to, praeclor, itus sum,<br>i.; spoli, avi, átum, i.; diripio,<br>uti, reputio, i.                   | strengthen, tc, firme (com-<br>picio), ávi, átum, i.  | superstition, superstítio,<br>ónis, f. (Ex. 28); réligio, ónium, f.  |
| spot, = place, lócus, i, m.<br>(p. loc. and loca) = a mark,<br>macula, ae, f.                              | stretch, to, tendo, tenui, tensum<br>and tum, 3; porrige, rexi, rectum, 3; pertucio, ut<br>teutum, 2 (Ex. 14).      | supernat, superstitio, ae, f.  |
| spotless, púnus, a, um.  | strike, to, of lightning, tango, tangit, tactum, i.   | supplication, supplicatio,<br>ónis, f.; préca, précam, préce,<br>pl. précas, f.  |
| spring, ver, vénis, n.   | strive, to, certo, ávi, átum,<br>i.; editor, nitus and nixus, 3.  | supply, cópia, ae, f. (of<br>food); comméatus, us, m.  |
| spring (of water), tons,<br>fontis, m.   | strong, firmus, a, um; fortis,<br>e; validus, i.  | supply, to, praerebo, ui,  |
| spring, te, sálio, ui, saltum,<br>i.   | struggle, certamen, inis, n.  | item, 2; sufficio, feci, fec-<br>tum, 3.   |
| spring from, to, trior,<br>ritus sum, 4 dep.   | study, studiū, i, n.  | support, to, sustineo, ui,   |
| sprinkle, to, spargo, si,<br>sum, 3; aspergo, si, sum, 3.  | style, dictio, ónis, f.   | entum, 2, = to nourish, alio, ui,  |
| sprung from, ortus, a, um<br>(orion—followed by ab.).  | subdue, to, páco, ávi, átum,<br>i.; vincio, vici, cunctum, 3; dámio, ui,<br>itum, i.; subigo, ágri, actum, 3.       | alatum and itum, 3.  |
| stake, to be at, pass. of<br>ágio, ágri, actum, 3 (with de).   | subject: Phr.: by his sub-<br>jects, a suis.  | suppose, to, puto, ávi,<br>átum, i.; opinor, átum, sum, 1;   |
| stand, to, stô, steti, stâ-<br>tum, i.   | submit, to, = to obey, pâ-<br>re, ui, itum, i.; to undergo,<br>patior, passus sum, 3.                               | crédio, didi, ditum, 3; arbitror,<br>átum sum.   |
| stand round, to, = sur-<br>round, circumsteti, steti, stâtum,<br>i.; circuviáculo, éni, entum, +           | subtile, callidus, a, um; subtil-<br>tis, e.  | supremacy, domínatio,<br>ónis, f.; imperium, i, n.   |
| standard, signum, i, n.  | succeed, to, succedo, cessi,<br>cessum, 3 (with dat. of per-<br>son).   | supreme, suprémuus (or<br>summus), a, um.  |
| state, = commonwealth, ci-<br>vitas, idis, f.; = condition,<br>státus, us, m.                              | success, successus, us, m.;<br>res bene gesta.  | surname, to, appello, ávi<br>átum, i.  |
| state, to, dico, xi, tum, 3.   | successful, felix, Icis; for-<br>tunatus, 4, um.  | surname, cognomen, inis, n.  |
| Statilius, Statilius, i, n.  | succour, to, succurro, rri,<br>rsum, 3; subvenio, vénii, venti-<br>sum, 3; auxilio, átum sum, 1<br>(all with dat.). | surpass, to, antecido, cessi,<br>cessum, 3; supéro, ávi, átum,<br>i.; praesto, stiti, státum, 1;<br>superesse (Ex. 49).    |
| station, to, pono, pôsui,<br>positum, 3; loco, ávi, átum, i.   | such, talis, e (of such a<br>kind); tantus, a, um (so great).   | surprise, to, = to meet<br>suddenly, excipio, cipi, capti-<br>um, 3.   |
| statuo, státus, ae, f.; stâ-<br>tum, i.; n. s. n. scilicet, i., n.   | sudden, subitus, a, um;<br>repentius, a, um.  | surrender, déditio, ónis, f.   |
| stay, to, intans, maneo,<br>si, sum, 2; inôrō (commôrō),<br>itum sum, i.; trans, stô, steti,<br>stitum, 3. | suddenly, subito, adv.; re-<br>pente, adv.  | surrender, to, dedo, déditio,<br>deditum, 3; tradu, didi, ditum, 3.  |
| steadiness, constantia, ae,<br>f.; stabilitas, idis, i.  | Stessesiones, Suessiones,<br>uu, m.   | surround, to, circumsteti,<br>stati, stâtum, i.; circumdo,<br>didi, ditum, 3 = to put some-<br>thing around another thing. |
| steady, constans, tia.   | suffer, to, patior, passus sum,<br>3; fero, till, átum, 3 (p. 57).  | survive, to, supersum, fut.<br>esse (with dat.).   |
| step, gradus, us, m.; gres-<br>sus, us, m.   | sufficient, sat, aut. (often<br>with partitive sufficiency, gen.)   | suspect, to, suspicio, ávi<br>átum, i.   |
| stern, adj., durus, a, um.   | suitable, utilis, e; oppor-<br>tunus, a, um.  | suspected, suspectus, a, um;   |
| stern, subs., puppis, ls, f.   | Sulla, Sulla, ae, m.  | suspicion, suspicio, ónis, f.  |
| still, ádubic, ade.  | Sulpicius, Sulpicius, i, m.   | sustain, to, sustineo, ui,   |
| stir up, to, móveo, óvi,<br>otum, 2; sollicito, i, vni, átum, i.   | summa, ae, f.   | entum, 2.  |
| stone, lápida, idis, m.; sax-<br>um, i., n.  | summer, aestus, idis, f.  | swallow, hirundo, inis, f.   |
| storey, tablálatum, i, n.  | summit, cíclimum, inis, n.;<br>vortex, icts, m.; the summit of<br>the hill, suminus mons.                           | sweet, dulcis, e; suavis, e<br>(p. 6).   |
| stormy, fráta, a, um (lit.<br>angry).  | summon, voco (of a num-<br>ber, convoco), ávi, átum, i.   | sword, gladius, i, m.; fer-<br>rum, i, n.  |
| strangle, to, pâlor, átum,<br>sun, i.; erro, i, vni, átum, i;  | sun, sol, solis, átum, i. (poet.)   | Syracuse, Syracusa, árva   |
| dilabor, lapsus sum, 3.  | Phœbus, i, m.   | f.   |
| straight, rectus, a, um;   | Superbus, Superbus, i, m.   | Syria, Syria, ae, f.   |
| directive, directus, a, um.  |   | Syrian, Syrus, a, um. By<br>räucus, a, um.   |
| strategy, consilium, i, n.<br>(plan).  |   |  |
| straw: Phr.: to value at a   |   |  |

## TACTICS.

tactics (military), militia, *a. f.*  
 take, to, cōplo, cōpli, cōpsum, *i*; sumo, psl, psum, *i*; p̄tēndō, dī, sum, *i* = to con-  
 duct; dēdico, duxi, ductum, *i*.  
 take away, to, abripio, *i*,  
 eptum, *i*; eripio, *ui*, eptum, *i*.  
 take care, to, cōrō, *ui*,  
 Atum, *i*.  
 take from, to, exlmo  
 (adūno), emi, eptum, *i*; dē-  
 trahō, xi, cōsum, *i*.  
 take up, to, sumo, psl,  
 ptum, *i*; tollo, sustul, abili-  
 tum, *i*; to take up arms, armā-  
 capere.  
 talent, a, tālēntum, *i*, *n*;  
 = abilit̄, ingeniūn, *i*, *n*; li-  
 cultus, *āta*, *f*.  
 tall, prōferūs, *a*, *um*; in-  
 gens, *ti*.  
 tamarisk, mīrica, *ac*, *f*.  
 Tarentine, Tārentinus, *a*,  
 un. *i*.  
 Tarentum, Tārentum, *i*, *n*.  
 Tarpeian, Tarpetum, *a*, *um*.  
 Tarquin or Tarquinius,  
 Tarquinius, *i*, *m*.  
 Tarragona, Tarraco, *ōnis*,  
*f*.  
 tarry, to, mōror (com-  
 mōrō), ātu sum, *i*; cunctor,  
 ātu sum, *i*.  
 task, opus, ōris, *a*; pen-  
 sum, *i*, *n*.  
 taste, to, gusto (dēgusto),  
 āvi, ātum, *i*.  
 teach, to, dōceo, *ui*, cōsum,  
*i*; dōdidio, *i*, *v*; dōcim, *i*; prac-  
 cipio, cepi, cōceptum, *i*.  
 teacher, magister, *ri*, *m*.  
 tear, lacrima, *ac*, *f*.  
 tear, to, dilāniō, āvi, ātum,  
*i*; lacero, āvi, ātum, *i*; scindo,  
 occido, scissum, *i*.  
 tell, to, dico, xi, cōsum, *i*;  
 rēfōro, tōli, ātum, *i*; narrō,  
 āvi, ātum.  
 temperance, mōderatio,  
 ōnis, *f*; tempērāntia, *ac*, *f*.  
 temperate, mōderat̄, *a*,  
*um*; tempērāus, *ti*; abstinen-  
 tia.  
 temple, aedes, is (in the  
 sing.); fanum, *i*, *n*; dēlibrum,  
*i*, *n*. (*P*, 42); temples (of the  
 head), tempora, ōrum, *n*, *pl*.  
 tem, dēcēm, indecēm, *num*,  
*adī*; (distributive) dēci, *ac*, *a*.  
 tenacious, tēnax, *acis*,  
 tenth, dēcimus, *a*, *um*.  
 Terentius Varro, Tōren-  
 tius, *i*; Varro, ōnis, *m*.  
 terminante, to, finio, *i*, *v*,  
 Num, *i*; confido, feci, fec-  
 tum, *i*.

## THROUGH.

termination, finis, *is*, *m*;  
 ēvenitus, *ūs*, *m*.  
 Terminus, Tērminus, *i*, *m*.  
 terrible, terribilis, *e*; ter-  
 mendus, *a*, *um*.  
 terrify, to, terreo, *ui*,  
 Hum, *i*, *n*.  
 territory, rēgio, ōndis, *f*; ager, gr̄, *m*; fl̄us, ūm, *m*, *pl*.  
 terror, terror, oris, *m*.  
 Teutons, Tentones, ūm, *m*.  
 than, quam, *conj*.  
 thanks, grātiae, ūrum, *f*.  
 that (pron.), illa, illa, illud:  
*is*, *en*, *id*; iste, *a*, *nd*; = in order  
 that, so that, ut, *conj*.  
 theatre, theātrum, *i*, *n*.  
 Theban, Thēbānus, *a*, *um*.  
 Thebes, Thēbæ, ūrum, *f*.  
 theft, furtum, *i*, *n*; fātro-  
 climum, *i*, (*robbery*).  
 Themistocles, Thēmīstō-  
 cles, *i*, *n*.  
 themselves, pl. of ipso,  
*a*, *um*.  
 then, tūm, tunc, *adv*; eo  
 tempore, at that time.  
 thence, inde, *adv*; illuc  
*adv*; istuc, *adv*.  
 Theophrastus, Theophras-  
 tus, *i*, *m*.  
 there, ibi, *adv*; illuc, *adv*,  
 istic, *adv*.  
 therefore, Igitur, *conj*.  
 thereupon, inde, *adv*.  
 thing, res, *ēf*, *f*; nēgōlūm,  
*i*, *n*.  
 think, to, pūto, āvi, ātum,  
*i*; censeo, *ui*, ātum, *i*; òphnor,  
 ātum *i*; aestimo, āvi,  
 ātum *i*; habeo, *ui*, ātum, *i*  
 (*lit. hold*); cogito, āvi, ātum,  
*i*.  
 third, tertia, *a*, *um*.  
 thirsty, s̄lis, *is*, *f*.  
 Arduus, *a*, *um*.  
 thirty, trīginta, *indec*.  
 thirty-eight, trīdē-quadrā-  
 ginta, *indec*.  
 this, hic, hæc, hoc.  
 thither, eo, *adv*; illuc,  
*adv*; isto, *adv*.  
 Thoas, Thoas, antis, *m*.  
 though, quānvis, *conj*;  
 eti, *conj*.  
 thought, cogitatio, ōnis, *f*;  
 anxious thought, cura, *ac*, *f*.  
 thoroughly, prōsus, *adv*;  
 peritus, *adv*; omnino, *adv*,  
 thousand, mille, *indec*, in  
*sing.*; plur., millia, ūm.  
 threat, mina, ūrum, *f*.  
 three, tres, tria.  
 through, per, *prep*. (*with*  
*acc*.); = on account of, propter,  
*prep*. (*with acc*).

## TERRIBIA.

throughout, pēr, *prep*,  
 (*with acc*).  
 throw, to, jacto, jēcl, jae-  
 tum, *i*; to throw on the ground,  
 aligere hūmī (Ex. 30).  
 throw away, to, p̄flicere  
 (*abjectio*); ject, jecimus, *i*; to  
 throw away an opportunity,  
 amittēre occasiōnem.  
 throw down, dējicio, *ēc*,  
 ectum, *i*.  
 thunderbolt, fulmen, ūm,  
*n*.  
 thus, sic, *adv*; ita, *adv*.  
 Tiberius, Tīberius, *i*, *m*.  
 tidings, vñtūs, *i*, *m*.  
 Tigris, Tigris, ūdis, or is, *m*,  
 and *f*.  
 time, tempus, ūris, *n*;  
 actus, ātis, *f*.  
 timid, timida, *adū*.  
 Timoleon, Timoleon, ūs, *m*.  
 Titurius, Titurius, *i*, *m*.  
 to, ad., *prep*. (*with acc*).  
 to-day, hōdie, *adv*.  
 together, una, *adv*; simul,  
*adv*.  
 tool, ūbor, ūris, *m*.  
 toilsome, labōrīs, *a*, *um*.  
 tongue, lingua, *ae*, *f*.  
 too, = also, ētiam, *adv*.  
 too much, nimis, *adv*.  
 Torquatus, Torquātus, *i*,  
*m*.  
 toss, to, facto, āvi, ātum, *i*.  
 touch, to, tango, tētig,  
 tactum, *i*.  
 towards, erga, or in, with  
*acc*.  
 tower, turris, *is*, *f*; arx,  
*cis*, *f*.  
 town, oppidum, *i*, *n*; urbs,  
*is*, *f*.  
 Trajan, Trājānus, *i*, *m*.  
 transact, to, āgo, ēgi, *acc*,  
*actum*, *i*.  
 transparent, pellūcidus  
 (*percl.*), *a*, *um*.  
 transport, to, transvōho,  
 vext, vectum, *i*; transpor-  
 tū, ūtum, *i*.  
 Trasimenus, Trāsimēnus,  
*i*, *m*.  
 traverse, to, transeo, *ii*,  
*itum*, *i*; transgēdior, esas,  
*esum*, *i*.  
 treachery, p̄dīctio, ūnis, *f*.  
 tread, to, calco, āvi, ātum,  
*i*; to tread the stage, nōtor,  
*sus*, and *xus*, *i* (Ex. 31).  
 treasury (Ex. 44), publ-  
 icum, *i*, *n*.  
 treat to, træto, āvi, ātum,  
*i*; nōtor, ūsus, *sum*, *i*; = to  
 negotiāte, āgo, ēgi, actum, *i*.  
 Trebatius, Trōbatius, *i*, *m*.  
 Trebia, Trebia, *ac*, *f*.

## TREBONIUS.

Trebonius, Trébonius, i., m.  
tree, arbor, órīs, f.  
tremble, to, trémō, ui, 3.  
Treviri, Trévirī, órum, m.  
trial, périculum, i., n.; ex-  
perimentum, i., m.  
tribune, tribúnus, i., m.  
tribuneship, tribúnatus,  
i., m.  
tribunitian, tribunitius, a.  
trident, tridens, tis; (lit.  
point), cuspis, Ids, f.  
trifling, iúlīs, e; parvus,  
a, um; very trifling, minimus,  
a, um (p. 94).  
triumph, triumphus, i., m.  
triumvir, triumvir, órum,  
m.  
Trojan, Trójānus, a, um.  
Trojan women, lúdæe,  
om, f.  
troop, turba, ae, f.; turma,  
ae, f. (of cavalry).  
trophy, trópæum, i., n.  
trouble, lúbor, óris, m. (an-  
noyance); dolor, óris, m. (sor-  
row); cura, ae, f. (anxiety).  
Troy, Trója, iudiciale, árum,  
f.  
true, vérius, ális, f.  
try, to, tento, ávi, átum, i  
(= to prove); expiòr, ertus  
sum, i (= to endeavour).  
Tullius, Tulliūs, i., m.  
Tullius, Tullius, i., m.  
tumult, tumultus, ás, m.  
turn to, flecto, xi, xum, 3.  
turn out, to, iť become,  
évido, si, sum, 3; fio, factus  
sum, 3.  
Tuscan, Tuscus, a, um.  
twelve, dūdecim.  
twenty, viginti; vicēni, ae,  
a (distrib.).  
twice, bīa, adv.  
two, duo, ae, o (distrib.).  
bini, ae, a.  
Tyndareus, Tyndareus, i., m.  
tyrant, tyranus, i., m.  
(p. 3).

## U.

Ulysses, Úlysses, i., m.  
unacquainted, incœns, ts;  
ignarus, a, um (with gen.).  
unavenged, inimitus, a, um.  
uncertain, incertus, a, um.

## UNWORTHY.

uncongenial, aliénus, a,  
um.  
unconquered, invictus, a,  
um.  
uncover, to, dérōgo, xi,  
ctum, 3.  
undaunted, impávidus, a,  
um.  
under, sub, prep. (gov. acc.  
and abl.).  
undergo, to, subeo, II, vium,  
4; perfero, iúlī, átum, 3.  
understand, to, intelligo,  
lexi, lectum, 3.  
undertake, to, suscipio,  
cpi, ceptum, 3; = to promise,  
räcipio, cpi, ceptum.  
undertaking, inceptum, i,  
n.; coepit, i., n.; opus, éris,  
n.  
undeserved, imméritus, a,  
um; post non dignus, literally,  
not worthy.  
undeservingly, immérito,  
adv.  
unequal, dispar, éris.  
unexpected, insperatus, a,  
um; nescipitatus, a, um.  
unfavourable, adversus, a,  
um.  
unfit, incommodus, a, um.  
unfriendly, inamicus, a,  
um; alienus, a, um.  
unfortunate, miser, a, um.  
ungrateful, ingratus, a,  
um.  
unhappy, miser, éra, érum.  
unhealthiness, aegritudo,  
áris, f. (of climate); grávitas,  
áris, f.  
unhurt, salvus, a, um; in-  
solum, e (p. 5).  
uninterruptedly, conti-  
nenter, adv.  
unjust, injuctus, a, um.  
unjustly, injuncte, adv.  
unknown, ignotus, a, um.  
unlikely, dissimilis, e; dis-  
par, éris.  
unlucky, infelix, ičis; in-  
faustus, a, um.  
unmerciful, inmitia, e;  
inhumanus, a, um.  
unsurmountable, insu-  
pérabilis, e.  
until, donec, adv.; dum,  
adv.  
unusual, ineditus, a, um;  
insolitus, a, um.  
unwilling, to be, nolo,  
nolui, nolle.  
unwillingly, invitus, a,  
um; (see St. Gr. § 34).  
unwittingly, imprudens,  
iis.  
unworthy, indigens, a, um,

## VERY SMALL.

uplift, to, tollo, sustili  
sublatum, 3.  
uplifted, elatis, a, um.  
upon, super, prep. (gov.  
acc. and abl.).  
upper, superior, ns.  
upright, directus, a, um  
(dirigo).  
uprightness, integritas,  
ális, f.  
upwards, sursum, adv.  
urge, to, insto, stilo, al-  
tum, 3.  
use, fons, fia, m.; consu-  
tatio, iis, f.  
use, to, fator, fana sum, 3  
(with abl.); to use force, vim  
adhibere.  
useful, utilis, e.  
useless, inutilis, e.  
usual, solitus, a, um; usi-  
tatus, a, um.  
usually, sicut, adv.; ple-  
runque, adv.  
Utica, Utica, ae, f.  
utmost, summus, a, um.

## V

Vacate, to, rēcūscitio  
fecit, factum, 3.  
vacant, vacuus, a, um  
vacans, tis.  
vain, vánus, a, um; inú-  
tilis, e; in vain, nōquidqua-  
dū.  
Valerius, Válérīus, i., m.  
valour, virtus, vits, f.  
fortitudine, iis, f.  
valve, pristinum, i., n.  
valine, to, pendo, pépendi,  
pensus, 3; to value highly,  
magis dicere, facere; to value  
at a low rate, poni pendere.  
vanity, vánitas, ális, f.;  
inutilitas, ális, f.  
vanquish, to, vincō, vici,  
victum, 3; domo, ui, Itum, i.  
varied } várus, a, um; di-  
various } versus, a, um; in-  
various-ways, várile, adv.  
Varro, Varro, ónis, m.  
Varus, Várus, i., m.  
Veii, Velli, órum, m.; the-  
people-of-Veii, Veientes, um, m.  
Véneti, Véneti, órum, m.  
venture, to, audeo, susus  
sum, 2.  
Vercingetorix, Vercingé-  
tix, ičis, m.  
Verona, Veróna, ae, f.  
versatile, versátilis, a, um.  
very, admirabilis, adū; valde,  
adv.; magnóper, adv.  
very small, parvulus, a,  
um.

## VESPAZIAN.

Vespasian, *Vespasiānus*, *t.*  
*vessel*, *vas*, *vāsīs*, *n.*; *vas-*  
*cillum*, *i.* *n.*  
*vestal*, *vestīllis*, *e.*  
*veteran*, *vētérānūs*, *a.* *um.*  
*vex*, *to*, *angō*, *xi*, *3*; *vexo*,  
*avī*, *ātūm*, *i.*  
*vexed at*, *to be*, *taedet*,  
*(impers. with acc.)*  
*vice*, *vīlūm*, *i.* *n.*  
*viceroy*, *praefectus*, *i.* *m.*  
*victorious*, *victor*, *ōrīs*,  
*n.*; *victrix*, *īls*, *f.*  
*victory*, *victōriā*, *re*, *f.*  
*view*, *visus*, *īs*, *m.*  
*vigorously*, *strēmūs*, *adv.*  
*vimose*, *adv.*  
*vigour*, *vis*, *acc.* *vim*, *abl.*  
*vine*, *vīta*, *īs*, *f.*; *palmes*,  
*īs*, *m.*  
*vineyard*, *vīneā*, *ae*, *f.*;  
*bi-stum*, *i.* *n.*  
*violate*, *to*, *vīlō*, *āvī*,  
*um*, *i.*  
*violated*, *vīlōtās*, *a.* *um.*  
*violent*, *vīlēntīs*, *a.* *um.*  
*virgin*, *vīrgo*, *īls*, *f.*  
*virtue*, *vīrtūs*, *īts*, *f.*  
*virtuous*, *sancītus*, *a.* *um.*  
*nestus*, *a.* *um.*  
*voice*, *vox*, *vōcēs*, *f.*  
*Volaci*, *Volsci*, *ōrum*, *m.*  
*Volsinii*, *Volsinīi*, *ōrum*, *n.*  
*volume*, *līber*, *brī*, *m.*; *vōlū-*  
*men*, *īls*, *n.*  
*vowel*, *vōcīlla*, *īs*, *f.*  
*Vulcan*, *Vulcānūs*, *i.* *m.*  
*vulture*, *vūltūrās*, *i.* *m.*

## W

*Wage*, *to*, *(of war) gēro*,  
*gēsi*, *gesum*, *3*.  
*wait*, *to*, *mīneō*, *s.* *um*, *2*.  
*wait for*, *praeſīdō*, *ātūs*  
*ātū*, *i.* *expecto*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *i.*  
*walk*, *to*, *ambulō*, *āvī*,  
*ātūm*, *i.*  
*wall*, *mūrus*, *ī*, *m.*; *pāries*,  
*īs*, *m.* (*p. 3*).  
*wander*, *to*, *erro*, *āvī*,  
*ātūm*, *i.* *pālor*, *ātūm*, *um*, *i.*  
*to wander about*, *vāgor*, *ātūs*,  
*ātūm*, *i.*  
*wandering*, *a*, *discursus*,  
*īs*, *m.*  
*want*, *ēgētas*, *ātīs*, *f.*; *In-*  
*spīa*, *āe*, *f.*  
*want*, *to*, *ēgō*, *ūl*, *Itūm*  
*gov.* *abī*, *2*; *ēgō*, *ūl* (*gov.*  
*abī* and *gen.*); *to be wanting*,  
*Tāsum*, *fūl*, *esse*,  
*wanting* (= *deprived of*),  
*c. bus*, *ās*, *um.*

## WHICHEVER.

*war*, *bēllūm*, *ī*, *n.*  
*ward off*, *to*, *arēo*, *ūl*,  
*ītūm*, *2*; *defendō*, *di*, *sum*, *3*;  
*prōpulsō*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *i.*  
*warlike*, *bēllīcōsus*, *a*, *um*;  
*ferox*, *ōcīa*.  
*warn*, *to*, *mōneo* (*adīmōneō*),  
*ūl*, *ātūm*, *2*.  
*waste*, *to*, *consūmo*, *psī*,  
*ūl*, *um*; *prōfundo*, *didī*, *āsūm*,  
*ī*; *āmitō*, *mīsi*, *missūm* (*of*  
*time*, *to lose*).  
*watch*, *to*, *observo*, *āvī*,  
*ātūm*.  
*watch-fire*, *īglō*, *īs*, *m.*  
*watchful*, *vīglī*, *īls*; *vīglī-*  
*ans*, *īls*.  
*watchful*, *to be*, *vīglō*,  
*āvī*, *ātūm*, *i.*  
*water*, *āqua*, *ae*, *f.*  
*wave*, *ūndā*, *ae*, *f.*; *fluctus*,  
*īs*, *m.*  
*way*, *vīlae*, *f.*; *Iter*, *īl*, *Inēris*, *n.*  
*we*, *nos*, *ītī*, *pron.*  
*weakness*, *īnfirmitās*, *ātīs*, *f.*  
*f.*; *imbecillitas*, *ātīs*, *f.*  
*wealth*, *divīlītās*, *ārūm*, *f.*; *ōpēs*, *um*, *f.*  
*wealthy*, *dīves*, *īls*; *īcu-*  
*ples*, *īls*; *ōpīlēntīs*, *a*, *um*.  
*wear*, *to*, *lēro* (*attēro*),  
*trīvl*, *trītēm*, *ī*.  
*wear away*, *to*, *consūmo*,  
*psī*, *ātūm*.  
*weary*, *lāssās*, *a*, *um*; *ses-*  
*sūs*, *a*, *um*; *fatigās*, *a*, *um*.  
*I am weary of*, *taedet me*,  
*with gen.*.  
*weary*, *to*, *fatigō*, *āvī*,  
*ātūm*; *ī*; *lassō*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *i.*  
*weave*, *to*, *texō*, *xūl*, *xūm*, *ī*.  
*weep*, *to*, *lacrimō*, *āvī*,  
*ātūm*, *i*; *fleo*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *2*.  
*weight*, *grāvītās*, *ātīs*, *f.*  
*weighty*, *grāvīs*, *e*.  
*Welcome*, *grātūs*, *a*, *um*;  
*īcūndūs*, *a*, *um*.  
*well-bēnē*, *adv.*; *prōbē*, *adv.*  
*well-known*, *cognītūs*, *a*,  
*um*; *nōtūs*, *a*, *um*.  
*what*, *interrog.*, *quis*, *quæ*,  
*quid*, *or*, *quod*  
*whatever*, *quidvis*, *quid-*  
*cunque*.  
*when*, *vīmōnīs*, *conj.*; *quando*,  
*conj.*  
*whence*, *unde*, *conj.*  
*where*, *ubī*, *ubīnam*, *conj.*  
*wherefore*, *quāmōbrēm*,  
*conj.*; *quāpōter*, *conj.*  
*wherever*, *ubīcunque*, *adv.*  
*ubīvis*.  
*whether*, *utram*, *conj.*; *sive*,  
*conj.*  
*which*, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*.  
*whichever*, *quicunque*,  
*quacunque*, *quodcunque*,  
*quodcunque*.

## WITHIN.

*while*, *dūm*, *conj.*; *quam-*  
*diu*, *conj.*  
*whit* (= *just so little*) *tan-*  
*ūlūm*, *i*, *n.*; *not a whit*, *nilīl*  
*adīmōdūm*.  
*whether*, *quo*, *conj.*  
*whithersoever*, *quācun-*  
*que*, *adv.*  
*who*, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*.  
*whole*, *ītūs*, *a*, *um*; *omnia*,  
*e*; *ūniversus*, *a*, *um*; *cunctūs*,  
*a*, *um*.  
*whosoever*, *quicunque*,  
*quācunque*, *quodcunque*.  
*why*, *cur*, *conj.*; *quārē*,  
*conj.*; *quāmōbrēm*, *conj.*  
*wicked*, *nēguam*; *comp.*  
*nēquor*; *sup.* *nēquissimus*.  
*wide*, *lātūs*, *a*, *um*; *spā-*  
*tiosus*, *a*, *um*.  
*widely*, *lītē*, *adv.*; *prōcul*,  
*adv.*; *far and wide*, *longē*  
*lātēque*.  
*wife*, *uxor*, *ōrīs*, *f.*; *conjux*,  
*ūtīs*, *f.*  
*wild*, *ārūs*, *a*, *um*; *agrestis*, *e*.  
*wildernes*, *sōlitōdū*, *īls*, *f.*  
*f.*; *desertūm*, *i*, *n.*  
*will*, *vōlūmās*, *īls*, *f.*  
*will*, *testāmentūm*, *i*, *n.*  
*will*, *to*, *vōlō*, *vōlūl*, *velle*.  
*willing*, *vōlēns*, *īls*; *libēns*,  
*īls*.  
*willingly*, *libēnter*, *adv.*:  
*ultrō*, *adv.*  
*win*, *to*, *pārō*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *i*; *ādipiscō*, *ādeptūs*, *um*, *3*.  
*wind*, *ventūs*, *i*, *n.*  
*wine*, *vinūm*, *i*, *n.*; *mērum*,  
*i*, *n.* (*p. 35*).  
*wing*, *āla*, *ae*, *f.*  
*winter*, *hīemis*, *ēmīs*, *f.*; *hī-*  
*ēmūs*, *u*, *um*.  
*winter-quarters*, *hibernā-*  
*ōrum*, *v.*  
*wintry*, *hibernus*, *a*, *um*.  
*wisdom*, *śpīlēntia*, *ae*, *f.*; *prōdītā*, *ae*, *f.*; *consilītū*, *i*,  
*n.* (*p. 55*).  
*wise*, *śpīlēns*, *īls*; *prōdītā*,  
*īls*.  
*wise*, *to be*, *śpīlo*, *īvī* or  
*īl*, *3*.  
*wish*, *vōlūmās*, *īn*, *n.*; *vōlūntās*,  
*ītīs*; *f.*; *according to one's wish*,  
*ex sententīā*.  
*wish*, *to*, *vōlō*, *vōlūl*, *velle*:  
*optō*, *āvī*, *ātūm*, *i*; *cūpīo*, *īvī* or  
*īl*, *ātūm*, *i*.  
*with*, *cum*, *prep.* (*gov. abī*);  
*withdraw*, *to*, *(intrans.)*  
*discedō* (*secēdō*), *cessā*, *cessūm*,  
*ī*; *(trans.) detrahō*, *āl*, *cūm*,  
*ī*.  
*within*, *intrā*, *prep.* (*gov.*  
*acc.*).

## WITHOUT.

**without.** sine, prep. (gov. abl.); = outside of, extra, prep. (gov. acc.).

**withstand,** to, sustineo, ui, tentum, 2.

**witness,** testis, is, c.

**witness,** to call to, testor, aius sum, 1.

**wittingly,** sciens, tis, pridene, th (see St. L. G. § 343).

**woe** is (me), ah, interj. (with acc.); hel, interj. (with dat.).

**wolf,** lupus, i, m.; lupæ, ac, f. (the wolf).

**woman,** mulier, éris, f.

**wonder,** admiratio, ónis, f.

**wonder,** to, miror (admiror), atus sum, 1.

**wont,** to be, séno, itus sum, 2; conuesco, évi, etum, 3.

**wood,** lignum, i, n.

**wood,** a, silva, ae, f.

**wooden,** made of wood, ligneus, a, um.

**word,** verbum, i, n.; vox, vox, i, n.; dictum, i, n. = a promise, pròmissum, i, n.; fides, ei, f.

**work,** labor, óra, m.; nég-  
tum i, n.

## WRONG.

## WRONG, TO.

**work,** to, labóro, ávi, itum, 1; operor, atus sum, 1.

**workman,** artifex, icls, m.

**workmanship,** opus, éris, n.

**workshop,** fabrica, ac, f.

**world,** mundus, i, m.; orbis

is, m. terrarum.

**worship,** to, colo, ui, ultum,

3; vénor, atus sum, 1.

**worst,** pessimus, a, um; all  
the worst characters, pessimus quisque.

**worth,** prétium, i, n.

**worthless,** vilis, e; ne-  
quam, indecet; comp. néquior;

sup. néquissimus

**worthy,** dignus, a, um (gov.  
abl.)

**wound,** to, vulnero, ávi,

áfum, 1.

**wounded,** sancius, a, um.

**wreck,** to, frango, fragi,  
fractum, 3.

**write,** yo, scribo, psi, ptum,  
3; perscribo, to write a full

account.

**wrong,** (adj.) malius, a, um;  
(subs.) injuria, ac, f.

**wrong,** to, noceo, ui, 2  
(with dat.); haedo, si, sum, 3  
(with acc.).

## ZEALOUSLY.

## X

**Xerxes,** Xerxes, is, m.

## Y

**year,** annus, i, m.

**yet,** adhuc, odo, = never-  
theless, tamen, adv.

**yield,** to, cédo, cessi, ces-

sum, 1.

**York,** Eboracum, i, n.

**you,** tu, tul; plur. vos,

**vestri,** pron.

**young,** juvénis, is, m.; (comp.  
junior); adolescent, tis, m.;

**young men,** juvénitus, tulit, f.

**use the ring,**

**your,** tuus, a, um (of one  
person); vester, ra, rum (of  
more than one).

**youth,** juvénis, is, m.; Ado-

lescent, entis, m.

## Z

**Zama,** Zama, ac, f.

**zeal,** stídiūm, i, n.

**zealous,** stídiōsus, a, um;

strenuous, a, um; acer, or nerte-

cis, ere.

**zealously,** stídiōse, adv.

LV.

s, is, m.

n.

n. = never

, cess, ces-

m, f, n.

plur. vos

, is (comp

, is, tis, m;

tus, totis, f,

um (of one

ra, rum (of

is, m.; Ado

n, f.

n.

eus, a, um:

cer, or ceris

llos, adv.

